



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

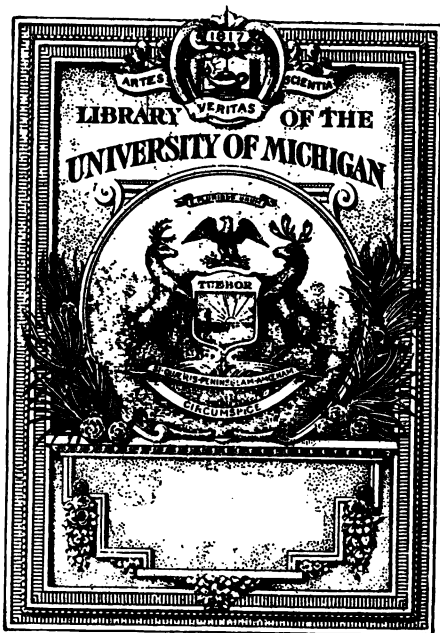
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

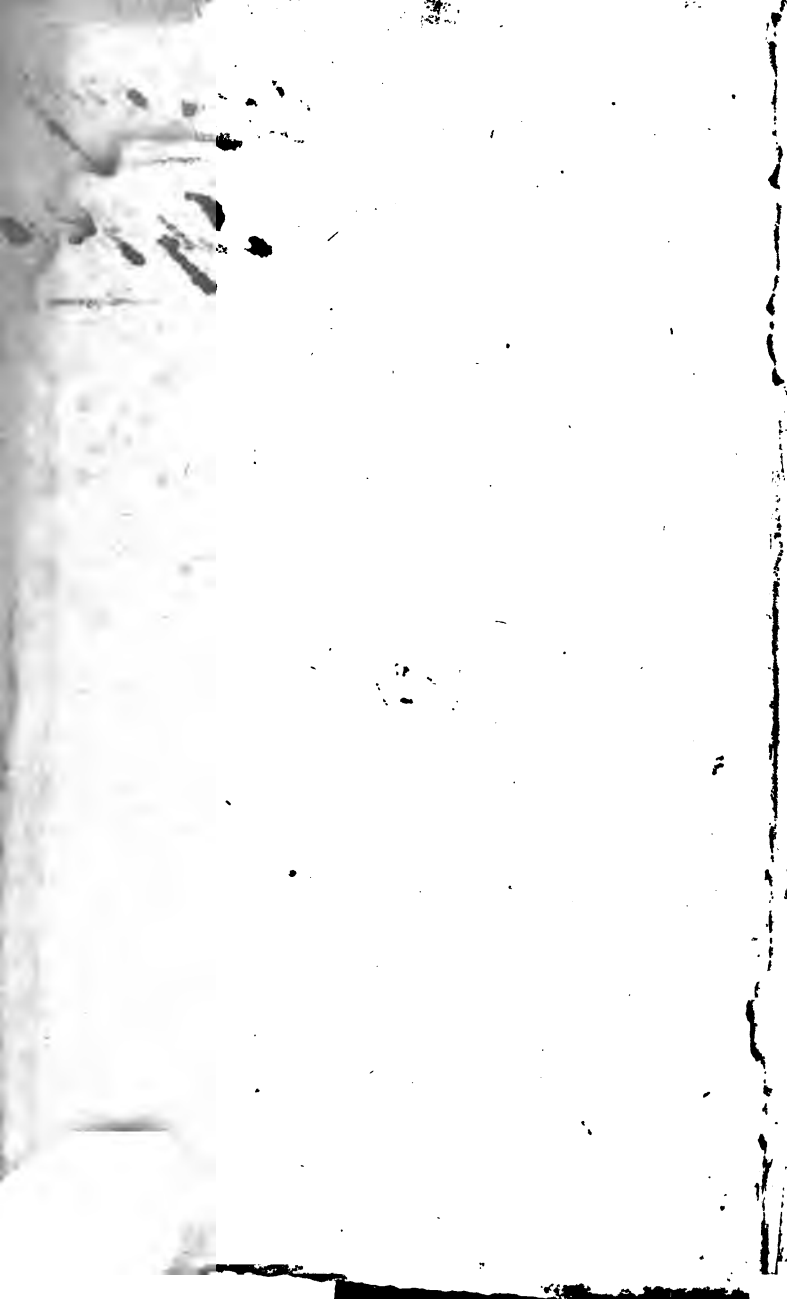


THE GIFT OF  
Clements Library

John Vally

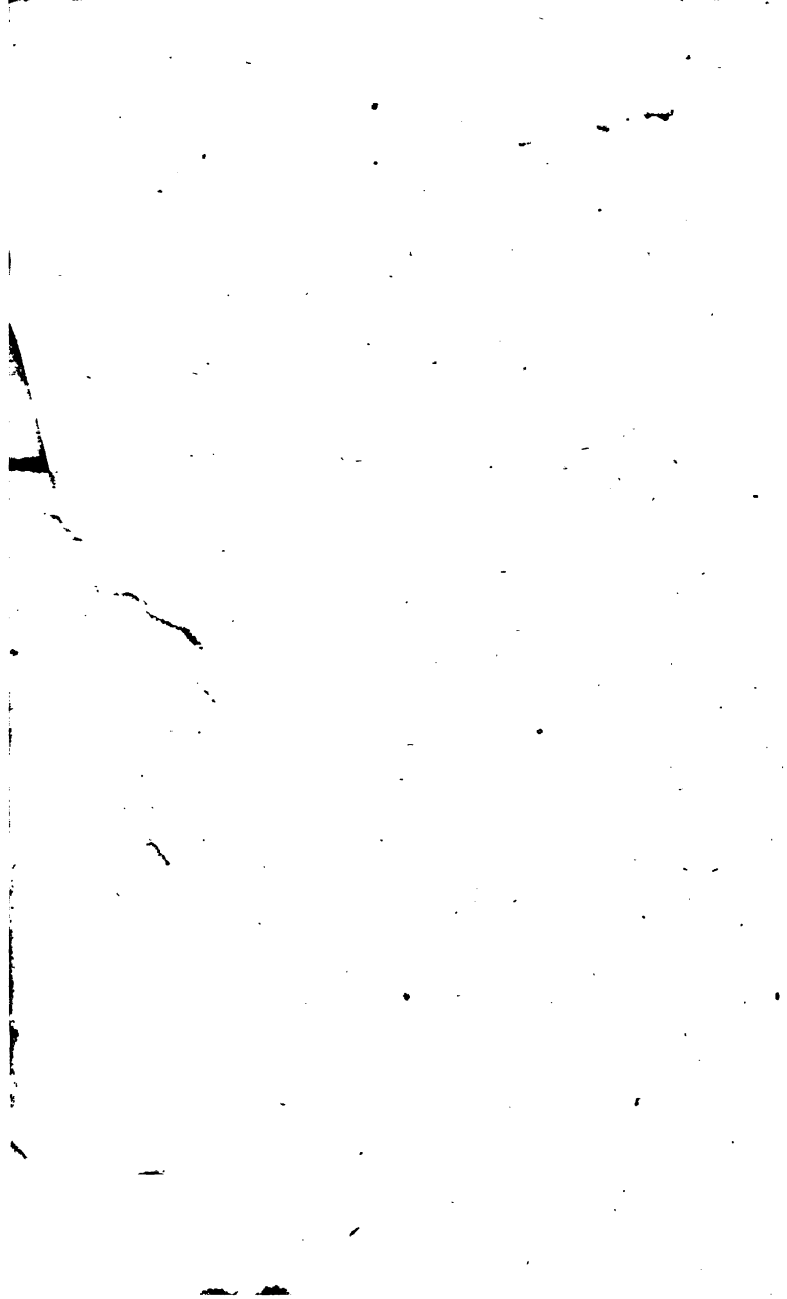
July 9th 18

No 29









A  
**GRAMMAR**  
OF THE  
**FRENCH LANGUAGE,**  
WITH  
**PRACTICAL EXERCISES.**

---

BY N. WANOSTROCHT, LL. D.

---

SIXTH AMERICAN FROM THE FIFTEENTH LONDON EDITION.

---

TO WHICH IS ADDED,  
A VERY COMPREHENSIVE TABLE OF CONTENTS;  
AND AN ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT OF THE  
*IRREGULAR VERBS,*  
WITH REFERENCE TO THE PLACES WHERE THEY ARE CONJUGATED.  
With considerable Additions and Improvements.

AND A  
**TREATISE ON FRENCH VERSIFICATION.**

BY M. DE WAILLY,  
Member of the National Institute of France, &c. &c.

---

**BOSTON:**  
**PUBLISHED BY RICHARDSON & LORD.**

.....  
PRINTED BY J. H. A. FROST.

1821.

840, 5

W249

1821

**DISTRICT OF MASSACHUSETTS, TO WIT :**

*District Clerk's Office.*

**BE IT REMEMBERED**, that on the thirtieth day of May, A. D. 1817, and in the forty-first year of the Independence of the United States of America, *West & Richardson*, of the said District, have deposited in this Office the Title of a Book, the right whereof they claim as Proprietors, in the words following, to wit :

**A Grammar of the French Language, with Practical Exercises.** By N. Wanostrocht, LL. D. Fourth American from the thirteenth London edition, with considerable Additions and Improvements.

In conformity to the Act of the Congress of the United States, entitled, "An Act for the Encouragement of Learning, by securing the Copies of Maps, Charts and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned:" and also to an Act entitled, "An Act supplementary to an Act, entitled, 'An Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned; and extending the benefits thereof to the Arts of Designing, Engraving and Etching Historical, and other Prints.'"

**JOHN W. DAVIS,**

*Clerk of the District of Massachusetts.*

*St. Louis*  
*Relief*  
*William L. Remondet & Co.*  
4-14-66  
588189-271

**ADVERTISEMENT.**

**THE** publishers of the previous Boston editions of this Grammar, now offer a new and improved edition of a work which has become generally known and esteemed.

When it was first determined to reprint this judicious system of theoretically and practically teaching the French language, a perfect conviction was felt that it would meet the approbation of the wise and learned as soon as it was known; and the rapid sale of five editions in the United States within a few years has fully realized that expectation and given indubitable evidence of the intrinsic merit of this mode of instruction.

In London this Grammar has passed through fifteen editions, and it has likewise been printed several times at Paris.

Previous to the printing of every new edition the American publishers have always been careful to procure the latest English copy, in order to profit by any improvement which may have been made in succeeding editions, and this attention has always proved advantageous. Besides this, they have been so fortunate as to have the same editor for all their editions, who, being an experienced instructor of languages, has given this grammar a decided preference ever since its first appearance, and contributed, by his own observations in the course of tuition, to remove every obscurity, supply all defects, and render it as easy and perfect as possible.

This work is now introduced into some of the first literary institutions in the country, and particularly into the University at Cambridge, and St. Mary's College in Baltimore.

Boston, November, 1821.

## PREFACE.

---

THAT "a great book is a great evil" is generally a great truth, for the discovery of which we moderns must hold ourselves indebted to the sages of antiquity. In the following sheets, I have endeavoured to improve upon the ancient maxim, and bring the two ends of the book as near together as I possibly could. On this frugal plan, the preface might have been spared, but custom must be complied with: some part of our time must be spent on superfluities; and what is rendered venerable by age must not too hastily be rejected. To enter abruptly upon the main subject is generally considered as a breach of politeness. What is useful must sometimes give place to what is convenient, and what rigorous justice cannot defend, may yet enjoy the security of prescription. In compliance, therefore, with universal custom, with the general practice of the ancients, and, what is still more forcible, the urgent solicitation of the booksellers, I proceed to lay before the Reader the general Plan of the Work.

The idea of the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR was first suggested to the Author in the course of his private teaching. He found daily the inconvenience of referring from book to book, and determined to supply the defect in the best manner he could. Whatever was necessary to furnish a tolerable acquaintance with the elements of the language, and point out the nature of its construction, he proposed to admit; and reject every thing that was not essentially connected with his principal design. His first object was to comprise, in as little room as possible, every thing that was really useful in the grammar, the exercise-book, and the book of dialogues. To this plan he has strictly adhered in the composition, and has brought the whole together in a much smaller compass than, at first, could reasonably have been expected.

The several parts of speech are arranged in the usual order, and each part is discussed under a separate section.

Each rule is followed by a familiar exercise, which the master may use in the place of a dialogue.

The advantages resulting from the scholars learning and then repeating their own translations by heart must, in the opinion of impartial and disinterested minds, materially tend to their improvement;

by these means, the pupils, uniting practice to theory, not only become imperceptibly acquainted with the French phraseology, which in many instances differs so much from the English construction, but immediately know what is the English word that corresponds with the French, and *vice versâ*, which cannot absolutely be done, in a dialogue where the French is ready made for them. Therefore, in order the more fully to answer the Author's intention, he has, instead of fine sentences, extracted from the most elegant writers, and often above the comprehension of young people, preferred, and made use, throughout all the exercises, of plain and easy sentences, which, at the same time they are within the reach of the young learners' faculties, will soon enable them to speak the French language with propriety and elegance. What more can be expected from an elementary book?

At the close of every section, a recapitulatory exercise is given upon all the preceding rules.

When there is any difference in the order of arrangement, the French construction is pointed out by the small figures placed against the top of the words in the English sentence.

Some of the most remarkable French idioms are noticed, and exemplified by various instances. Many others might have been adduced, perhaps, to very little profit. The idiomatical expressions are daily giving way to a regular syntactical form, and growing into disuse with the best masters.

A few general rules for pronunciation only have been given. From all the attempts that have hitherto been made, it does not appear that any adequate idea of it can be conveyed in writing. The ear cannot be properly formed without the assistance of a good speaker.

Throughout the whole composition, the Author's chief aim has been to unite ease and simplicity with accuracy and precision. That he has sometimes said too little where more was required, and sometimes too much where less would have been sufficient, he does not take upon himself to assert. That he has sometimes failed through negligence, and many times through ignorance, he has also great reason to fear. His daily avocations left him but little time for study, and his want of a better acquaintance with the English language may have subjected him to many inaccuracies in his style, and sometimes, perhaps, to palpable improprieties.

The author cheerfully embraces this opportunity of making his most grateful acknowledgments to the Public, for the favourable reception given to the former editions of this Grammar, and, in general,

to all his other works : while he is perfectly sensible of the obligation, he is also sensible that much indulgence was required to justify the favours he has already received, either as a **TEACHER** or as an **AUTHOR**. That generous indulgence he again solicits for their acceptance in this new edition, and begs to assure them, that, in every situation of life, it will be his constant care, as well as his highest ambition, to deserve the flattering encouragement he has met with in this country, and never forget the obligations already conferred.

In this edition the errors in the former publications are carefully corrected, the several expressions which did not so well please in the course of practice, have been altered, and every improvement added; that could tend to facilitate the attainment of the French language. It having been suggested, by some gentlemen, to whose judgment the Author pays the greatest deference, that the irregular verbs, being arranged in alphabetical order, in the body of the book, would be a considerable improvement to the work, and facilitate the progress of the scholar, this is done in the present edition. The primitives of the irregular verbs are conjugated at length, and at the end of each are given their several compounds, with large exercises, both upon the primitives and compounds.

*Alfred-House Academy, Camberwell.*



# CONTENTS.

AN Alphabetical Arrangement of Irregular Verbs . . . . .	xii
The Sounds of the French Tongue . . . . .	11
An Explanation of the Abbreviations . . . . .	12

## SECT. I.

Of Grammar, . . . . .	13
Of the French Alphabet . . . . .	ib.
Of Vowels—Diphthongs—Accents—Kinds of E . . . . .	14
Of Diæresis—Cedilla—Apostrophe . . . . .	15
Alphabetical list of French words having their initial <i>h</i> mute . . . . .	ib.
Variations in the pronunciation of Consonants . . . . .	17
Kinds of words . . . . .	18
General Explanation of their use . . . . .	19

## SECT. II.

Of Nouns . . . . .	20
Of Articles . . . . .	21
Declension of the Article Definite . . . . .	22
Of Genders and Numbers . . . . .	23
General Rules for the formation of the Plural Number . . . . .	24
Of Exceptions . . . . .	ib.
Of the Declension of Nouns . . . . .	27
Declension of the Article Definite <i>Le</i> , (the) before Nouns masculine beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated . . . . .	28
Declension of the Article Definite <i>La</i> , (the) before nouns feminine beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated . . . . .	ib.
Declension of the Article Definite <i>L'</i> (the) for both Genders, before nouns beginning with a Vowel, or an <i>h</i> not aspirated . . . . .	29
Recapitulation of the Article Definite . . . . .	ib.
Rules for the proper use of the Definite Article with Exercises . . . . .	30
Declension of the Article Partitive . . . . .	38
Rules and Exercises upon this Partitive . . . . .	39
Declension of the Article Indefinite . . . . .	41
Rules and Exercises on this Indefinite . . . . .	ib.
Declension of <i>Un</i> , m. <i>Une</i> , f. a or an . . . . .	48
Rules and Exercises on this Article . . . . .	ib.
Of Nouns Adjective . . . . .	50
Of the Gender and Number of Adjectives . . . . .	ib.
Declension of Nouns Adjective . . . . .	53
Rules and Exercises upon Adjectives . . . . .	ib.
The Place of an Adjective in a Sentence . . . . .	56
Of Adjectives which precede their Substantives . . . . .	ib.
Of Adjectives which come after their Substantives . . . . .	57
Rules and Exercises upon these Adjectives . . . . .	58

Of the Degrees of Comparison . . . . .	60
Rules with Exercises upon the Degrees of Comparison . . . . .	61
Of Numbers . . . . .	67
Rules and Exercises upon these Cardinal Numbers . . . . .	68
Of the Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	71
Rules and Exercises upon the Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	72
Recapitulatory or Promiscuous Exercises upon all the Preceding Rules . . . . .	74

### SECT. III.

Of Pronouns . . . . .	81
Of Pronouns Personal . . . . .	82
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	83
Observations on the Pronouns <i>Je</i> and <i>Moi</i> , <i>Tu</i> and <i>Toi</i> , <i>Il</i> and <i>Lui</i> , <i>Us</i> and <i>Eux</i> . . . . .	85
Exercises upon the Preceding Observations . . . . .	86
Of Conjunctive Pronouns and their Declensions . . . . .	87
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	89
Of Particles Relative or Supplying Pronouns <i>en</i> , <i>y</i> , and <i>le</i> . . . . .	92
Rules and Exercises upon these Supplying Pronouns . . . . .	ib.
Of Pronouns Possessive, and their Declensions . . . . .	99
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	100
Of Pronouns Demonstrative . . . . .	104
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	106
Of Pronouns Relative . . . . .	110
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	111
Of Pronouns Interrogative . . . . .	116
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	ib.
Of Pronouns Indefinite . . . . .	118
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	120
Recapitulatory or Promiscuous Exercises upon all the Pronouns . . . . .	135

### SECT. IV.

Of Verbs and their different Sorts . . . . .	142
Conjugation of Verbs and Moods . . . . .	144
Tenses . . . . .	147
Tenses of the Indicative Mood . . . . .	148
Simple Tenses of the Indicative Mood . . . . .	ib.
Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mood . . . . .	153
Tenses of the Subjunctive or Conjunctive Mood, and their Compounds . . . . .	157
Numbers and Persons . . . . .	159
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>Avoir</i> , to have . . . . .	161
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>Etre</i> , to be . . . . .	163
Rules and Exercises on the two preceding Auxiliary Verbs . . . . .	166
Promiscuous Exercises upon the Compound Tenses of these Auxiliary Verbs . . . . .	169

Rules and Examples for using these Verbs Interrogatively, &c.	170
Promiscuous Exercises on Rules of Interrogation, &c.	172
Remark on the Verb <i>Etre</i> , to be	174
First Conjugation in <i>er</i> , as in <i>Parl-er</i>	175
Important Observation upon the repetition of Verbs, &c. see N. B.	179
Exercises on this Conjugation	181
Exercises on the Compound Tenses	183
Second Conjugation, in <i>ir</i> , as in <i>Pun-ir</i>	184
Exercises on this Conjugation	187
Third Conjugation, in <i>voir</i> , as in <i>rec-voir</i>	190
Exercises on this Conjugation	193
Fourth Conjugation, in <i>re</i> , as in <i>Vend-re</i>	197
Exercises on this Conjugation	200
Recapitulatory Exercises on the Regular Verbs of the Four Conjugations	203
Promiscuous Exercises on the Compound Tenses, of the preceding Conjugations	206
Conjugations of the Passive Verbs	208
Of Neuter Verbs generally	ib.
Of Reflective Verbs	214
Model of Conjugations for the Reflected Verbs of the Four Conjugations	219
Exercises on the Reflective Verbs	222
Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation	227
Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	230
Exercises on the Irregular Verbs of the First and Second Conjugations	235
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	238
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs	243
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	245
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds	251
Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation	254
Observation upon <i>May</i> , and <i>Might</i> , when used as a Verb or Auxiliary	259
Observation upon the words <i>Will</i> , and <i>Would</i> , when used as a Verb or an Auxiliary	265
Exercises upon Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation	266
Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	271
Exercises upon the preceding Irregular Verbs, and their Compounds	281
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	284
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds	296
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	302
Exercises on the preceding Verbs, and their Compounds	313
Of the Impersonal Verbs	319
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verbs	ib.
Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs	321
Upon the Impersonal Verb <i>y avoir</i> , there to be	322
Exercises on the preceding Verb	323
Remarks on the general Pronoun <i>On</i>	324
Exercises on the preceding Pronoun, &c.	ib.

Remarks on the Impersonal Verb <i>Falloir</i> , to be needful, requisite, necessary . . . . .	332
Exercises on the preceding Impersonal Verb . . . . .	334
Additional Remarks on the general Pronoun <i>On</i> . . . . .	337
Exercises on the preceding Pronoun . . . . .	338
Recapitulatory Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	339

---

## SECT. V.

Of Participles . . . . .	342
Rules and Exercises on the Participles . . . . .	342, 343

---

## SECT. VI.

Of Indeclinable Parts of Speech . . . . .	353
Of Adverbs . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
Table of Adverbs . . . . .	354, 357, 359, 361, 363, 365, 368, 369
Observation on the Adverb <i>Où</i> . . . . .	370
Table of Adverbs continued . . . . .	373, 376, 378, 379, 382

---

## SECT. VII.

Of Prepositions . . . . .	383
Prepositions governing the Genitive or Ablative Cases . . . . .	383, 384
Exercises on these Prepositions . . . . .	385
Prepositions governing the Dative Case . . . . .	387
Exercises on these Prepositions . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
Prepositions requiring the Accusative Case . . . . .	388
Exercises upon these Prepositions . . . . .	389
Observations on some Prepositions, and Exercises upon them, <i>Above</i> , 392; <i>At</i> , 393, 394; <i>By</i> , 395, 396, 397; <i>For</i> , 398; <i>From</i> , 399; <i>In</i> , 400, 401; <i>On</i> or <i>Upon</i> , 402; <i>Over</i> , 403; <i>With</i> , 404, 405, 407, 408; <i>Without</i> , . . . . .	409

---

## SECT. VIII.

Of Conjunctions . . . . .	411
Conjunctions requiring the Infinitive Mood, and Exercises upon them . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
Conjunctions requiring the Verb in the Indicative Mood, and Exercises upon them in continuation . . . . .	412
Conjunctions requiring the Future Tense . . . . .	417
Remark on the Conjunction <i>Que</i> , preceding an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood . . . . .	418

Conjunctions requiring the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, and Exercises upon them	420, 421
Remarks on the Conjunctions <i>Si</i> and <i>Que</i>	424
Exercises on the preceding Conjunctions	425
Verbs requiring the Conjunction <i>Que</i> , with the following Verb in the Subjunctive Mood	427
Exercises on this and the preceding Rules	428
Observation on the Verb <i>Vouloir</i> , to will, to wish,	431
Conjunctions <i>Qui</i> , <i>Que</i> or <i>Dont</i> , requiring the following Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, and Exercises upon them	433

---

## SECT. IX.

Of Interjections	435
Table of Interjections	ib.
Exercises on the preceding Interjections	436
Remarks on the Particles <i>De</i> , <i>à</i> , <i>Pour</i> , when not expressed, and Exercises upon them	437
Remarks on the Particle <i>De</i> , when it is to be expressed, and Exercises upon it	439
Remarks on the Particle <i>à</i> , when it is to be expressed, and Exercises upon it	441, 442
Important remarks on the Particles <i>De</i> , <i>à</i> , and <i>Pour</i> , with Exercises	444

---

## SECT. X.

Idiomatical Expressions	445
Of the Verb <i>Avoir</i> , to have, and Exercises upon it	445, 446
Of <i>Etre</i> , to be, and Exercises upon it	448
Of <i>Faire</i> , to make, or to do, and Exercises upon it	449, 450
Of different Verbs, and Exercises upon them	451, 452, 453, 454
General and Promiscuous Exercises	455
Of the Understanding of Languages	ib.
Of Study	456
Indolence Characterised	458

---

## SECT. XI.

Scheme for parsing a French Sentence	458
Treatise upon French Versification	461

AN

# ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT

OF

## IRREGULAR VERBS,

WITH REFERENCES TO THE PLACES IN WHICH THEY, OR SIMILAR  
VERBS, ARE CONJUGATED IN THIS GRAMMAR;

WITH REMARKS.

		A.		
		English.	French.	Conjugated like
				Page.
To Acquire . . . . .		Acquérir . . . . .		230
Avoid, <sup>1</sup> or Shun . . . . .		Fuir <sup>2</sup> . . . . .		238
Abstain . . . . .		S'Abstenir . . . . .	} Tenir . . . . .	246
Attain to . . . . .		Parvenir à . . . . .		
Anticipate . . . . .		Prévenir . . . . .		
Assault . . . . .		Assaillir . . . . .	Tressaillir . . . . .	247
be Able . . . . .		Pouvoir <sup>3</sup> . . . . .		259
Absolve . . . . .		Absoudre . . . . .		271
Abate . . . . .		Rabattre . . . . .	Battre . . . . .	272
Acknowledge, or	} know again . . . . .	Reconnoître . . . . .	} Connoître . . . . .	278
Accrue . . . . .		Accroître . . . . .		
Appear . . . . .	} evidence . . . . .	Paroître . . . . .		
Appear, to give		Comparoître . . . . .		

<sup>1</sup> *Eviter*, to avoid, and *assister*, to assist, are regular verbs of the First Conjugation.

<sup>2</sup> See Pret. p. 305, and Imperfect of Subjunct. p. 306.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 259 and 260.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Ask too much . .	Surfaire . .	Faire . .	290
Admit . . . .	Admettre . .	Mettre . .	294
Anoint . . . .	Oindre <sup>1</sup> . .	Craindre	284
Apprehend, or un- derstand . . . .	Comprendre .	Prendre .	305
Abstract . . . .	Abstraire . .	Traire . .	309
Assist <sup>2</sup> . . . .	Secourir . .	Courir . .	232
Agree . . . .	Consentir . .	Mentir . .	239
be Acquainted with . . . .	Connoître . .		278
be Afraid . . . .	Craindre . .		284
fall Asleep . . .	S'Endormir .	Dormir .	234
fall Asleep again	Se Rendormir }		

## B.

To Boil . . . . .	Bouillir . . . . .	} Bouillir <sup>3</sup> . 231
Boil again . . . . .	Rebouillir . . . . .	
Belie . . . . .	Démentir . . . . .	Mentir . . 239
Belong . . . . .	Appartenir . . . . .	} Tenir . . 246
Become of . . . . .	Devenir <sup>4</sup> . . . . .	
Become, fit, &c. . . . .	Convenir . . . . .	
Befall . . . . .	Survenir . . . . .	
Beat . . . . .	Battre . . . . .	} Battre . . 272
Beat again . . . . .	Rebattre . . . . .	
Beat down (abate) . . . . .	Rabattre . . . . .	
Bray . . . . .	Braire <sup>5</sup> . . . . .	
Believe . . . . .	Croire . . . . .	. . . . . 274
Bake, or Boil, of- ten Englished to do . . . . .	Cuire . . . . .	. . . . . 285
Bake again, do again . . . . .	Recuire . . . . .	} Conduire 276
Bring to, or Re- duce to . . . . .	Réduire . . . . .	
Build <sup>6</sup> , or Con- struct . . . . .	Construire . . . . .	

<sup>1</sup> See Remark, p. 303.<sup>2</sup> See Note 1 in preceding page.<sup>3</sup> See p. 232.<sup>4</sup> See Note \* p. 249.<sup>5</sup> See p. 274 and 275.<sup>6</sup> *Bâtir*, to build, and *Bannir*, to banish, are regulars of the Second Conjugation.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Banish <sup>1</sup> . . .	Proscrire . . .	Ecrire . . .	289
be Born . . .	Naître . . .	} Naître . . .	302
be Born again . . .	Renaître . . .		

## C.

To Conquer . . .	Conquérir . . .	Acquérir . . .	230
Concur . . .	Concourir . . .	Courir . . .	232
Contradict, or be- lie . . .	} Démentir . . .	} Mentir . . .	239
Consent . . .			
Cover . . .	Couvrir . . .	} Offrir . . .	241
Cover again . . .	Recouvrir . . .		
Contain . . .	Contenir . . .	} Tenir . . .	246
Come . . .	Venir <sup>2</sup> . . .		
Come back . . .	Revenir . . .		
Clothe . . .	Vêtir . . .		
Come to, Befall . . .	Survenir . . .		
Clear a table . . .	Desservir . . .	Servir . . .	245
Conclude . . .	Conclure . . .		275
Conduct, Lead, or Carry . . .	} Conduire . . .	} Conduire . . .	276
Construct, Build			
Circumcise . . .	Circoncire <sup>3</sup> . . .	Confire . . .	277
Chance, or Fallout	échoir <sup>4</sup> . . .	Déchoir . . .	257
Contradict . . .	Contredire <sup>5</sup> . . .	} Dire . . .	286
Curse . . .	Maudire . . .		
Constrain . . .	} Contraindre . . .	} Craindre . . .	284
Compel . . .			
Complain . . .	Se Plaindre . . .		
Come to life, as from an egg, &c. }	éclore <sup>6</sup> . . .		288
Counterfeit . . .	Contrefaire . . .	Faire . . .	280
Compromise . . .	Compromettre }	} Mettre . . .	294
Commit . . .	Commettre . . .		
Chide . . .	Reprendre . . .	Prendre . . .	305

<sup>1</sup> See Note 6 in preceding page.<sup>2</sup> See Remark, p. 249.<sup>3</sup> See Participle Pass. p. 275.<sup>4</sup> See Participle Act. & Pass. p. 257.<sup>5</sup> See Note, p. 287.<sup>6</sup> See p. 288.



<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i> Page
Conquer . . .	Vaincre <sup>1</sup> . . .	} Vaincre . 311
Convince . . .	Convaincre . . .	
D.		
To Discourse. . .	Discourir . . .	Courir . . 232
Die . . . . .	Mourir . . .	} Mourir . . 240
be Dying . . .	Se Mourir . . .	
Detain . . . . .	Détenir . . .	} Tenir . . 246
Disagree . . .	Disconvenir . . .	
Discover . . .	Découvrir . . .	Offrir . . 241
Distribute . . .	Départir . . .	Mentir . . 239
Dissolve . . .	Dissoudre <sup>2</sup> . . .	Absoudre 271
Drink . . . . .	Boire <sup>3</sup> . . .	. . . . . 273
Debate . . . . .	Débattre . . .	Battre . . 272
Decay . . . . .	Déchoir . . .	. . . . . 257
Do an ill office . . .	Desservir . . .	Servir . . 245
Deduct . . . . .	Déduire . . .	} Conduire 276
Destroy . . . . .	Détruire . . .	
Do over, with mortar, &c. . . . .	Enduire . . .	
Decrease . . . . .	Décroître . . .	} Connoître 278
Disappear . . . . .	Disparoître . . .	
Describe . . . . .	Décrire . . .	Ecrire . . 289
Do . . . . .	Faire . . .	} Faire . . 290
Do again . . . . .	Refaire . . .	
Defeat . . . . .	Défaire . . .	
Dissemble . . . . .	Feindre . . .	} Craindre . 284
Dye . . . . .	Teindre . . .	
Draw, Design . . .	Peindre . . .	
Defer, Put off, or } Deliver up . . . . .	Remettre . . .	Mettre . . 294
Displease . . . . .	Déplaire . . .	Plaire . . 304
Distract . . . . .	Distraire . . .	Traire . . 309
E.		
To Entertain . . .	Entretenir . . .	Tenir . . 246
Exclude . . . . .	Exclure <sup>4</sup> . . .	Conclure 275

<sup>1</sup> See Note, p. 311.<sup>2</sup> See p. 272.<sup>3</sup> See N. B. p. 274.<sup>4</sup> See p. 290.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i> Page
To Exact . . . .	Surfaire . . . .	Faire . . 290
Enjoin . . . .	Enjoindre . . . }	Craindre . 284
Enclose . . . .	Enceindre . . . }	
Encompass . . . .	Elire . . . .	Lire . . . 292
Elect . . . .	Extraire . . . .	Traire . . 309

## F.

To Fetch . . . .	Quérir <sup>1</sup> . . . .	Acquérir . 230
Flee, or Fly . . .	Fuir <sup>2</sup> . . . .	. . . . 238
Feel . . . .	Sentir . . . .	Mentir . 239
Foresee, or have a foresight of . . . }	Pressentir . . . }	
Foresee . . . .	Prévoir <sup>3</sup> . . . .	Voir . . . 263
Fit <sup>4</sup> , or fit well . .	Seoir <sup>5</sup> . . . .	Asseoir . 254
Fight . . . .	Combattre . . . .	Battre . . 272
Fear . . . .	Craindre . . . .	Craindre . 284
Force . . . .	Contraindre . . . }	
Feign . . . .	Feindre . . . .	Dire <sup>6</sup> . . 286
Forbid . . . .	Interdire . . . .	
Foretell . . . .	Prédire . . . .	Déchoir . 257
Fall out, or Hap- pen . . . .	échoir <sup>7</sup> . . . .	
Fry . . . .	Frire <sup>8</sup> . . . .	. . . . 292
Feed, or Graze . .	Paître . . . .	Connoître 278
Follow . . . .	Suivre . . . .	Suivre . . 308
Follow from . . . .	S'Ensuivre . . . }	
Fine-draw . . . .	Rentraire . . . .	Traire . . 309

## G.

To Go . . . .	Aller . . . .	Aller . . 227
Go away . . . .	S'en Aller . . . }	
Gather . . . .	Cueillir . . . .	Cueillir . 233
Gather together . .	Recueillir . . . }	
Go out . . . .	Sortir . . . .	Mentir . . 239

<sup>1</sup> See p. 231.<sup>2</sup> See p. 238, 239.<sup>3</sup> See p. 264.<sup>4</sup> See the verb To Become, &c.<sup>5</sup> See p. 255.<sup>6</sup> See Note, p. 287. <sup>7</sup> See p. 257.<sup>8</sup> See p. 292.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i> Page
<b>To Grow</b> . . . .	Croître . . . .	} Connoître 278
Grow less . . . .	Décroître . . . .	
Grow again . . . .	Recroître . . . .	
Graze . . . . .	Pâître . . . . .	
Glitter . . . . .	Reluire <sup>1</sup> . . . .	Conduire 276
Glimpse, or to } have a glimpse of }	Entrevoir . . . .	Voir . . . 263
Grind . . . . .	Moudre . . . . .	} Moudre . 295
Grind again . . . .	Remoudre . . . .	
Give other clothes	Revêtir . . . . .	250
Gird . . . . .	Ceindre . . . . .	Craindre 284

## H.

<b>To Hold</b> . . . . .	Tenir . . . . .	} Tenir . . . 246
Happen unex- pectedly . . . . }	Survenir . . . . }	
Hear . . . . .	Oùir <sup>2</sup> . . . . .	242
Hatch . . . . .	Eclorre <sup>3</sup> . . . . .	288
Hurt . . . . .	Nuire <sup>4</sup> . . . . .	Conduire 276
Humour . . . . .	Complaire . . . . }	} Plaire . . . 304
Hold one's tongue	Se Taire . . . . .	
Hear of . . . . .	{ Apprendre des nouvelles }	Prendre . 308

## I.

<b>To Incur</b> . . . . .	Encourir . . . .	Courir . 232
Impart . . . . .	Départir . . . .	Mentir . 239
Infringe . . . . .	Contrevenir à }	} Tenir . . . 246
Intervene . . . .	Intervenir . . . }	
Invest . . . . .	Revêtir . . . . .	250
Interdict . . . .	Interdire <sup>5</sup> . . .	Dire . . . 286
Inscribe . . . . .	Inscrire . . . . .	Ecrire . 289
Induce . . . . .	Induire . . . . .	} Conduire . 276
Instruct . . . . .	Instruire . . . . }	
Introduce . . . .	Introduire . . . }	} Prendre . 305
Include . . . . .	Comprendre . . .	

<sup>1</sup> See p. 293.<sup>2</sup> See p. 242.<sup>3</sup> See p. 238.<sup>4</sup> See p. 303.<sup>5</sup> See Note, p. 287.

## J.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i> <i>Page</i>
To Jut, Jet out, a term in Architecture only . . . . }	Saillir <sup>1</sup> . . . .	Tressaillir 247
Join . . . . .	Joindre . . . .	Craindre 284

## K.

To Keep . . . . .	Tenir . . . . .	246
Know somebody .	Connoître . . . }	Connoître 278
Know again . . .	Reconnoître . . }	
Know something	Savoir <sup>2</sup> . . . . .	260

## L.

To Lie . . . . .	Mentir . . . . }	Mentir . 239
give one the Lie	Démentir . . . }	
Lead . . . . .	Conduire . . . }	Conduire 276
Lead again . . .	Reconduire . . }	
Learn . . . . .	Apprendre . . .	Prendre . 305
Leap for . . . .	Tressaillir . . .	247
Laugh . . . . .	Rire . . . . .	307
Live . . . . .	Vivre . . . . .	312

## M.

To Maintain . . .	{ Maintenir . . . }	Tenir . 246
	{ Soutenir . . . }	
Move . . . . .	Mouvoir . . . . }	Mouvoir . 258
Move, or Stir up	émouvoir . . . }	
Mistake, or be de-	Méconnoître, . .	Connoître 278
ceived . . . . .	or Se Méprendre	Prendre . 305
Make . . . . .	Faire . . . . .	
Make up again .	Refaire . . . . }	Faire . 290
Mimic . . . . .	Contrefaire . . }	
Milk . . . . .	Traire . . . . .	309

## N.

To make a great Noise . . . . }	Bruire <sup>3</sup> . . . . .	275
------------------------------------	-------------------------------	-----

<sup>1</sup> See p. 248, and N. B. p. 249.<sup>2</sup> See Notes, p. 261.<sup>3</sup> See p. 275.

## O.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>To Overtake</b> . . .	Atteindre . . .	Craindre	284
Offer . . . .	Offrir . . .	} Offrir . . .	241
Open . . . .	Ouvrir . . .		
Obtain . . . .	Obtenir . . .	Tenir . . .	246
do an ill office . .	Desservir . .	Servir . . .	245
Open as an oyster	éclore <sup>1</sup> . . .		288
Outlaw . . . .	Proscrire . .	Ecrire . . .	289
Omit . . . .	Omettre . . .	Mettre . . .	294
Outlive . . . .	Survivre . . .	Vivre . . .	312
Oblige . . . .	Astreindre <sup>2</sup> .	Craindre .	284

## P.

<b>To Prevent</b> . . . .	<b>Prévenir</b> . . .	} <b>Tenir</b> . . .	<b>246</b>
<b>Proceed</b> . . . .	<b>Provenir</b> . . .		
<b>Prescribe</b> . . . .	<b>Prescrire</b> . . .	} <b>Ecrire</b> . . .	<b>289</b>
<b>Proscribe</b> . . . .	<b>Proscrire</b> . . .		
<b>Prevail</b> . . . .	<b>Prévaloir</b> <sup>3</sup> . . .	<b>Valoir</b> . . .	<b>261</b>
<b>Provide</b> . . . .	<b>Pourvoir</b> <sup>4</sup> . . .	<b>Voir</b> . . .	<b>263</b>
<b>Pull down</b> . . . .	<b>Abattre</b> . . .	<b>Battre</b> . . .	<b>272</b>
<b>Preserve</b> . . . .	<b>Confire</b> . . .		<b>277</b>
<b>Put out</b> . . . .	<b>éteindre</b> . . .	} <b>Craindre</b> . . .	<b>284</b>
<b>Pretend</b> . . . .	<b>Feindre</b> . . .		
<b>Paint</b> . . . .	<b>Peindre</b> . . .		
<b>Pity</b> . . . .	<b>Plaindre</b> . . .	} <b>Faire</b> . . .	<b>290</b>
<b>Part with</b> . . . .	<b>Se Défaire</b> . . .		
<b>Put</b> . . . .	<b>Mettre</b> <sup>5</sup> . . .	} <b>Mettre</b> . . .	<b>294</b>
<b>Permit</b> . . . .	<b>Permettre</b> . . .		
<b>Promise</b> . . . .	<b>Promettre</b> <sup>6</sup> . . .		
<b>Put back again</b> . . . .	<b>Remettre</b> . . .		
<b>Put off</b> . . . .			
<b>Prejudice</b> . . . .	} <b>Prévenir</b> . . .	} <b>Tenir</b> . . .	<b>246</b>
<b>Prepossess</b> . . . .			
<b>Produce</b> . . . .	<b>Produire</b> . . .	<b>Conduire</b> . . .	<b>276</b>
<b>Pursue</b> . . . .	<b>Poursuivre</b> . . .	<b>Suivre</b> . . .	<b>308</b>
<b>Please</b> . . . .	<b>Plaire</b> . . .		<b>304</b>

<sup>1</sup> See p. 288.<sup>2</sup> Grows obsolete, p. 272.<sup>3</sup> See p. 262.<sup>4</sup> See p. 264.<sup>5</sup> See Note, p. 294.<sup>6</sup> See Note, p. 295.

<i>English.</i>	<i>R. French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Require . . .	Requérir . . .	Acquérir . . .	230
get Rid of . . .	Se Défaire . . .	Faire . . .	290
Run . . .	Courir . . .	} Courir . . .	232
Run to . . .	Accourir . . .		
Run over . . .	Parcourir . . .		
have Recourse to	Recourir . . .		
Run away . . .	Fuir <sup>1</sup> . . .		238
Retain . . .	Retenir . . .	} Tenir . . .	246
Return . . .	Revenir . . .		
Remember, or . . .	Se Souvenir <sup>2</sup> . . .		
Remind . . .			
Recollect . . .	Se Ressouvenir	} Mentir . . .	239
Relieve . . .	Subvenir . . .		
Resent . . .	Ressentir . . .		
Reply . . .	Repartir . . .		
Repent . . .	Se Repentir . . .		
Roar . . .	Bruire <sup>3</sup> . . .		275
Resolve . . .	Résoudre <sup>4</sup> . . .	Absoudre	271
Retract . . .	} Se Dédire <sup>5</sup> . . .	Dire . . .	286
Recant . . .			
Read . . .	Lire . . .	} Lire . . .	292
Read again . . .	Relire . . .		
Remove . . .	Démètre . . .	} Mettre . . .	294
Resign . . .	Se Démètre . . .		
Rise } as	Naître . . .	} Naître . . .	302
Revive } flowers.	Renaître . . .		
Rebuke . . .	Reprendre . . .	Prendre . . .	305
Reduce . . .	Réduire . . .	Conduire	276
Restrain . . .	Restraindre . . .	} Craindre	284
Reach . . .	Atteindre . . .		
Revive . . .	} Revivre . . .	Vivre . . .	312
Recover . . .			
S.			
To Succour . . .	Secourir . . .	Courir . . .	232
Sleep . . .	Dormir . . .	} Dormir . . .	234
make Sleep . . .	Endormir . . .		

<sup>1</sup> See p. 238, 239, Pret. and Imp.  
See p. 275.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 272.

<sup>2</sup> See Note †, p. 249.

<sup>5</sup> See Note \*, p. 287.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>To Shun</b> . . . .	Fuir . . . .		238
<b>Suffer</b> . . . .	Souffrir . . . .	Offrir . . . .	241
<b>Serve</b> . . . .	Servir . . . .		245
<b>Support</b> . . . .	Soutenir . . . .	} Tenir . . . .	246
<b>Suit</b> . . . .	Convenir . . . .		
<b>Start, Startle</b> . . . .	Tressaillir . . . .		247
<b>Stir up</b> . . . .	émouvoir . . . .	Mouvoir . . . .	258
<b>See</b> . . . .	Voir . . . .	} Voir . . . .	263
<b>See again</b> . . . .	Revoir . . . .		
<b>Solve</b> . . . .	Soudre <sup>1</sup> . . . .	Absoudre . . . .	271
<b>Sew</b> . . . .	} Coudre . . . .	} Coudre . . . .	280
<b>Stitch</b> . . . .			
<b>Sew again</b> . . . .	Recoudre . . . .		
<b>Sharpen</b> . . . .	Emoudre . . . .	Moudre . . . .	295
<b>Set out</b> . . . .	Partir . . . .	} Mentir . . . .	239
<b>Set out again</b> . . . .	Repartir . . . .		
<b>be Sensible of</b> . . . .	Ressentir . . . .		
<b>Smell</b> . . . .	Sentir . . . .		
<b>Struggle</b> . . . .	Se Débattre . . . .	Battre . . . .	272
<b>Sit down</b> . . . .	Asseoir <sup>2</sup> . . . .	} Asseoir . . . .	254
<b>Sit down again</b> . . . .	Se Rasseoir . . . .		
<b>Supersede</b> . . . .	Surseoir <sup>3</sup> . . . .		256
<b>Say</b> . . . .	Dire . . . .	} Dire . . . .	286
<b>Say again</b> . . . .	Redire . . . .		
<b>Slander</b> . . . .	} Médire <sup>4</sup> . . . .		
<b>Speak ill of</b> . . . .			
<b>Shut, or close</b> . . . .	Clorre . . . .	} Eclorre . . . .	288
<b>Shut, or</b>			
<b>Surround with</b>	} Enclorre <sup>5</sup> . . . .		
<b>walls, &amp;c.</b> . . . .			
<b>Subscribe</b> . . . .	Souscrire . . . .	Ecrire . . . .	289
<b>Satisfy</b> . . . .	Satisfaire . . . .	Faire . . . .	290
<b>Shine</b> . . . .	Luire <sup>6</sup> . . . .	Conduire . . . .	276
<b>Submit</b> . . . .	Soumettre . . . .	Mettre . . . .	294
<b>Surprise</b> . . . .	Surprendre . . . .	Prendre . . . .	305
<b>Smile</b> . . . .	Sourire . . . .	Rire . . . .	307

<sup>1</sup> See p. 271.<sup>2</sup> See p. 255.<sup>3</sup> See p. 256.<sup>4</sup> See Note, p. 287.<sup>5</sup> See p. 288.<sup>6</sup> See p. 293.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Seduce . . . .	Séduire . . .	Conduire	276
Suffice, or be Sufficient . . . }	Suffire <sup>1</sup> . . .	Confire . .	277
Seem . . . .	Paroître . . .	Connoître	278
Subtract . . . .	Soustraire . .	Traire . .	309

## T.

To Tell . . . .	Dire . . . .	} Dire . .	286
Tell again . . .	Redire . . .		
Transcribe . . .	Transcrire . .	Ecrire . .	289
Turn out . . . .	Démètre . . .	} Mettre . .	294
Transmit . . . .	Transmettre		
Take . . . .	Prendre . . .	} Prendre . .	305
Take again . . .	Reprendre . .		
Translate . . . .	Traduire . . .	Conduire	276
Throw down . . .	Abattre . . .	Battre . .	272

## U.

To Unsew . . . .	Découdre . . .	Coudre . .	280
Use, or make use of	Se Servir . . .	Servir . .	245
Uncover . . . .	Découvrir . . .	Offrir . .	241
Unsay . . . .	Se Dédire <sup>2</sup> . .	Dire . .	286
Undo . . . .	Défaire . . .	} Faire . .	290
Undo again . . .	Redéfaire . . .		
Understand . . .	Comprendre . .	} Prendre . .	305
Unlearn . . . .	Désapprendre		
Undertake . . . .	Entreprendre		

## V.

To Vanquish . . .	Vaincre <sup>3</sup> . . .		311
-------------------	----------------------------	--	-----

## W.

To Welcome . . .	Acueillir . . .	Cueillir . .	233
be Worth . . . .	Valoir . . . .		261
Wish, or be Willing	Vouloir <sup>4</sup> . . .		264
Write . . . .	écrire . . . .	} Ecrire . .	289
Write again . . .	Récrire . . . .		
Whet . . . .	Emoudre . . .	Moudre . .	295

<sup>1</sup> See p. 308.<sup>3</sup> See Note \*, p. 311.<sup>2</sup> See Note \*, p. 287.<sup>4</sup> See p. 265, 266.



**AN EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS MADE USE OF IN  
THE FOLLOWING WORK.**

<b>m.</b>	<b>Noun masculine.</b>
<b>f.</b>	<b>Noun feminine.</b>
<b>pl.</b>	<b>Plural.</b>
<b>adj.</b>	<b>Noun adjective.</b>
<b>pro.</b>	<b>Pronoun.</b>
<b>v.</b>	<b>Verb.</b>
<b>p. act.</b>	<b>Participle active.</b>
<b>p. p.</b>	<b>Participle passive.</b>
<b>p.</b>	<b>Preposition.</b>
<b>adv.</b>	<b>Adverb.</b>
<b>c.</b>	<b>Conjunction.</b>
<b>int.</b>	<b>Interjection.</b>

**∞** The English word that has this mark underneath, is not to be expressed in French.

The figures, <sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup>, <sup>3</sup>, &c. direct to the arrangement of the words in the French sentence.

Two words having the same figure are expressed by the French word placed under one of them.

Two or three words between parentheses ( ), are expressed by the French under them.

# THE SOUNDS

## OF THE

# FRENCH TONGUE;

### OR

## A FRENCH SPELLING BOOK.

---

### THE ALPHABET.

Roman Letters.		Italic Letters.		Old Pro.	New Pro.
A	a	<i>A</i>	<i>a</i>	ah	ah
B	b	<i>B</i>	<i>b</i>	bay	be†
C	c	<i>C</i>	<i>c</i>	say	ke and co
D	d	<i>D</i>	<i>d</i>	day	de
E	e	<i>E</i>	<i>e</i>	a	a
F	f	<i>F</i>	<i>f</i>	eff	fe
G	g	<i>G</i>	<i>g</i>	jay*	ghe and ge
H	h	<i>H</i>	<i>h</i>	ash	he
I	i	<i>I</i>	<i>i</i>	ee	ee
J	j	<i>J</i>	<i>j</i>	jee*	je*
K	k	<i>K</i>	<i>k</i>	kah	kah
L	l	<i>L</i>	<i>l</i>	ell	le
M	m	<i>M</i>	<i>m</i>	emm	me
N	n	<i>N</i>	<i>n</i>	enn	ne
O	o	<i>O</i>	<i>o</i>	o	o
P	p	<i>P</i>	<i>p</i>	pay	pe
Q	q	<i>Q</i>	<i>q</i>	kut†	ke
R	r	<i>R</i>	<i>r</i>	airr	re
S	s	<i>S</i>	<i>s</i>	ess	se
T	t	<i>T</i>	<i>t</i>	tay	te
U	u	<i>U</i>	<i>u</i>	ut†	ut†
V	v	<i>V</i>	<i>v</i>	vay	ve
X	x	<i>X</i>	<i>x</i>	eeks	ke-se
Y	y	<i>Y</i>	<i>y</i>	ee graik	ee graik
Z	z	<i>Z</i>	<i>z</i>	zaid	ze

\* The two consonants *g* and *j* are sounded in the Alphabet like *s* in *pleasure* or *s* in *azure*.

† *U* has no similar sound in English, and must be learned from the master.

‡ In the new pronunciation *e* after each consonant is sounded as in the English word *barber*, without sounding the *r*.

# A PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR.

---

## SECT. I.

**GRAMMAR** is the art of speaking and writing in any language with propriety; or, it is the art of rightly expressing our thoughts by words.

Grammar is of two kinds, general and particular. Universal grammar considers language in itself, explains the principles which are alike common to every tongue, and distinguishes, with precision, between those particulars which are essential and those which are only accidental. Particular grammar applies these common principles to a particular language, and furnishes certain rules and observations which are, either mediately or immediately, deducible from its common principles.

A grammar of the French tongue must be formed agreeably to the established usage, and those particular modes of expression, to which custom has given its sanction. It has therefore for its object, in common with all other grammars, the consideration of letters, syllables, words, sentences, &c.

**ALPHABET**;—is composed of twenty-five letters, of which words are formed; five of them, *a, e, i, o, u*, are distinguished by the name of vowels, which form a perfect sound of themselves. The twenty other letters *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, y, z*, are called consonants, and cannot be pronounced but when joined with vowels, except *y*, which has often the sound of double *i*, and of which some make a sixth vowel.

**VOWELS**, three sorts ;—**SIMPLE**, *a, e, i, o, u*, which are subdivided into short and long, whose sound is more prolonged and deeper.

**COMPOUND**, of two or three simple vowels, as *ai, ei, oi, ui, au, eu, ou, æ, œu* : *ai* has the sound of *e* mute in *faisant*, and the sound of *é* close in *je lirai*, as well as in all the verbs in the first person singular of the future.

**NASAL**, when they are joined to *m* or *n*, and when they form only one sound, as *an, am, en, em, in, im, ain, ein*.

**DIPHTHONG** ;—Is the union of several vowels, the pronunciation of which causes two sounds to be heard by a single impulse of the voice. *Dieu, yeux, niais, pion, ouie, mien*, are diphthongs ; yet *Caen, eau, paon, craie* are not so, because they are pronounced *Can, ô, pan, crê*.

**ACCENTS**, three sorts ;—The acute *'*, the grave *`*, and the circumflex *^*, serve to modify the sound of the vowels ; the office of the latter is to render long the vowels which are affected by it ; thus pronounce *â, ê, î, ô, û*, by a greater opening of the mouth, almost as if it were *aa, ee, ii, oo, uu*. It is thus we write *âge*, instead of *aage* ; this is also the reason why it is placed over the vowels that were formerly followed by *an s*, which has been dropped, since it is no longer pronounced ; as in *asne, beste*, in which the suppression of the *s*, requires that we should write *âne, bête*, in order to shew that *â* and *ê* are long.

**KINDS of E**, five ;—**TWO KINDS**, *Mute* : 1st.—One whose dull sound is almost null in *brave, encore*, which are pronounced no otherwise than *brav, encor*.

2d.—The other, whose sound, although obscure, can be prolonged, nearly as the sound of *eu*, in *je, me, te, revenir, redemander*.

3d.—**CLOSE**, by the accent *Acute*, in *bonté* ; also *ez* is equivalent to *é*, as in *voyez, lisez, touchez, &c.*

4th.—OPEN, by the accent *Grave*, in *accès, succès, nêfle*, which is suppressed in *greffe, sans cesse, abbesse*.

5th.—VERY OPEN, by the accent *Circumflex*, in *être, tête, tempête*, which were formerly pronounced and written *estre, teste, &c.*

MIDDLE, followed by a double consonant, and whose sound is between that of *é* close and *è* open, in *maisonnelle, musette, poulette*.

The DIÆRESIS, (¨)—Which is placed over the vowels *ë, î, ü*, and causes them to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel as in *poëte, aïeul, Saül*, and may be ranked among the accents.

The CEDILLA, (,)—A little dash, which is put under the *c*, is also a sort of accent, since it serves to modify the hard pronunciation which it would otherwise have before the vowels *a, o, u*, and to change it into that of *S*; it is thus we pronounce it in *françois, façon, reçu*.

The APOSTROPHE, (')—Is only a comma put over the place which the vowel *e* or *a* ought to occupy, which is suppressed when the word following begins with a vowel or an *h* not aspirate;\* thus, instead of *le esprit*,

### \* AN ALPHABETICAL LIST

of such French Words as have their initial *h* mute.

HABILE,	CLEVER	harmonic,	harmony
habilement,	cleverly	hebdomadaire,	weekly
habileté,	cleverness	Hébraïque,	Hebraick
habiller,	to clothe	Hébreu,	Hebrew
habillement,	dress	hécatombe,	an hecatomb
habit,	a coat	hégire,	hegira
habiter,	to inhabit	hélas !	alas !
habitable,	inhabitable	Hélicon,	Helicon
habitant,	inhabitant	héliotrope,	turn-sol
habitude,	custom	hémisphère,	hemisphere
habituel,	habitual	hémistiché,	hemistich
habituer,	to use	hémorrhagie,	bloody-flux
haleine,	breath	hémorrhoides,	piles
hameçon,	a fishing hook	hépatique,	hepatic

*la ambition, and le homme, we must pronounce and write l'esprit, l'ambition, l'homme. But when the h is*

herbage,	herbage, pasture	hôpital,	hospital
herbe,	herb or grass	horizon,	horizon
herboriste,	herbalist	horloge,	a clock
héréditaire,	hereditary	horloger,	watch-maker
bérésie,	heresy	hormis,	except
hérétique,	heretic	horoscope,	horoscope
héritage,	inheritance	horreur,	horror
hériter,	to inherit	horrible,	horrid
héritier,	an heir	horriblement,	horribly
heritière,	an heiress	hospitalier,	hospitable
hermine,	ermine	hospitalité,	hospitality
hermite,	an hermit	hostie,	host or victim
hermitage,	hermitage	hostilité,	hostility
héroïne,*	an heroine	hôte,	landlord
héroïque,	heroical	hôtesse,	landlady
héroïsme,	heroism	hôtel,	a great house
hésiter,	to hesitate	hôtelier,	inn-keeper
hésitation,	hesitation	hôtellerie,	an inn
heur,	luck	huile,	oil
heure,	hour	huilier,	oil-cruet
heureux,	happy	huissier,	usher or tip staff
heureusement,	happily	huitre,	oyster
hexagone,	an hexagon	humain,	humane
hexamètre,	hexameter	humainement,	humanely
hiatus,	hiatus, a gap	humaniser,	to civilise
hier,	yesterday	humanité,	humanity
hiéroglyphe,	hieroglyphic	humble,	humble
hirondelle,	a swallow	humblement,	humbly
histoire,	history	humectation,	moistening
historien,	historian	humecter,	to moisten
historique,	historical	humeur,	humour
histrion,	a buffoon	humide,	damp, moist
biver,	winter	humidité,	humidity
hiverner,	to winter	humilitan,	mortifying
holocauste,	burnt sacrifice	humiliation,	humiliation
hombre, (jeu)	ombre	humilier,	to humble
homélie,	an homily	humilité,	humility
homicide,	an homicide	hyacinthe,	hyacinth
hommage,	homage	hydre,	hydra
homme,	man	hydromel,	mead
honnête,	honest	hydropique,	hydropic
honnêtement,	honestly	hydropisie,	dropsy
honnêteté,	honesty	hymen,	hymen
honneur,	honour	hymne,	hymn
honorable,	honorable	hyperbole,	hyperbole
honoraire,	honorary	hypocondre,	hypocondriac
honorer,	to honour	hypocrisie,	hypocrisy

\* But the h is aspirated in héros.

aspirate, the article remains entire; we must not say *l'héros*, but pronounce *le héros*, *du héros*, *au héros*.

VARIATION IN THE PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS;—C is pronounced hard like *k* before the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, in *cocarde*, *cube*; like *s* before *e*, *i*, in *cécité*. There are even some words in which it is pronounced like *g*, as in *second*, &c. G is pronounced hard before *a*, *o*, *u*; like *j*, before *e*, *i*; when we wish to modify its pronunciation before *a*, *o*, *u*, an *e* is placed after it, as in, *il gagea*, *nageoire*; when on the contrary we wish to have it pronounced hard before *e*, *i*, an *u* is placed after it, as in *guérir*, *guide*. H is of two sorts, aspirate as in *haïr*, *envahir*; then the consonants by which it is preceded are not sounded; it is called mute, when it is not pronounced at all, as in *homme*, *héroïne*. The *h* of *héros* is aspirate, that of its derivatives is not so. Q when not the last letter of a word, as in *cing*, is never used without being followed by *u*, which gives it the pronunciation of *k*, as in *qui*, *quelconque*; yet in several words *u* has retained its ancient sound of *ou*, and then *qu* is pronounced like *kou*, as in *aquatique*, *equation*. S is pronounced hard in *salut*, *sénat*; but between two vowels, it takes the pronunciation of *z*, as in *viser*, *raison*, &c. T followed by *i* and another vowel, is pronounced like *c*, as in *partial*, *partiel*, *portion*; but if *ti* is preceded by *s* or *x*, or if it is at the beginning of a word, it is pronounced hard, as in *tirer*, *question*, *mixtion*. X is pronounced like *cs* in *fixer*, *taxer*; like *gz* in *examen*, *ex-*

hypocrite,	<i>hypocrite</i>	hypothèse,	<i>hypothesis</i>
hypothèque,	<i>mortgage</i>	hysope,	<i>hysop</i>
hypothéquer,	<i>to mortgage</i>	hystérique,	<i>hysteric</i>

In a familiar discourse, the letter *h* is not aspirated in the following words, viz. *Hanovre*, *Hollande*, and *Hongrie*, when either of them is preceded by the particle *de*; for though we always say *le Hanovre*, *la Hollande* and *la Hongrie*, yet it is usual to say and write *l'Electorat d'Hanovre*, *la Reine d'Hongrie*, *la toile d'Hollande*, and the like. As to other national and proper names, the initial *h* is aspirated in most of them; as in *Hainaut*, *Hambourgh*, *Havanne*, *Henri*, &c. but in *Hamilton*, *Harcourt*, *Hector*, *Hélène*, *Hercule*, *Hérode*, *Hémère*, *Horace*, and *Hyppolite*, it is mute.

*ample*; and like *s* in *six, dix, soixante*. *Ch* is generally pronounced like *sh*, as in *chat*; yet it is pronounced often like *k*: *Christ, orchestre, bacchante*, are examples. *Rh, th, ph*, are pronounced like *r, t, f*, in *rhume, thème, philosophe*, which are pronounced *rume, thème, filosofe*.

A SYLLABLE, whether composed of one or more letters, requires, in the pronunciation, no more than a single impulse of the voice: ex. *ba, me, moi, &c.*

A WORD may consist of one syllable, or of many compacted into one meaning; for, a word is the smallest part of speech which is in itself significant: ex. *mon, my; livre, book, &c.*

A SENTENCE, OR PHRASE, is an assemblage of words arranged in their proper order, forming a sense either more or less complete: ex.

*Je suis votre ami,* I am your friend.

*J'écrivis hier à votre tante,* I yesterday wrote to your aunt.

A PERIOD may consist of two or three sentences joined together, so that they depend on one another to form a complete sense. Each of the sentences forming part of a period is called a member of the period: ex.

<i>Les grands hommes sont rares;</i>	Great men are scarce; we
<i>on doit les respecter, et l'on</i>	ought to respect them,
<i>devoit toujours travailler à</i>	and constantly endeavour
<i>se rendre semblable à eux.</i>	to resemble them.

A DISCOURSE, OR SPEECH, is an assemblage of sentences (or phrases) and periods, joined together, and arranged according to the rules of the language.

## , KINDS OF WORDS.

There are, in the French tongue, nine different sorts of words, which are generally called the nine parts of speech, viz.

- |                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. L'ARTICLE,          | ARTICLE.            |
| 2. LE NOM ET ADJECTIF, | NOUN AND ADJECTIVE. |
| 3. LE PRONON,          | PRONOUN.            |
| 4. LE VERBE,           | VERB.               |



5. LE PARTICIPE,	PARTICIPE.
6. L'ADVERBE,	ADVERB.
7. LA PREPOSITION,	PREPOSITION.
8. LA CONJONCTION,	CONJUNCTION.
9. L'INTERJECTION,	INTERJECTION.

Five of them are declinable; that is to say, the radical part of the word remaining the same, the other parts, but especially the termination, will admit of several variations. These declinable words are, the article, noun and adjective, pronoun, verb, and participle.

The four last, as they never vary their terminations, are therefore called indeclinable.

### GENERAL EXPLANATION.

The ARTICLES are certain minute words, which, joined to nouns, determine the extent of their signification, and which, in French, denote their gender, number, and case, corresponding to the English words, *the, of the, from the, and to the*. These in French, are

<i>Le, la, les,</i>	The.
<i>De, du, de la, des,</i>	Of or from the.
<i>A, au, à la, aux.</i>	To the.

The NOUN, in general, is a word which is used to name or qualify every thing which is the object of discourse: ex.

<i>Papier,</i>	Paper.		<i>Bon,</i>	Good.
<i>Plume,</i>	Pen.		<i>Petit,</i>	Little.
<i>Pain,</i>	Bread.		<i>Mauvais,</i>	Bad, &c.

The PRONOUN is a word commonly substituted in the place of the noun, to avoid its too frequent repetition: ex.

*J'ai vu M. votre père, et lui ai parlé,* I saw your father, and spoke to him.

In this instance the word *lui*, to him, is put to avoid the repetition of the word *père*, father.

The VERB is a word which either expresses the state of the subject, or an action done by the subject, or the action received or suffered by the subject: ex.

<i>Mon frère est malade,</i>	My brother <i>is</i> ill.
<i>Mu sœur écrit une lettre,</i>	My sister <i>writes</i> a letter.
<i>Votre cousine est punie,</i>	Your cousin <i>is</i> punished.

The verb is varied by moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

The **PARTICIPLE** partakes both of the nature of the verb and the adjective noun : ex.

<i>Ayant,</i>	Having.		<i>Aimé,</i>	Loved.
<i>Donnant,</i>	Giving.		<i>Puni,</i>	Punished, &c.

The **ADVERB** is sometimes joined to the noun, but more frequently to the verb, whence it derives its name. The use of the adverb is, to determine the signification of the noun or verb, or express some particular modification or circumstance of the action or quality : ex.

<i>Je vous aime sincèrement,</i>	I love you <i>sincerely</i> .
<i>Venez demain,</i>	Come <i>to-morrow</i> .

In these instances the words *sincerely* and *to-morrow* are adverbs.

The **PREPOSITION** is a word which is put before the noun or pronoun, and it always governs the word before which it is placed : ex.

<i>Chez mon ami,</i>	<i>At</i> my friend's house.
<i>Devant moi,</i>	<i>Before</i> me, &c.

The **CONJUNCTION** serves to connect the several parts of a discourse : ex. *et*, and ; *car*, for ; *mais*, but, &c.

The **INTERJECTION** is a word which expresses the different affections or passions of the soul : ex.

<i>Hélas ! mon Dieu !</i>	<i>Oh !</i> my God ! &c.
---------------------------	--------------------------

A more particular delineation of these nine parts of speech, and their use in the composition of a sentence, or period, will be the subject of the following sections.

---

## SECT. II.

### OF NOUNS.

**NOUNS** are divided into substantives and adjectives. A **NOUN SUBSTANTIVE** expresses a thing subsisting by itself,

and can make a complete sense independent of any other word: ex. *Dieu*, God; *roi*, king; *maison*, house, &c.

A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE is either common, collective, or proper.

A COMMON NOUN is applicable to all beings or things of the same kind: ex. *homme*, man; *roi*, king; *ville*, town; *table*, table, &c.

A COLLECTIVE NOUN is expressive of many particulars; yet, as these particulars are all united in the mind, and comprehended under one general idea, they may therefore be conceived as one individual, and, without any impropriety, expressed in the singular number: ex. *peuple*, people; *forêt*, forest; *armée*, army, &c.

A PROPER NOUN is applicable to one person or thing only: ex. *Pierre*, Peter; *Londres*, London, &c.

N. B. A noun is always a substantive when we cannot, with propriety, add to it the word *personne*, person, or the word *chose*, thing.

A NOUN ADJECTIVE is used to express the quality, colour, form or quantity, of the substance to which it belongs; and is so called because its meaning cannot be ascertained without being joined to its proper substantive, with which it must also agree in gender, number, and case: ex. *bon*, good; *aimable*, lovely; *rouge*, red; *jaune*, yellow; *rond*, round; *quarré*, square; *un*, one; *deux*, two; *trois*, three, &c.

N. B. The noun is always adjective when we can add to it the word *personne* or *chose*, person or thing.

In NOUNS, four things must be considered, viz.

<i>Les Articles</i> ,	The Articles.
<i>Les Genres</i> ,	The Genders.
<i>Les Nombres</i> ,	The Numbers.
<i>Les Cas</i> ,	The Cases.

## ARTICLES.

There are three sorts of Articles, viz.

<i>L'Article défini</i> ,	The Article definite.
<i>L'Article partitif</i> ,	The Article partitive.
<i>L'Article indéfini</i> ,	The Article indefinite.

The Article must always agree with the noun in gender and number.

The DEFINITE ARTICLE is so called, because it means the whole of the object to which it is applied.

#### SINGULAR.

*Le*, for the masculine, before nouns beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated : ex. *le roi*, the king; *le héros*, the hero, &c.

*La*, for the feminine : ex. *la reine*, the queen, &c.

*L'*, with an elision, for both genders, before nouns singular beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated : ex. *l'enfant*, the child; *l'homme*, the man, &c.

#### PLURAL.

*Les*, for both genders, whether the noun begin with a consonant or a vowel : ex. *les rois*, the kings; *les reines*, the queens; *les enfans*, the children, &c.

The PARTITIVE ARTICLE means only a part of the object, the English word *SOME* being always expressed or implied.

#### SINGULAR.

	}	These two articles are used
<i>Du</i> , for the masc.		before nouns beginning with a
<i>De la</i> , for the fem.		consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated : ex. <i>du pain</i> , some bread; <i>de la viande</i> , some meat.

*De l'*, for both genders, beginning with a vowel or an *h* not aspirated : ex. *de l'encre*, some ink.

#### PLURAL.

*Des*, for both genders : ex. *des amis*, some friends.

The INDEFINITE ARTICLE is *de* or *d'*, of, from, and *à*, to.

This article is used, without distinction, before nouns masculine and feminine in both numbers. Proper names, and the greater part of the pronouns, are declined with it.

Some grammarians admit of a fourth article, viz. *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine, in English *a* or *an*; but it may be observed, that it is always declined

with the indefinite article, and therefore takes the nature of a noun adjective.

### GENDERS AND NUMBERS.

There are two GENDERS, viz. the masculine and feminine. A noun is masculine when there is before it *le* or *un*, as *le* or *un livre*, the or a book. A noun is feminine when it is preceded by *la* or *une*, as *la* or *une plume*, the or a pen.

There are two NUMBERS, the singular and plural. The singular number speaks of one thing only, as *une table*, a table: the plural speaks of more than one, as, *des tables*, tables. There are some nouns that are never used but in the singular number: as,

1. The names of metals: ex. *or*, gold; *argent*, silver; *cuivre*, brass; *plomb*, lead, &c.
2. The names of virtues and vices: ex. *avarice*, avarice; *charité*, charity; *foi*, faith; *haine*, hatred; *orgueil*, pride; *prodigalité*, prodigality, &c.
3. The names by which the five senses are denoted: ex. *la vue*, the sight; *le goût*, the taste; *l'odorat*, the smell; *le toucher*, feeling; *l'ouïe*, hearing.
4. Proper names, except when they are used metaphorically.
5. To the foregoing may be added the following, which are not reducible to any general rules:

<i>Artillerie</i> ,	artillery.	<i>Faim</i> ,	hunger.
<i>Attirail</i> ,	implements.	<i>Fumée</i> ,	smoke.
<i>Bonheur</i> ,	happiness.	<i>Fuite</i> ,	flight.
<i>Colère</i> ,	anger.	<i>Gloire</i> ,	glory.
<i>Courroux</i> ,	wrath.	<i>Honte</i> ,	shame.
<i>Enfance</i> ,	infancy.	<i>Jeunesse</i> ,	youth.
<i>Lait</i> ,	milk.	<i>Salut</i> ,	safety.
<i>Miel</i> ,	honey.	<i>Soif</i> ,	thirst.
<i>Noblesse</i> ,	nobility.	<i>Sommeil</i> ,	sleep.
<i>Pauvreté</i> ,	poverty.	<i>Vieillesse</i> ,	old age.
<i>Sang</i> ,	blood.		

There are others which are never used but in the plural number only; such as,

<i>Ancêtres,</i>	ancestors.	<i>Atours,</i>	apparel.
<i>Ayeux,</i>	forefathers.	<i>Ciseaux,</i>	scissars.
<i>Funérailles,</i>	a funeral.	<i>Hardes,</i>	clothes.
<i>Frais,</i>	expense.	<i>Limites,</i>	limits.
<i>Délices,</i>	delight.	<i>Mœurs,</i>	manners.
<i>Dépens,</i>	cost.	<i>Mouchettes,</i>	snuffers.
<i>Entrailles,</i>	entrails.	<i>Ténèbres,</i>	darkness.
<i>Epousailles,</i>	espousals.	<i>Vivres,</i>	victuals.
<i>Fonts,</i>	font.		

And, in general, those which, in English, admit of no singular.

In general the plural number is formed by adding *s* to the singular: ex.

*Le père,* the father;      *les pères,* the fathers,  
*La mère,* the mother;      *les mères,* the mothers, &c.

All nouns, having their singular ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the plural: ex.

*Le fils,* the son;      *les fils,* the sons.  
*Une noix,* a walnut;      *des noix,* walnuts.  
*Le nez,* the nose;      *les nez,* the noses.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

Nouns ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, *ieu*, or *ou*, form their plural by *x*, instead of *s*: ex.

*Un chapeau,* a hat;      *des chapeaux,* hats.  
*Un manteau,* a cloak;      *des manteaux,* cloaks.  
*Un lieu,* a place;      *des lieux,* places.  
*Un chou,* a cabbage;      *des choux,* cabbages.

The following differ from this rule, and their plural terminates in *s*:

*Matou,* a great cat;      *matous,* great cats.  
*Sou,* a cent;      *sous,* cents.  
*Trou,* a hole;      *trous,* holes.

Nouns ending in *al* and *ail* have their plural in *aux*: ex.

*Animal,* a living creature;      *animaux,* living creatures.  
*Cheval,* a horse;      *chevaux,* horses.  
*Travail,* work;      *travaux,* works.

These only are excepted :

<i>Bal</i> , a ball,	<i>Gouvernail</i> , the helm,
<i>Détail</i> , account, retail,	<i>Sérail</i> , a seraglio,
<i>Eventail</i> , a fan,	<i>Portail</i> , gateway,

Which form their plural in *s*.

Nouns of more than one syllable (polysyllables) ending in *nt*, most generally form their plural by changing the *t* into *s* : as,

*Enfant*, a child ; *enfants*, children.

*Commandement*, command ; *commandemens*, commands.

But nouns of one syllable only (monosyllables) preserve the *t*, and form their plural by adding *s* : as,

*Dent*, tooth ; *dents*, teeth.

*Pont*, bridge ; *ponts*, bridges.

*Tout*, adj. all, makes *tous*, in its plural masculine, *toute* in the feminine gender sing. and *toutes* in the plural.

The following are not conformable to any established rule.

*Ayeul*, a grandfather ; *ayeux*, grandfathers.

*Bétail*, cattle ; *bestiaux*, cattle.

*Ciel*, heaven ; *cieux*, heavens.

*Œil*, the eye ; *yeux*, eyes.

Except { *des ciels de lit*,\* testers of a bed,  
          { *des œils de bœuf*, ovals.

There are in French several compound words like the last two, which require some attention from the learner, in the formation of their plural, the difficulty of which may soon be removed by means of reflection ; for example :

A noun being composed of a substantive and an adjective, united by a hyphen, both admit of the plural formation : as,

*Un gentil-homme*, a noble- *des gentils-hommes*, noble-  
man ; men.

A noun compounded of two substantives and a preposition, united by hyphens, the first only in French,

\* This term is growing obsolete : it is better to say, *un fond de lit*.

which is generally the last in English, admits of the plural formation : as,

*Un arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow ;      *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.

*Un chef-d'œuvre*, a master-piece.      *des chefs-d'œuvre*, master-pieces.

**N. B.** Some of these French compound words are sometimes rendered in English by one word, in which case the formation of the plural in the French is still the same : as,

*Un cul-de-sac*, an alley (with-      *des culs-de-sac*, alleys.  
out egress) ;

Nouns composed of a verb or a preposition and a substantive, the substantive only admits of the plural formation : as,

*Un avant-toit*, eaves.      *des avant-toits*, eaves.

*Un casse-noisette*, a nut-cracker ;      *des casse-noisettes*, nut-crackers.

*Un garde-fou*, a rail ;      *des garde-foux*, rails, &c.

*Monseigneur*, my lord      *Messeigneurs*, my lords.

*Monsieur*, Mr. or gent.      *Messieurs*, gentlemen.

*Madame*, Mrs. or madam      *Mesdames*, ladies.

*Mademoiselle*, miss      *Mesdemoiselles*, misses.

## CASES.

There are six cases, viz.

- |                         |             |
|-------------------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>Le Nominatif</i>  | Nominative. |
| 2. <i>Le Génitif</i> ,  | Genitive.   |
| 3. <i>Le Datif</i> ,    | Dative.     |
| 4. <i>L'Accusatif</i> , | Accusative. |
| 5. <i>Le Vocatif</i> ,  | Vocative.   |
| 6. <i>L'Ablatif</i> ,   | Ablative.   |

The NOMINATIVE and ACCUSATIVE cases have exactly the same form, and are always declined with the same article ; the only difference between them arises from their different positions in the sentence.

In the natural construction, the nominative always precedes the verb, and the accusative follows it. The



nominative is the *subject* of the sentence, and the accusative is the *object* to which it refers : ex.

*Le roi aime le peuple,*                      The king loves the people.

In order to know the nominative from the accusative, I ask, Who loves the people? THE KING (which is the answer) is the subject, and consequently the nominative. Whom or what does the King love? The answer is THE PEOPLE, which is the object, and therefore the accusative.

The GENITIVE and ABLATIVE are declined with the same article, but the first is always preceded by another word on which it depends : as,

*La porte de la chambre,*                      The chamber door, that is,  
the door of the chamber.

*La maison de mon père,*                      My father's house, &c.

Or it is governed by a preposition, as,

*Près du feu,*                                      Near the fire, &c.

The last is always put after nouns or verbs expressing division, partition, or separation ; and after some prepositions. The genitive is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* of or of the. Sometimes the article is not expressed in English, as may be seen in the sentences before mentioned. The ablative is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* from or from the.

The DATIVE shows to whom the thing spoken of, is given, or to what it is attributed : as,

*Donnez cette pomme à mon frère,*                      Give that apple to my brother.

This case is known by the articles *à, au, à la, aux,* to or to the.

The VOCATIVE is used only for calling or naming the person to whom the speech is addressed : as,

*Ami, qui êtes-vous ?*                      Friend, who are you?

## DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

All changes in nouns are formed by numbers and cases. To decline a noun, therefore, is to express its

several variations ; and, under these variations, to point out its different significations.

Some short examples are added to the nouns, that learners may more easily understand what has been said respecting the cases.

*Declension of the Article Definite Le (the), before Nouns masculine beginning with a Consonant.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>Le Prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Le prince est généreux,</i>	The prince is generous.
Gen. <i>Du prince,</i>	Of the prince.
<i>Les vertus du prince,</i>	The virtues of the prince ; or, the prince's virtues.
Dat. <i>Au prince,</i>	To the prince.
<i>Parler au prince,</i>	To speak to the prince.
Acc. <i>Le prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Aimer le prince,</i>	To love the prince.
Voc. <i>O prince,</i>	O prince.
Abl. <i>Du prince,</i>	From the prince.
<i>Recevoir des lettres du prince,</i>	To receive letters from the prince.

*Declension of the Article Definite La (the), before Nouns feminine beginning with a Consonant.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>La princesse,</i>	The princess.
<i>La princesse est aimable,</i>	The princess is amiable.
Gen. <i>De la princesse,</i>	Of the princess.
<i>Les regards de la princesse,</i>	The looks of the princess ; or, the princess's looks.
Dat. <i>A la princesse,</i>	To the princess.
<i>Donner à la princesse,</i>	To give to the princess.
Acc. <i>La princesse,</i>	The princess.
<i>Imitez la princesse,</i>	Imitate the princess.
Voc. <i>O princesse,</i>	O princess.
Abl. <i>De la princesse,</i>	From the princess.
<i>Etre séparé de la princesse,</i>	To be separated from the princess.

*Declension of the Article Definite L' (the), for both Genders, before Nouns beginning with a Vowel, or an H not aspirated.*

## SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>L'enfant,</i>	The child.
<i>L'enfant est timide,</i>	The child is fearful.
Gen. <i>De l'enfant,</i>	Of the child.
<i>Le tempérament de l'enfant,</i>	The child's temper; or, the temper of the child.
Dat. <i>A l'enfant,</i>	To the child.
<i>Attribuer à l'enfant,</i>	To attribute to the child.
Acc. <i>L'enfant,</i>	The child.
<i>Admirer l'enfant,</i>	To admire the child.
Voc. <i>O enfant,</i>	O child.
Abl. <i>De l'enfant,</i>	From the child.
<i>S'éloigner de l'enfant,</i>	To go away from the child.

The plural of these nouns, whether they begin with a consonant or a vowel, is declined, in both genders, by the article *les* (the).

Nom. <i>Les rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Les rois commandent,</i>	The kings command.
Gen. <i>Des rois,</i>	Of the kings.
<i>L'ordre des rois,</i>	The order of the kings: or, the kings' order.
Dat. <i>Aux rois,</i>	To the kings.
<i>Envoyer aux rois,</i>	To send to the kings.
Acc. <i>Les rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Respectez les rois,</i>	Honour the kings.
Voc. <i>O rois,</i>	O kings.
Abl. <i>Des rois,</i>	From the kings.
<i>Etre loin des rois,</i>	To be far from the kings.

### RECAPITULATION OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

Mas. Fem. Mas. &amp; Fem.

Mas. &amp; Fem.

*Le, la, l' ;**Les, the.**Du, de la, de l' ;**Des, of or from the.**Au, à la, à l' ;**Aux, to the.*

The *definite article* must be placed, in French, before all nouns used in a *general sense*, or denoting a whole species of objects, though the English admit of no article in this case: ex.

<i>L'homme est mortel,</i>	Man is mortal.
<i>Le Danemarc, la Suède, et</i>	Denmark, Sweden, and
<i>l'Angleterre, sont les trois</i>	England, are the three
<i>royaumes du nord,</i>	northern kingdoms.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I	hate	idleness.	--	Virtue	is	estimable.	--
<i>Je, pro.</i>	<i>hais, v.</i>	<i> paresse, f.</i>		<i>Vertu, f. est, v.</i>	<i>estimable, adj.</i>		
Gold	is	preferable	to	silver.	-- --	Do	you <sup>2</sup>
<i>Or, m.</i>		<i>préférable, adj.</i>		<i>argent, m.</i>		<i>vous, pro.</i>	
prefer <sup>1</sup>	England	to	France?	Corn	grows		
<i>préférez, v.</i>	<i>Angleterre, f.</i>			<i>France, f.</i>	<i>Bled, m. croît, v.</i>		
for	men,	and	grass	for	cattle.	-- --	Love,
<i>pour, p. homme, m.</i>	<i>et, c.</i>	<i>herbe, f.</i>		<i>bétail, m.</i>	<i>Aimez, v.</i>		
wisdom.	-- --	Do	'not <sup>3</sup>	neglect <sup>2</sup>	study.	--	
<i>sagesse, f.</i>		<i>ne pas, adv.</i>		<i>négligez, v.</i>	<i>étude, f.</i>		
Avoid	leisure.	-- --	She	comes	from	church.	--
<i>Evitez, v.</i>	<i>loisir, m.</i>		<i>Elle, pro. vient, v.</i>	<i>église, f.</i>			
We	speak	of	America,	and	not		
<i>Nous, pro.</i>	<i>parlons, v.</i>	<i>Amérique, f.</i>		<i>non pas, adv.</i>			
of	Poland.	-- --	Grant	us	peace.	-- --	
<i>Pologne, f.</i>	<i>Accordez, v.</i>	<i>nous, pro.</i>	<i>paix, f.</i>				
Honour	is	due	to	kings.	-- --	They	
<i>Honneur, m.</i>		<i>dû, p. p.</i>		<i>roi, m.</i>		<i>Ils, pro.</i>	
come	from	Africa.	-- --	Pride	disgraces	man.	--
<i>viennent, v.</i>	<i>Afrique, f.</i>	<i>Orgueil, m.</i>	<i>dégrade, v.</i>				
Charity	patiently <sup>2</sup>	bears <sup>1</sup>	injuries <sup>3</sup> .				
<i>Charité, f.</i>	<i>patiemment, adv.</i>	<i>souffre, v.</i>	<i>injure, f.</i>				

This article is also placed before nouns used in a *specific sense*, or denoting a particular object, in which case the article is likewise expressed in English: ex.

<i>L'homme que vous m'avez</i>	The man whom you re-
<i>recommandé est fort ha-</i>	commended to me is
<i>bile,</i>	very skillful.

*Les poires de votre jardin*    *The pears of your garden*  
*sont excellentes,*                      *are excellent.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

Where is the master of the house? - - The  
*Où, adv.*                      *maître, m.*                      *maison, f.*  
 prince spoke to the king. - - To the third  
*prince, m.*    *parla, v.*                      *troisième, adj.*  
 page of the book. - - The<sup>1</sup> lazy<sup>2</sup>                      do<sup>3</sup> not<sup>4</sup>  
*page, f.*                      *livre, m.*                      *paresseux, adj.*    *en*  
 love<sup>4</sup> work<sup>5</sup>. - - - - Justice is the mistress and  
*aiment, v.*    *ouvrage, m.*    *Justice, f.*                      *maîtresse, f.*  
 queen of virtue. - - Send the child to school. - -  
*reine, f.*                      *Envoyez, v.*    *enfant, m.*    *école, f.*  
 Walk in the garden. - - Tranquillity  
*Promenez-vous, v.*    *dans, p.*    *jardin, m.*    *Tranquillité, f.*  
 of soul is the height of felicity. - - Give the tooth  
*âme, f.*                      *comble, m.*    *félicité, f.*    *Donnez, v.*    *cure-*  
 picks to the gentlemen. - - - - Education is to the  
*dent, m.*                      *gentil-homme, m.*    *Education, f.*  
 mind, what cleanliness is to the body. - - The  
*esprit, m.*    *ce que, pro.*    *propreté, f.*                      *corps, m.*  
 life of man is short. - - The enemies were on  
*vie, f.*                      *courte, adj.*    *ennemi, m.*    *étaient, v.*    *sur, p.*  
 the mountain. - - You admire the beauty of  
*montagne, f.*    *Vous, pro.*    *admirez, v.*    *beauté, f.*  
 the ladies. - - To the thickness of the walls. - - We  
*dame, f.*                      *épaisseur, f.*                      *muraille, f.*  
 go to the park. - - - - It is the will of the em-  
*allons, v.*                      *parc, m.*    *C'est, v.*    *volonté, f.*                      *em-*  
 peror. - - - - The fate of nations is governed  
*pereur, m.*                      *sort, m.*                      *nation, f.*    *gouverné, p. p.*  
 by Providence. - - You play with the boys.  
*par, p.*    *Providence, f.*                      *jouez, v.*    *avec, p.*    *garçon, m.*  
 - - Revenge is the pleasure of a weak<sup>2</sup> mind<sup>1</sup>. - -  
*Vengeance, f.*                      *plaisir, m.*                      *un foible, adj.*  
 Italy is the garden of Europe. - - The most noble  
*Italie, f.*                      *Europe, f.*                      *plus, adv.*    *noble, adj.*

of virtues is charity. - - Carry the grammar to the  
*Portez, v. grammaire, f.*  
 boys, and the dictionary to the girls. - - - He  
*dictionnaire, m. fille, f. Il, pro.*  
 comes from the Indies. - - Give me the loaf.  
*vient, v. Inde, f. moi, pro. pain, m.*

This article being declinable in French, and consequently admitting of different variations, ought to be repeated before all the *substantives* of a sentence, as well as before nouns adjective used as substantives, and agree with them in *gender* and *number* : ex.

<i>Le sel, la moutarde, et l'huile, sont sur les tables,</i>	The salt, mustard, and oil, are on the tables.
<i>Le blanc, le rouge, et le noir, sont trois différentes couleurs,</i>	White, red, and black, are three different colours.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Prefer virtue to riches, friendship to  
*Préférez, v. richesses, f. pl. amitié, f.*  
 money, and utility to pleasure. - - The father, mother,  
*argent, m. utilité, f. père, m. mère, f.*  
 and children are dead. - - The men, women, and children of the village were all at the burial. - - - -  
*sont, v. morts, p. p. femme, f.*  
*village, m. tous, adj. à, p. enterrement, m.*  
 Children generally<sup>2</sup> like<sup>1</sup> apples and pears. - -  
*ordinairement, adv. aiment, v. pomme, f. poire, f.*  
 I like yellow and grey. - - Peace and plenty  
*aime, v. jaune, m. gris, m. abondance, f.*  
 make men happy. - - - - Wheat and barley  
*rendent, v. heureux, adj. Froment, m. orge, f.*  
 are dear. - - - I hate milk, butter, and cheese. - -  
*chers, adj. lait, m. beurre, m. fromage, m.*  
 Bring the knives and forks. - - - Patience  
*Apportez, v. couteau, m. fourchette, f. Patience, f.*  
 and perseverance are necessary. - - - - The  
*persévérance, f. nécessaire, adj. désir, m.*

of glory, riches, power, and pleasure, is a  
*gloire, f. pouvoir, m. une*  
 disease of the mind. - - - Have you passed  
*maladie, f. âme, f. Avez, v. passé, p. p.*  
 through Spain, Portugal, or Holland? - - Pre-  
*par, p. Espagne, f. Portugal, m. ou Hollande, f.*  
 fer always virtue, prudence, and good sense  
*toujours, adv. prudence, f. bon, adj. sens, m.*  
 to beauty. - - Put the wine, beer, and cider on  
*Mettez, v. vin, m. bière, f. cidre, m. sur, p.*  
 the table. - - (It is said) that America, France, and  
*table, f. On dit que*  
 Spain have made peace with England.  
*ont, v. fait, p. p.*

On the contrary, this article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French, before a noun followed by a name denoting a *degree of consanguinity or kindred*, or the name of a *particular place* to which it belongs; and when it precedes a noun in the nominative or accusative case, denoting *dignity, office, or business*: ex.

*Alexandre, fils de Philippe,* Alexander the son of Philip.  
*Mon ami demeure à Londres, ville capitale d'Angleterre,* My friend lives in London, the capital city of England.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The Jupiter of the heathens was the son of  
*payen, m. étoit, v. fils, m.*  
 Saturn, and the father of the gods. - - - Robert,  
*Saturne, m. dieu, m.*  
 duke of Normandy, the brother of Henry, king  
*duc, m. Normandie, f. frère, m. Henri, m.*  
 of England, was the son of William the con-  
*Guillaume, m. con-*  
 queror. - - My sister lives at York, the cap-  
*quérant, m. Ma, pro. sœur, f. demeure, v. à, p.*  
 ital city of the county of the same name.  
*comté, m. même, adj. nom, m.*

Mr. C\*\*\*, the rector of the parish of St. James, and  
                                 *curé, m.*                      *paroisse, f.* *Jâques*  
 his brother, the dean of the cathedral, were  
*son, pro.*                      *doyen, m.*                      *cathédrale, f.*  
 the sons of Mr. L\*\*\*, the first lord of  
   *premier, adj.*    *seigneur*  
 the admiralty.

In several instances, the definite article is neither expressed in English nor in French ; and this generally happens when nouns common are not taken in the full extent of their signification, especially in narrations, and after the conjunction *ni*, neither, nor : ex.

*Conscience, honneur, intérêt,*    *Conscience, honour, inter-*  
*tout est sacrifié ; il n'a*            *est, every thing is sacri-*  
*ni justice ni humanité,*            *ficed ; he has neither*  
   *justice nor humanity.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The town was taken by storm : men,  
                         *ville, f.*    *fut, v.*    *prise, p.p.*    *d'assaut, m.*  
 women, children, old people, (every body) was  
   *vieillard, m.*    *tout, adj.*  
 put to death. - - Palaces, temples, public<sup>2</sup> build-  
*mis, p.p.*    *à mort, f.*    *Palais,*                      *édi-*  
 ings<sup>1</sup>,            private<sup>2</sup>                      houses (every thing) was  
*fice, m.*    *particulière, adj.*    *maison, f.*    (*tout*)  
 destroyed, and the enemies did<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> leave<sup>2</sup> stone  
*détruit, p.p.*                                      *laissèrent, v.*    *pierre, f.*  
 upon stone. - - - His father will<sup>2</sup> spare<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>neither<sup>3</sup>  
*sur, p.*                      *Son, pro.*                      *épargnera, v.*    *ne*    *ni*  
 pains nor money. - - - He is a fatherless child,  
*peine, f.*                                      *C'est, v.*    *orphelin, adj.*    *or*  
 he has neither parents nor friends.  
                                 *parent, m.*                      *ami, m.*

When, in English, two or more substantives, signifying different things, come together in a sentence, having a dependence on each other, and having no stop between them, the last (in English) must be placed



at the beginning of the sentence (in French), and the others having the sign of the English genitive, thus ('s) or (') only, come after it, with the genitive of this article before them, according to their gender and number : ex.

*Le fils du roi,*                      The king's son.  
*La couronne de la reine,*      The queen's crown.  
 That is, *the son of the king, the crown of the queen.*

# EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have seen the king's apartments and the  
*ai, v. vu, p. p. appartement, m.*  
 queen's picture. ---- The chancellor's son's wife is  
*portrait, m. chancelier, m.*  
 the prime minister's eldest<sup>a</sup> sister<sup>l</sup>. ---- The man's  
*premier, m. aînée, adj. sœur, f.*  
 strength is very great. ---- Lend me the  
*force, f. grande, adj. Prêtez, v. moi, pro.*  
 maid's cloak. ---- My cousin's brother is  
*servante, f. mantelet, m. Mon, pro. cousin, m.*  
 my uncle's best friend. ---- The title of  
*oncle, m. meilleur, adj. ami, m. titre, m.*  
 Dauphin belongs to the king of France's eldest  
*appartient, v.*  
 son. -- Modesty is a woman's greatest orna-  
*Modestie, f. une femme, f. plus grand, adj. orne-*  
 ment.  
*ment, m.*

The genitive of this article is often made in English by *to*, especially before nouns expressing *alliance, consanguinity, or kindred, witness, or inheritance* ; and in short whenever *to* may be rendered by the above genitive : ex.

*Monseigneur le duc de \*\*\*,* My lord duke of \*\*\*, bro-  
*frère du roi,* ther to the king, or the  
 king's brother.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Mr. Richard, brother to the Prince's steward,  
*intendant, m.*  
 has married Miss Prescott, niece to the Constable  
*a, v. épousé, p. p. nièce, f. connétable, m.*  
 of the Tower. --- I have spoken to the Marchioness  
*Tour, f. parlé, p. p. Marquise, f.*  
 of \*\*\*, sister to the queen's first Lady of honour. --  
*Dame, f.*  
 Mr. Henry, perfumer to the princess, has made  
*Henri, m. parfumeur, m. fait, p. p.*  
 a <sup>2</sup>considerable <sup>1</sup>fortune. ---- The heir to the  
*considérable, adj. fortune, f. héritier, m.*  
 crown of Portugal is the Prince of Brasil. -- My  
*couronne, f. du Brésil, m.*  
 father was witness to that quarrel. ---  
*a été, p. p. témoin, m. cette, pro. querelle, f.*  
 I am a friend to <sup>2</sup>diligent <sup>1</sup>scholars, and an  
*suis, v. ∞ diligent, adj. écolier, m. ∞*  
 enemy to idleness.  
*ennemi, m. paresse, f.*

After the adverb *bien*, when placed before a substantive and signifying *much*, *a great deal*, *many*, the genitive of this article must always be used: ex.

<i>Bien du mérite,</i>	Much merit.
<i>Bien des amis,</i>	Many friends.
<i>Bien de l'argent,</i>	A great deal of money.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The children make much noise. ---- This man  
*font, v. bruit, m. Cet, pro.*  
 has (a great deal) of money, but he has also many  
*aussi, adv.*  
 enemies. ---- They <sup>2</sup>give <sup>1</sup>you much trouble  
*donnent, v. peine, f.*  
 now ; but they will <sup>2</sup>give <sup>1</sup>you <sup>1</sup>afterward  
*à présent, adv. mais, c. donneront, v. ensuite, adv.*  
 much pleasure. ----- (There were) many ladies in  
*Il y avoit, v.*

company (last night). ---- Mr. R. has read  
*compagnie, f. hier au soir, adv. lu, p. p.*  
 many books, and he has acquired much know-  
*livre, m. acquis, p. p. connois-*  
 ledge. ---- To teach youth (we must  
*sances, f. pl. Pour, p. enseigner, v. jeunesse, f. (il faut, v.*  
 have) a great deal of patience.  
*avoir, v.)*

If the second substantive in French (which is the first in English) serve to denote some *particular commodity, use, quality, or liquor*, then it must be put in the dative :  
 ex.

*Le pot au lait,* The<sup>1</sup> milk<sup>2</sup>-pot<sup>2</sup>.  
*La femme aux pommes,* The<sup>1</sup> apple<sup>2</sup>-woman<sup>2</sup>.  
*Une cruche à l'eau,* A water-jug.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Tell the servant to bring<sup>2</sup>  
*Dites, v. au or à la domestique, m. & f. de apporter, v.*  
 me<sup>1</sup> the tea-cannister, sugar - dish, cream-  
*me, pro. thé, m. boîte, f. sucre, m. pot, m. crème, f.*  
 basin, and coffee-cups. -- Go to the wine-cellar  
*bassin, m. café, m. tasse, f. Allez, v. vin, m. cave, f.*  
 and bring<sup>2</sup> us<sup>1</sup> the vinegar-bottle. ---- (There is)  
*vinaigre, m. bouteille, f. Voilà*  
 the oyster-woman. --- I live in the hay-market,  
*huître, f. pl. foin, m. marché, m.*  
 my cousin in the fish-market, and my sister  
*mon, pro. poisson, m. ma, pro.*  
 in the poultry-market. ---- Give me the oil-  
*volaille, f. moi, pro. huile, f.*  
 bottle, pepper-box, and mustard-pot. ---- The  
*poivre, m. boîte, f. moutarde, f.*  
 butter-boy, the green-girl, the hot - rolls  
*beurre, m. légume, m. pl. chaud, adj. pl. pain, m. pl.*  
 man, and the gingerbread-woman, called here. --  
*pain d'épices, m. ont passé, p. p. ici, adv.*  
 We had cabbage-soup, a rice-pudding, a  
*eûmes, v. chou, m. pl. soupe, f. riz, m. pouding, m.*

(leg of mutton) with caper - sauce, and ice-  
*gigot, m. capre, f. pl. sauce, f. glace, f.*  
 cream. - - We shall have pease porridge, a salt<sup>2</sup>  
*aurons, v. pois, m. soupe, f. salé, adj.*  
 cod<sup>1</sup> with egg-sauce, and a turbot with  
*morue, f. œuf, m. pl.*  
 lobster-sauce. - - I bought a plum - cake, an  
*homard, m. pl. ai acheté, raisins secs, m. gâteau, m.*  
 apple - tart, and two gooseberry and cherry  
*pomme, f. pl. tarte, f. groseille, f. pl. cerise, f. pl.*  
 pies.  
*tourte, f.*

## DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE PARTITIVE.

### SINGULAR.

#### Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *du pain*, some bread.

Gen. Abl. *de pain*, of or from some bread.

Dat. *à du pain*, to some bread.

#### Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de la viande*, some meat.

Gen. Abl. *de viande*, of or from some meat.

Dat. *à de la viande*, to some meat.

#### Masculine or Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de l'argent*, some money.

Gen. Abl. *d'argent*, of or from some money.

Dat. *à de l'argent*, to some money.

The plural is the same for both genders.

N. Ac. *des livres*, some books, *des auteurs*, some authors.

G. Ab. *de livres*, of or from, &c. *d'auteurs*, of or from, &c.

Dat. *à des livres*, to, &c. *à des auteurs*, to, &c.

N. B. In asking a question, the English generally make use of *any*, which, in French, must be rendered by the same article: ex.

*Y a-t-il du pain ici?*

Is there *any* bread here?

*Avez-vous de la viande?*

Have you *any* meat?

This article must be used wherever the English word *some*, or *any*, is either expressed or understood, and ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence : ex.

<i>Du pain et de l'eau lui suffisent,</i>	Bread and water are sufficient for him.
<i>Apportez du vinaigre, de la moutarde, de l'huile, et des fourchettes,</i>	Bring some vinegar, mustard, oil, and forks.
<i>Avez-vous de l'argent à nous prêter ?</i>	Have you any money to lend us ?

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Bread, meat, and water, are things necessary  
*sont, v. chose, f. nécessaire, adj.*  
 to man. -- I drink wine and water. -- She eats  
*bois, v. mange, v.*  
 cheese. -- -- Bring me some mustard. -- -- Have you  
*fromage, m.*  
 bought some paper, pens, and ink ? -- Send  
*acheté, p.p. papier, m. plume, f. encre, f.*  
 him some bread, meat, and potatoes. -- -- -- Do you  
*pomme de terre, f.*  
 sell fruit ? -- Buy some tea and sugar. --  
*vendez, v. fruit, m. Achetez, v. thé, m.*  
 Will you eat some beef with turnips and  
*Voulez, v. manger, v. bœuf, m. navet, m.*  
 carrots ? -- Do you drink beer ? -- (Is there) any  
*carotte, f. buvez, v. bière, f. Y a-t-il*  
 wine in the cellar ? -- -- -- (Was there) any oil in the  
*Y avoit-il*  
 bottle ? -- I have given him bread, money,  
*donné, p.p. lui, pro.*  
 and clothes. -- She has modesty and prudence. --  
*habit, m. modestie, f. prudence, f.*  
 He has bought some dishes and plates. -- -- Will  
*plat, m. assiette, f.*  
 you have some milk or cream ? -- I eat fish, eggs,  
*œuf, m.*

greens, artichokes, and asparagus. - - - Bread, meat  
*artichau, m. asperge, f.*  
 fish and vegetables, often<sup>2</sup> make<sup>1</sup> a good  
*légume, m. souvent, adv. font, v.*  
 dinner.  
*diner, m.*

If the substantive be preceded by an adjective, instead of *du, de la, des*, we must use *de* or *d'*: as,

	Masc.	Fem.	Masc. or Fem.
N. Ac. }	<i>De mauvais vin,</i>	<i>De bonne eau,</i>	<i>D'excellent pain,</i>
G. Abl. }	Bad wine,	Good water,	Excellent bread.
Dat.	<i>à de mauvais vin,</i>	<i>à de bonne eau,</i>	<i>à d'excellent pain,</i>
	To bad wine.	To good water.	To excellent bread.

## PLURAL.

N. Ac. }	<i>De bons livres,</i>	<i>d'habiles gens,</i>
G. Ab. }	Good books.	Learned men.
Dat.	<i>à de bons livres,</i>	<i>à d'habiles gens,</i>
	To good books.	To learned men.

This last rule is not general; for there are some substantives, which, though preceded by an adjective, require the other article, instead of *de*. However, instances of this kind are very few: they never happen but when the adjective and substantive present to the mind one idea only: as, *Londres est le centre du bon goût, &c.* London is the centre of good taste, &c.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

You always<sup>2</sup> read<sup>1</sup> good books. - - 'Bad wine<sup>2</sup>  
*toujours, adv. lisez, v.*  
 is<sup>4</sup> 'not<sup>3</sup> worth<sup>4</sup> good water. - - He speaks to learned  
*vaut, v. parle, v.*  
 men. - - - I have heard good news. - - -  
*gens, f.\* appris, p.p. bonne, adj. nouvelle, f.*  
 You have fine fruit. - - - She has worthy  
*avez, v. beau, adj. digne, adj.*  
 friends. - - Bring me good pens. - - Onions, celery,  
*Oignons, m. céleri, m.*

\* *Gens*, preceded by an adjective, is of the feminine gender; but when the adjective follows, it is put in the masculine.



*Mon frère est allé en Italie,* My brother is gone to Italy.  
*Il doit bientôt retourner en* He is soon to go back to  
*Amérique,* America.

On the contrary, *to* must be rendered by *de*, when immediately preceded by the words *road*, or *path-way* : ex.

*Le chemin de Londres,* The road to London.  
*Le chemin de Paris,* The way to Paris.

It must be observed that the *proper names* of most of the islands and other countries both in the East and West-Indies, and some few places in Europe, do not follow the above rule, but take the definite article, such as *l'Abyssinie*, Abyssinia; *le Brésil*, Brasil; *le Caire*, Cairo; *le Canada*, Canada; *la Guadeloupe*, Guadeloupe; *la Jamaïque*, Jamaica; *le Japon*, Japan; *la Martinique*, Martinico; *le Pérou*, Peru; *la Virginie*, Virginia; and a few others: ex.

<i>Venir</i>	{ <i>de l'Abyssinie,</i> <i>du Brésil,</i> <i>du Caire,</i>	<i>to come</i>	{ from Abyssinia, from Brasil, from Cairo.
<i>Aller</i>	{ <i>à la Chine,</i> <i>au Canada,</i> <i>au Japon,</i>	<i>to go</i>	{ to China, to Canada, to Japan.

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE RULES.

(Here is) John's brother. -- Speak to Martha. --  
*Voici, adv. Jean, m. Parlez, v. Marthe, f.*  
 It is Peter's hat. ---- She goes to Richmond. ---  
*C'est, v. chapeau, m. va, v.*  
 He comes from Paris. --- You have Mr. *Monsieur, m.*  
*vient, v.*  
 Richard's sword. --- When<sup>1</sup> will<sup>2</sup> - you<sup>3</sup> go<sup>3</sup> to  
*épée, f. Quand, adv. irez, v.*  
 France? -- I know not, for my father says  
*sais, v. ne pas, adv. eue, c. dit, v.*  
 that he will<sup>2</sup> send<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> soon to Canada or  
*que, c. il, pro. enverra, v. bientôt, adv.*  
 Jamaica. -- Give me Laura's cap. ---- I (am going)  
*Laure, f. bonnet, m. vais, v.*



to Croydon. - - - I have found      Andrew's waistcoat.  
    *trouvé, p.p. André, m. veste, f.*

She (shall come back) to England (next year)  
    *reviendra, v. l'année prochaine*

to see her brother who is arrived from  
    *pour voir, v. qui, pro. est, v. arrivé, p.p.*

Japan and China. - - Carry that to Stephen. - -  
    *Portez, v. cela, pro. Etienne, m.*

(Here is) the road to Clapham. - - - My mother  
    *Ma, pro.*

intends to send my sister to Portugal  
    *se propose de, v. envoyer, v. ma, pro.*

or Spain, and thence to Rome, and my cousin (is to)  
    *de là doit, v.*

go to Mexico or Cairo.  
    *aller, v. Mexique, m. ou, c.*

The genitive of this article *de* is used after nouns and adverbs of quantity, whether expressed in English, or not; after the negation *pas* or *point*, no or not; the words *que*, what, *quelque chose*, something, *rien*, nothing; before names of countries, kingdoms and provinces, when preceded by a noun expressing a personal title, &c. or by a verb signifying coming, arriving, or returning from: ex.

*Tant de pommes,*

So many apples.

*Tant d'argent,*

So much money.

*Point de repos,*

No rest.

*Quelque chose\* de bon,*

Something good.

*Il arrive de France,*

He arrives from France.

*Rien de mauvais,*

Nothing bad.

*Le roi d'Angleterre,*

The king of England.

*Elle vient d'Amérique,*

She comes from America.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

I have bought six yards of cloth. - - - Bring  
    *acheté, p.p. six, aune, f. drap, m.*

me three pounds of veal, and two pounds of  
    *trois, livre, f. veau, m. deux,*

\* It must be observed, that the word *chose*, standing by itself, is of the feminine gender; but, being joined to the word *quelque*, it is of the masculine.

mutton. . . . She has a great number of child-  
*mouton, m. un grand, adj. nombre, m.*  
 ren. . . . He has (too much) vanity. . . . You have  
*trop, adv. vanité, f.*  
 less merit, but more wisdom. . . . What  
*moins, adv. mais, c. plus, adv. sagesse, f. Que*  
 a noise you make. . . . Do 'not' give<sup>s</sup> her<sup>s</sup>  
*un bruit, m. faites, v. ne pas, adv. lui, pro.*  
 (too many) pears. . . . I<sup>s</sup> have<sup>s</sup> 'no<sup>s</sup> daughters.' . . .  
*trop, adv. ne point, adv.*  
 So much pride does 'not' become<sup>s</sup> him<sup>s</sup>. . . .  
*Tant, adv. orgueil, m. s'ed, v. lui, pro.*  
 (There is) something noble in his physiognomy. . . .  
*Il y a, v. sa, pro. physionomie, f.*  
 We have (so many) grapes. . . . They have a little  
*raisin, m. un peu, adv.*  
 money. . . . I know the king of Prussia. . . . Did you  
*connois, v. Prusse, f. Avez, v.*  
 see the duke of Bavaria with the archbishop  
*vu, p.p. duc, m. Bavière, f. archevêque, m.*  
 of York? . . . He commanded an army of forty  
*commandoit, v. une armée, f. quarante*  
 thousand men. . . . She<sup>s</sup> says<sup>s</sup> 'nothing' true<sup>s</sup>. . . .  
*mille, dit, v. ne rien, adv. vrai, adj.*  
 You speak of Alexander, king of Macedonia. . . .  
*parlez, v. Alexandre, m. Macédoine, f.*  
 Do you<sup>s</sup> come<sup>s</sup> from Italy? . . . No, I come  
*venez, v. Non, adv. viens, v.*  
 from Africa.  
*Afrique.*

*De* is likewise placed before nouns governed by another substantive, of which they express the character, cause, country, matter, nature, and quality; and after the adjectives of number, when they are followed by a participle passive: ex.

*Une maison de brique,*  
*Un bonnet de nuit,*  
*Une cuiller d'argent,*  
*Du poisson de rivière,*  
*Du vin de Bourgogne,*  
*Quatre de renvoyés,*

A<sup>s</sup> brick<sup>s</sup> house<sup>s</sup>.  
 A night cap.  
 A silver spoon.  
 River fish.  
 Burgundy<sup>s</sup> wine<sup>s</sup>.  
 Four sent away.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE,

Your<sup>1</sup> sister<sup>2</sup> has<sup>3</sup> a<sup>4</sup> silk<sup>5</sup> gown<sup>6</sup> and a gold  
*Votre, pro. sœur, f. a, v. une soie, f. robe, f. un or, m.*  
 thimble. - - We drink Champagne wine. - - - It is a  
*dé, m. buvons, v. C'est, v.*  
 marble pillar. - - - They have a country  
*marbre, m. pillier, m. une campagne, f.*  
 house built with oak wood. - -  
*maison, f. construite, p.p. de, p. chêne, m. bois, m.*  
 Edinburgh is the capital city of the kingdom  
*Edinbourg, m. capitale, adj. ville, f. royaume, m.*  
 of Scotland. - - Shut the fore - door. - - A lady  
*Ecosse, f. Fermez, v. devant, m. porte, f. Une*  
 of wit is a jewel of worth. - - - He is a man  
*esprit, m. un joyau, m. prix, m. C'est, v.*  
 of honour. - - She has bought silver buckles  
*argent, m. boucle, f.*  
 and diamond ear - rings. - - - Have you  
*diamant, m. pendans-d'oreille, m. Avez, v.*  
 spoken to the silk-merchant? - - Give me the  
*parlé, p. p. marchand, m.*  
 upper - crust. - - Bring me my straw - hat and  
*dessus, m. croûte, f. mon, pro. paille, f. chapeau, m.*  
 my night - cap. - - Miss Brown's chamber - maid and  
*nuit, f. bonnet, m. chambre, f. fille, f.*  
 Mrs. Rose's house-keeper are two sis-  
*Madame, f. femme de charge, f. deux,*  
 ters. - - The rich make use of silver plate,  
*riche, m. pl. se servent, v. vaisselle, f.*  
 and the poor make use of iron forks  
*pauvre, m. pl. font, v. usage, m. fer, m.*  
 and pewter spoons. - - - The enemies had a  
*étain, m. cuiller, f. eurent, v.*  
 hundred men killed, seventy wounded,  
*cent tué, p.p. soixante-dix, blessé, p.p.*  
 forty lost, and five hundred taken pri-  
*quarante perdu, p.p. cinq pris, p.p. pri-*  
 soners.  
*sonnier, m.*

*De* is placed after the adjectives signifying dimension, as *épais*, thick; *gros*, big, large; *haut*, high, tall; *large*, wide, broad; *long*, long; and *profond*, deep; though there is no article expressed in English: ex.

*Une table longue de dix pieds et large de huit,* A table ten feet long and eight broad.

But there is a more elegant way, which is, to turn the adjective of dimension into the substantive; then the words of measure and those of dimension are preceded by *de*: ex.

*Une table de dix pieds de longueur et de huit de largeur,* A table ten feet long and eight broad.

In this last example it may be seen, that the French and English are parallel with each other; therefore, in the following exercise, the adjective and substantive are put down, that the learner may translate it both ways.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I saw a tree eighteen feet large.  
*ai, v. vu, p.p. un arbre, m. dix-huit pied, m. gros-*  
 ----- I have a box four inches thick,  
*seur\*, f. une boîte, f. quatre ponce, m. épais-seur, f.*  
 ten feet long, and six broad. - - I know  
*dix pied, m. long-ueur, f. large-ur, f. connois, v.*  
 a man seven feet high. - - - - (It is) a ditch  
*un sept haut-ur, f. C'est, v. un fossé, m.*  
 nine feet six inches deep and five feet broad.  
*neuf profond-ur, f. cinq*  
 (There is) a room fifty paces long and  
*Voilà une chambre, f. cinquante pas, m.*  
 twenty broad. - - The walls of our garden  
*vingt muraille, f. notre, pro.*  
 are (have) thirty feet three inches high, and two  
*sont, v. ont, v. trente trois deux*  
 feet broad. - - I have a tree sixty feet high  
*un arbre, m. soixante*  
 and eighteen round.  
*dix-huit gros-seur, f.*

\* Read *gros*, adjective, *grosseur*, substantive, and so of the others. See the rules to form the feminine gender, (p. 50.)

If the learner translate this last sentence by the adjective of dimension, he must use the word *sont*, which is the proper word of the English *are*, and follows the preceding rule: but if he turn the adjective of dimension into its substantive, the word *être*, to be, is to be rendered into French by the verb *avoir*, to have, and *de* before the word of measure is suppressed. In this last case, the word *ont*, have, must be inserted instead of *sont*,

Example by the adjective :

*Notre chambre est longue  
de vingt pieds et large de  
douze.*

By the substantive :

*Notre chambre a vingt pieds  
de longueur et douze de  
largeur,* Our room is twenty feet  
long and twelve broad.

When two substantives are joined together, both making a compound word in English, the first of which denotes the *form* or *use* of the second, the latter must be placed before the former in French, and followed by the particle *à* : ex.

<i>Un moulin à papier,</i>	A paper <sup>s</sup> mill <sup>l</sup> .
<i>Une boîte à poudre,</i>	A powder <sup>s</sup> box <sup>l</sup> .

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Gun - powder was invented by a monk.  
*Canon, m. poudre, f. fut, v. inventée, p.p. par, p. moine, m.*  
 The servant has lost the tinder-box, and cannot  
*perdu, p.p. fusil, m. ne sauroit, v.*  
 light the candle. - - - If you go to London  
*allumer, v. chandelle, f. Si, c. allez, v.*  
 to-morrow, bring me a toupee - iron. - - Have you  
*demain, adv. toupet, m. fer, m.*  
 seen the water-mill which my father has bought?  
*vu, p.p. que, pro.*  
 No, but I have seen the wind-mill which your  
*Non, adv. vent, m.*

brother has built at Greenwich. - - - I have  
*fait bâtir, v. à*  
 found your sister's work - bag, in the eating-  
*ouvrage, m. sac, m. manger, m.*  
 room. - - - William the Conqueror forbade the  
*chambre, f. défendit, v. aux*  
 English to have any fire - arms.  
*Anglois, m. de aucune, pro. feu, m. arme, f.*

DECLENSION of UN, m. UNE, f. A or AN.

SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *un livre*, a book.  
 Gen. Abl. *d'un livre*, of or from a book.  
 Dat. *à un livre*, to a book.

Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *une plume*, a pen.  
 Gen. Abl. *d'une plume*, of or from a pen.  
 Dat. *à une plume*, to a pen.

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have a hat and a sword. - - - She speaks  
*chapeau, m. épée, f. parle, v.*  
 of an officer. - - He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> given<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to<sup>5</sup> a  
*officier, m. donné, p.p. le, pro.*  
 sailor. - - (There are) a bird and a cage. - - -  
*matelot, m. Voilà oiseau, m. cage, f.*  
 An ungrateful man is a monster in the eyes of a  
*ingrat, m. monstre, m. aux, œil, m.*  
 sensible<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup>. - - Alexander was a great warrior,  
*sensé, adj. Alexandre, m. étoit, v. guerrier, m.*  
 and a very learned philosopher. - - A fine  
*très, adv. savant, adj. philosophe, m. belle, adj.*  
 flower in a garden is an ornament.  
*fleur, f. ornement, m.*

It must be observed, that the English article *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and number, must be rendered in French by the definite article, *le, la, les*; and by the preposition *par*, used for *time* and *space* in the sense of *each, every, or per*: ex.

<i>Deux chelins le cent,</i>	Two shillings a hundred.
<i>Un écu le boisseau,</i>	A crown a bushel.
<i>Cinq chelins par semaine,</i>	Five shillings a week.
<i>Une guinée par mois,</i>	One guinea a month.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Barley	sells	for three shillings	a bushel.	- - -
Orge, f.	se vend, v.			
That	ale	(is worth)	six pence	a pint. - - -
Cette, pro.	aile, f.	vaut, v.	son, m.	pinte, f.
Beef	costs	eight	pence	a pound. - - -
Bœuf, m.	coûte, v.	huit, adj.		livre, f.
This	lace	cost	a crown	an ell. - - He
Cette, pro.	dentelle, f.	coûta, v.	écu, m.	aune, f.
sells	his	best	cloth	a guinea a yard. -
vend, v.	son, pro.	meilleur, adj.	drap, m.	verge, f.
Burgundy wine	(is sold)	nine	shillings	a bottle. - -
	se vend, v.	neuf, adj.		
My	shoemaker	sold <sup>a</sup>	me <sup>t</sup> two pair	of
Mon, pro.	cordonnier, m.	a vendu, p.p.		paire, f.
shoes	(at the	rate) of <sup>2</sup> half <sup>1</sup> a	guinea	a pair. - - My
soulier, m.	à raison	деми		
master comes	twice	a week.	- -	My uncle goes
	vient, v.	deux fois, adv.		va, v.
to France	thrice	a year.	- -	She gives three
	trois fois, adv.	an, m.		donne, v.
shillings a day	and ten	pence	a mile.	
	jour, m.		mille, m.	

N. B. *A* or *an* is not to be expressed when it immediately precedes a noun in the nominative or accusative case, denoting *title, dignity, office, business, or words* which point out the kind or species of things; and lastly, after the verb *être*, to be, unless this verb be preceded by *ce* in the third person singular, or the above nouns be followed by an adjective or any other modification, one of the relative pronouns, *who, whom, which, &c.* or by an adjective in the superlative degree: ex.

<i>M. D. membre de la cham-</i>	<i>M. D. a member of the</i>
<i>bre des communes,</i>	<i>house of commons.</i>





Adjectives ending with one of the following letters, *d, e, i, l, n, r, s, t*, and *u*, form their feminine by adding an *e* mute : ex.

Masc.	<i>Grand,</i>	Fem.	<i>grande,*</i>	great, tall, large.
	<i>Poli,</i>		<i>polie,</i>	polite.
	<i>Aimé,</i>		<i>aimée,</i>	loved.
	<i>Civil,</i>		<i>civile,</i>	civil.
	<i>Demi,</i>		<i>demie,</i>	half.
	<i>Nu,</i>		<i>nue,</i>	naked.

The last two adjectives are indeclinable when they precede a substantive, but are declinable when they follow it : ex.

<i>Une demi-livre,</i>	A half-pound.
<i>Une livre et demie,</i>	A pound and a half.
<i>Nu tête,</i> bare head, }	<i>la tête nue.</i>
<i>Nu pieds,</i> bare feet, }	<i>les pieds nus.</i>

There are a few ending in *an, as, el, il, eil, ien, in, es, et, is, on, os, ol*, and *ul*, that double the final letter, before an *e*, mute, for the feminine : ex.

Masc.	<i>Gras,</i>	Fem.	<i>grasse,</i>	fat.
	<i>Gentil,</i>		<i>gentille,</i>	genteel.
	<i>Eternel,</i>		<i>éternelle,</i>	eternal.
	<i>Pareil,</i>		<i>pareille,</i>	alike.
	<i>Chrétien,</i>		<i>chrétienne,</i>	christian.
	<i>Epais,</i>		<i>épaisse,</i>	thick.
	<i>Bon,</i>		<i>bonne,</i>	good.

\* When that adjective precedes a substantive singular of the feminine gender, beginning with a consonant, we often suppress, in French, both in the pronunciation and writing the *e*, which supplied by an apostrophe as in the following instances.

<i>A grand' peine,</i>	with hard labour.
<i>Avoir</i> { <i>grand' faim,</i>	{ very hungry.
{ <i>grand' soif,</i>	{ to be { very thirsty.
{ <i>grand' peur,</i>	{ very much frightened.
<i>Faire grand' chère,</i>	to live well, to fare sumptuously.
<i>La grand' mère,</i>	the grand mother.
<i>La grand' messe,</i>	the high mass.
<i>La grand' chambre,</i>	the high court.

Should however the word *grande* be preceded by *très, fort, very, une, one, or la plus, the most*, then the final *e* must be added ; as,

<i>Une fort grande salle,</i>	A very large room.
-------------------------------	--------------------

<b>Masc.</b> <i>Gros,</i>	<b>Fem.</b> <i>grosse,</i>	<b>big.</b>
<i>Sot,</i>	<i>sotte,</i>	<b>foolish, simple.</b>

The following are very irregular, and cannot be comprised under any rule, viz.

<b>Masc.</b> <i>Beau, bel,*</i>	<b>Fem.</b> <i>belle,</i>	<b>handsome, fine.</b>
<i>Bénin,</i>	<i>bénigne,</i>	<b>benign.</b>
<i>Favori,</i>	<i>favorite,</i>	<b>favourite.</b>
<i>Fou, fol,*</i>	<i>folle,</i>	<b>foolish, crazy.</b>
<i>Frais,</i>	<i>fraîche,</i>	<b>fresh.</b>
<i>Long,</i>	<i>longue,</i>	<b>long.</b>
<i>Malin,</i>	<i>maligne,</i>	<b>malicious.</b>
<i>Mou, mol,*</i>	<i>molle,</i>	<b>soft.</b>
<i>Nouveau, nouvel,*</i>	<i>nouvelle,</i>	<b>new, novel.</b>
<i>Vieux, vieil,*</i>	<i>vieille,</i>	<b>old.</b>

Adjectives ending in *c* add *he* to the *c* for their feminine: ex.

<b>Masc.</b> <i>Blanc,</i>	<b>Fem.</b> <i>blanche,</i>	<b>white.</b>
<i>Franc,</i>	<i>franche,</i>	<b>sincere.</b>
<i>Sec,</i>	<i>sèche,</i>	<b>dry, &amp;c.</b>

The four following are excepted.

<b>Masc.</b> <i>Caduc,</i>	<b>Fem.</b> <i>caduque,</i>	<b>in decay.</b>
<i>Grec,</i>	<i>Grecque,</i>	<b>Greek.</b>
<i>Public,</i>	<i>publique,</i>	<b>public.</b>
<i>Turc,</i>	<i>Turque,</i>	<b>Turkish.</b>

Those ending in *f* change *f* into *ve* for the feminine: ex.

<b>Masc.</b> <i>Bref,</i>	<b>Fem.</b> <i>brève,</i>	<b>short.</b>
<i>Naïf,</i>	<i>naïve,</i>	<b>plain, ingenuous.</b>
<i>Neuf,</i>	<i>neuve,</i>	<b>new, not old.</b>
<i>Veuf,</i>	<i>veuve,</i>	<b>widowed.</b>
<i>Vif,</i>	<i>vive,</i>	<b>quick.</b>

Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x* into *se*: ex.

<b>Masc.</b> <i>Douloureux,</i>	<b>Fem.</b> <i>douloureuse,</i>	<b>painful, dolorous.</b>
<i>Heureux,</i>	<i>heureuse,</i>	<b>happy, &amp;c.</b>
<i>Jaloux,</i>	<i>jalouse,</i>	<b>jealous.</b>

\* These adjectives are used before substantives beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated.

**The following are excepted:**

<b>Masc.</b> <i>Doux,</i>	<b>Fem.</b> <i>douce,</i>	sweet.
<i>Faux,</i>	<i>fausse,</i>	false.
<i>Perplex,</i>	<i>perplexe,</i>	perplexed.
<i>Préfix,</i>	<i>préfixe,</i>	prefixed.
<i>Roux,</i>	<i>rousse,</i>	reddish.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

**French adjectives must agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case: ex.**

**SINGULAR.—Masculine.**

Nom. Acc.	<i>Le bon livre,</i>	the good book.
Gen. Abl.	<i>Du bon livre,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>Au bon livre,</i>	to the good book.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bons livres,</i>	the good books.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bons livres,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>aux bons livres,</i>	to the good books.

**SINGULAR.—Feminine.**

Nom. Acc.	<i>La bonne plume,</i>	the good pen.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de la bonne plume,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>à la bonne plume,</i>	to the good pen.

### PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bonnes plumes,</i>	the good pens.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bonnes plumes,</i>	of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>aux bonnes plumes,</i>	to the good pens.

**EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.**

**The tall man, the little**      **woman, and the**  
                *petit, adj.*

pretty children, whom I met yesterday  
*joli*, adj. *que*, pro. *ai rencontré*, p.p. *hier*, adv.  
 with their grandmother (were going) to London:  
*alloient*, v.

they were all very hungry and thirsty. - The polite<sup>2</sup>  
avaient, v.

inhabitants<sup>1</sup> of that fine city treat all the  
*habitant, m.      cette, pro.      traitent, v.*  
 strangers in a civil<sup>2</sup> and frank<sup>3</sup> manner.<sup>1</sup> - -  
*étranger, m.      de une      manière, f.*  
 Leaf<sup>2</sup> sheep<sup>1</sup> grow fat in good  
*Maigre, adj.      brebis, f. pl.      deviennent, v.      dans, p.*  
 pastures. - - - Constant<sup>2</sup> study<sup>1</sup> joined to a great  
*pâturage, m.      étude, f.      joint, p.p.*  
 application makes men learned. - - - The new  
*application, f.      rend, v.      savant, adj.*  
 coat, which you <sup>2</sup>gave <sup>1</sup>me, is  
*habit, m.      que, pro.      avez donné, p.p.*  
 better than the old great-coat which my  
*meilleur, adj.      que, c.      redingote, f.*  
 father had bought at his tailor's. - - We went  
*chez, p.      allâmes, v.*  
 yesterday to the high court where we found all  
*trouvâmes, v.*  
 the judges already met.  
*déjà, ad.      assemblé, p. p.*

As two or more substantives in the singular are equivalent to a plural, the verb and adjective, or participle past, not immediately following them, must be put in the plural, when they refer to two or more substantives in the singular, and that adjective or participle is to be put in the masculine, if these substantives be of different genders: ex.

*Le frère, la sœur, le neveu,*      The brother, sister, ne-  
*et la nièce, sont tous*      phew, and niece are all  
*morts,*      dead.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The book, paper, pencil, and penknife, which  
*papier, m.      crayon, m.      canif, m.*  
 you lent<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup>, are excellent. - - - The  
*avez prêté, p.p.      me, pro.      excellent, adj.*  
 pen, ruler, inkhorn and grammar which my bro-  
*règle, f.      écriture, f.*

ther has bought, are very good. . . . The king,  
*très, adv.*  
 queen, prince, and princesses were gone. . . . The  
*étoient, v. sorti, p.p.*  
 corn, wheat, rye, pease and beans, in a word, all  
*seigle, m. fève, f. en mot, m.*  
 the grains which were on the ground,  
*grain, m. qui, pro. étoient, v. sur, p. terre, f.*  
 were frozen. . . . My father's house, and my uncle's  
*furent, v. gelé, p.p.*  
 (country-seat) are (very much) alike.  
*château, m. bien, adv. semblable, adj.*

When two or more substantives of different genders  
 are immediately followed by an adjective or participle,  
 the French language requires that adjective or parti-  
 ciple to agree in gender and number with the last sub-  
 stantive, except those adjectives or participles implying  
 union or collection, such as *joint, uni, réuni, &c.* which  
 follow the foregoing rule: ex.

*Il gouverne avec un pou- He governs with an abso-*  
*voir et une autorité ab- lute power and autho-*  
*solue, rity.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He studies with an incredible application and  
*étudie, v. incroyable, adj.*  
 courage. . . . He who has for his guides  
*courage, m. Celui, pro. qui, pro. guide, m.*  
 consummate<sup>3</sup> zeal<sup>1</sup> and prudence<sup>2</sup> deserves  
*consummé, adj. zèle, m. prudence, f. mérite, v.*  
 the general esteem and applause of his  
*estime, f. applaudissement, m. ses, pro.*  
 fellow-citizens. . . . She left the trunk, the  
*concitoyen, m. laissa, v. coffre, m.*  
 closet, and the room open. . . . I found  
*cabinet, m. chambre, f. ouvert, p.p. ai trouvé, p.p.*  
 the doors, the windows, and the shutters, shut. . . .  
*porte, f. fenêtre, f. volets, m. fermé, p.p.*

We saw the children, father, and mother, well  
*vîmes, v.*  
 united. - - - When we arrived on the fron-  
*réuni, p.p. Quand, c. arrivâmes, v. fron-*  
 tiers, we found the soldiers, the officers,  
*tière, f. trouvâmes, v. soldat, m. officier, m.*  
 and the general in chief, assembled, and  
*en chef, m. assemblé, p.p.*  
 (drawn up) in (battle array.)  
*rangé, p.p. en, p. bataille, f.*

## THE PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE IN A SENTENCE.

Some adjectives are always placed before their substantives, and others after them; but there is a kind of adjectives, which may either precede or follow their substantives, as the euphony of the sentence requires.

The following must be placed before.

*Beau*, handsome, fine,  
*Bon*, good.  
*Brave*, brave.  
*Cher*, dear.  
*Chétif*, vile, poor, mean.  
*Galant*, well bred.  
*Grand*, great, tall.  
*Gros*, big, large.  
*Honnête*, honest, civil.  
*Jeune*, young.

*Joli*, pretty.  
*Méchant*, wicked.  
*Mauvais*, bad.  
*Meilleur*, better.  
*Moindre*, less.  
*Petit*, little, small,  
*Saint*, holy.  
*Tout*, all.  
*Vieux*, old.  
*Vrai*, true.

### EXERCISE ON THE FOREGOING ADJECTIVES.

I have seen a handsome lady, who (was  
*vu, p.p. dame, f. qui, pro.*  
 speaking) to an old gentleman. - - - He had  
*parloit, v. gentil-homme, m. Il, pro. avoit, v.*  
 a fine hat and a pretty sword. - - Your little  
*chapeau, m. Votre, pro.*

sister deserved a better fate. - - I know a young  
*méritoit, v. destin, m. connois, v.*  
 man who has a good horse, but a bad stable. - - -  
*cheval, m. écurie, f.*  
 He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> lent<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to an honest man. - - The  
*prété, p.p. le, pro.*  
 apostle Paul was a holy man. - - - My brother has  
*apôtre, m.*  
 bought a good watch. - - - Your father was a  
*acheté, p.p. montre, f. étoit, v.*  
 brave general, and a well-bred man. - - - You have  
*arez, v.*  
 lost all your money. - - - Vile creature, I have  
*perdu, p.p. créature, f.*  
 heard your wicked conversation.  
*entendu, p.p. conversation, f.*

Some adjectives have different meanings according as they are placed before or after their substantive, as, *une femme sage*, a wise woman: *une sage femme*, a midwife; and *une grosse femme*, a big woman; *une femme grosse*, a pregnant woman; *un homme honnête*, a civil man; *un honnête homme*, an honest man; a little practice will soon remove any of these apparent difficulties.

The following adjectives must be placed after their substantives.

1. All participles used as adjectives; as,

*Une personne reconnoissante,* A grateful person.  
*Du bœuf rôti,* Roast beef.

2. All adjectives expressing the *shape* or *form*; as, 1

*Une table ronde,* A round table.  
*Une chambre carrée,* A square room.

3. All adjectives expressing the *colour* or *taste*; as,

*Un chapeau noir,* A black hat.  
*Un habit rouge,* A red coat.  
*Une pomme douce,* A sweet apple.  
*Une liqueur amère,* A bitter liquor.

4. All adjectives expressing the *matter* of which a thing is composed ; as,

<i>Des parties sulfureuses,</i>	Sulphurous parts.
<i>Un corps aérien,</i>	An ariel body.

5. All adjectives expressing the quality of *hearing* and *touching* ; as,

<i>Un instrument sonore,</i>	A sonorous instrument.
<i>Une voix harmonieuse,</i>	An harmonious voice.
<i>Un bois dur,</i>	A hard wood.
<i>Un corps mou,</i>	A soft body.

6. All adjectives expressing the name of nations ; as,

<i>L'empire Romain,</i>	The Roman empire.
<i>La poésie Angloise,</i>	The English poetry.

7. All adjectives, which, when used by themselves, convey the meaning of a substantive, as *rich*, *blind*, &c.

<i>Un homme riche,</i>	A rich man.
<i>Une femme aveugle,</i>	A blind woman.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

An ignorant young man is despised by (every  
*méprisé*, p.p. *de*, p. *tout le*  
 body.) --- You have an English hat, and she has a  
*monde*, m. *Anglois*, adj.  
 French gown. - He reads an Italian proverb. -  
*François*, adj. *robe*, f. *lit*, v. *Italien*, adj. *proverbe*, m.  
 I like (very much) the German tongue and  
*aime*, v. *beaucoup*, adv. *Allemand*, adj. *langue*, f.  
 The Spanish dress. - - - - (It is) a square place.  
*Espagnol*, adj. *habillement*, m. *C'est*, v. *carré*, adj. *place*, f.  
 She likes sweet wine. - - Your sister has an har-  
*monious* voice. - - - I have bought a white gown  
*voix*, f. *blanc*, adj.  
 and a black cloak. - - - You have a faithful  
 - *noir*, adj. *mantelet*, m. *fidèle*, adj.



servant. - - - - I eat green pease, with  
*domestique, m. et, f. mange, v. vert, adj.*  
 boiled mutton. - Bring me a pound and a half  
*bouilli, p.p. mouton, m. demi, adj.*  
 of cherries, and half a pound of currants. - We had a  
*cérise, f. groseille, f. câmes, v.*  
 kind reception, and we played at a di-  
*favorable, adj. accueil, m. jouâmes, v. à, p. di-*  
 verting game. - He lives in a cold country.  
*vertissant, adj. jeu, m. demeure, v. froid, adj. pays, m.*  
 - - You have left the windows and the door  
*laissé, p.p. fenêtre, f. porte, f.*  
 open. - - Will you have a bit of roast  
*morceau, m. rôti, p.p.*  
 chicken? - - Do you<sup>2</sup> read<sup>1</sup> the Punic war? - -  
*poulet, m. lisez, v. Punique, adj. guerre, f.*  
 He has made a rash vow. - - Your sister  
*fait, p.p. téméraire, adj. vœu, m.*  
 is an agreeable lady. - - I like a grey stuff. - -  
*agréable, adj. gris, adj. étoffe, f.*  
 (It was) really a tragical history.  
*C'étoit, v. réellement, adv. tragique, adj. histoire, f.*

When two or more adjectives belong to one substan-  
 tive, the surest way is to place them after it, with the  
 conjunction *et*, and, before the last; and if an adjec-  
 tive be used in a sentence without a substantive, this  
 adjective must always be rendered in French by the  
 masculine gender.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

We have a just, wise, and bountiful king. - -  
*juste, adj. sage, adj. bienfaisant, adj.*  
 Mr. Brown's daughter is with a sincere and  
*Monsieur, m. sincère, adj.*  
 generous lady. - - I have a scholar of a solid,  
*généreux, adj. écolier, m. solide, adj.*  
 bright, and lively genius. - - The wicked  
*brillant, adj. vif, adj. esprit, m. méchant, adj. pl.*  
 shall be punished. - - Miss Preston is a  
*seront, v. puni, p.p. Mademoiselle, f.*

young, handsome, and well-shaped lady. - - She has  
*bien-fait*, adj.  
 married a sober, virtuous, and amiable  
*épousé*, p.p. *sobre*, adj. *vertueux*, adj. *aimable*, adj.  
 man.—The good shall be praised.—The diligent  
*loué*, p.p. *diligent*, adj. pl.  
 shall be rewarded.  
*récompensé*, p.p.

## DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

Adjectives and adverbs are the only kind of words that will admit of different degrees of *more* or *less* in the several qualities of persons or things.

There are two degrees of comparison :

1. *Le comparatif*, the comparative.
2. *Le superlatif*, the superlative.

Some grammarians admit of another degree, which they call *positive* : but this is merely an adjective used in its simple signification, without expressing any increase or diminution : ex. *joli*, pretty ; *aimable*, lovely.

The *comparative* refers to some other person or thing, and shows its *equality*, *excess*, or *defect* : it is therefore of three sorts :

1. *Le comparatif d'égalité*, The comparative by equality.
2. *Le comparatif d'excès*, The comparative by excess.
3. *Le comparatif de défaut*, The comparative by defect.

The comparative by *equality* is formed by placing the adverbs *autant*, as much, as many ; *aussi*, so, or as, before an adjective ; and *que*, as, after it : ex.

<i>Votre oncle a autant d'argent, et autant d'amis que mon père,</i>	Your uncle has as much money, and as many friends as my father.
<i>Ma sœur est aussi ambitieuse que vous,</i>	My sister is as ambitious as you.
<i>Mon frère est aussi savant que le vôtre,</i>	My brother is as learned as yours.

**N. B.**—From the preceding examples and the following, it will be easily seen that when the adverbs, *tant*, so much, so many; *autant*, as much, as many; *plus*, more, and *moins*, less, are immediately followed by a substantive, that substantive must be preceded by *de*. The learner will also observe that *si* and *aussi*, so, as; generally precede adjectives, when a comparison is made by either; whereas *tant* and *autant* are always followed by a noun or verb, the French conjunction *que*, Englished by either *as*, *than*, or *that*, being the term of the comparison; *plus* or *moins* may precede either an adjective, a noun, or verb.

Than after *more* or *less*, *plus* ou *moins*, followed by a noun of number, is rendered in French by *de*, and not *que*.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Alexander was as ambitious as Cæsar. - -  
*étoit, v. ambitieux, adj. que, c. César, m.*  
 I am as tall as you. - - My father is as rich  
*suis, v. haut, adj. riche, adj.*  
 as yours. - - Miss D. has as much liveliness, and she is  
*vivacité, f.*  
 as amiable as her cousin. - - If my father were  
*sa, pro. cousine, f. Si, c. étoit, v.*  
 as rich as my uncle, he (would make) a better use  
*oncle, m. feroit, v. usage, m.*  
 of his riches. - - We have as many books as  
*ses, pro. autant, adv.*  
 your brothers, and they are as learned as we. - - -  
*vos, pro. sont, v. nous, pro.*  
 I am as rich as you, and as honest and civil as my  
*riche, adj.*  
 companions. - - You owe me more than two dollars.  
*compagnon, m. devez, v. gourde.*

The *comparative by excess* is formed by placing the adverb *plus*, more, before an adjective: ex.

*Sa cousine a plus de livres* Her cousin has more books  
*que moi, et est plus savante* than I, and is more learn-  
*que vous,* ed than you.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Miss A. is handsomer and more learned than  
 her sisters. - - Lucia is taller and more proud *que, c.*  
 than her *Lucie, f.* little cousin. - - - His sister is more  
*sa, pro.* covetous than he. - - - Nothing is pleasanter  
*avare, adj.* to the mind *lui, pro.* than the light *Rien ne, adv.* of truth. - - -  
*esprit, m.* Nothing is more lovely *lumière, f.* than virtue, and  
*aimable, adj.* nothing is more desirable than wisdom. - - -  
*désirable, adj.* My daughter is taller than your son by two inches. - -  
*de* Your brother is taller than you by the whole<sup>1</sup> head<sup>2</sup>. - -  
*tête, f.* In winter the roads are always worse than  
*En hiver, m.* *chemin, m.* *plus mauvais, adj.*  
 in summer. - - He gave me more than one eagle.  
*été, m.* *aigle.*

The comparative by defect is formed by placing the ad-  
 verb *moins*, less, before an adjective; or *tant*, so much,  
 so many; or *si*, so; with the negation *ne pas*, or *point*,  
 not; or *ne, ni*, neither, nor, before them: ex.

*Votre cousine est moins noble* Your cousin is less noble  
*que vous,* than you.  
*Il n'est pas si orgueilleux que* He is not so proud as his  
*sa sœur,* sister.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Mrs. P\*\*\* is less polite than her daughter,  
*Madame, f.* *poli, adj.*  
 but her daughter (is not) so revengeful as she.  
*n'est pas, adv.* *vindictif, adj.*  
 You are<sup>2</sup> 'not<sup>3</sup> so dutiful as your brother.  
*êtes, v. ne pas, adv.* *obéissant, adj.*  
 My father is not so rich as yours, but he has  
*le vôtre, pro.*

not so much self-love. . . . Miss Goodwill has less  
*amour-propre*, m.

wit than her mother. - - Paris (is not) so populous as  
*peuplé*, adj.

London.—Your companion is neither so prudent, nor  
 ni

so circumspect as you.

*circonspect*, adj.

It must be observed, that in sentences in which the  
 above adverbs *more* or *less* are repeated to express a  
 comparison, the definite article *the*, preceding either, is  
 totally suppressed in French : as,

*Plus on est pauvre, moins on* The poorer people are, the  
*a d'embarras,* less care they have.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The more a thing is difficult, the more honour-  
*chose*, f. *difficile*, adj. *hono-*

able<sup>s</sup> it<sup>1</sup> is<sup>2</sup>. - - The less you give to your chil-  
*drable*, adj. *elle*, pro. *donnez*, v.

dren, the less they spend. - - The<sup>1</sup> richer<sup>4</sup> they<sup>2</sup>  
*ils*, pro. *dépensent*, v.

are<sup>3</sup>, the more covetous they are. - - The more a  
*avare*, adj.

young man studies, the more learned he grows,  
*étudie*, v. *savant*, adj. *devient*, v.

and the more respected he is. - - The more a  
*respecté*, p.p.

drunkard drinks, the more thirsty he is. - - -  
*ivrogne*, m. *boit*, v. *altéré*, adj.

The more odious laziness is, the more we  
*odieux*, adj. *paresse*, f.

should avoid<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>. - - The less you apply,  
*devrions*, v. *éviter*, v. *la*, pro. *vous vous appliquez*, v.

the less you learn. - - The more they know<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>,  
*apprenez*, v. *connoîtront*, v.

the less they will esteem<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>.  
*estimeront*, v.

The above comparative adverbs, *si*, *aussi*, *tant*, *autant*,  
*plus*, and *moins*, must be repeated, in French, before

each adjective, noun, verb, or adverb, in the sentence :  
ex.

<i>Votre frère est aussi savant</i>	Your brother is as learned
<i>et aussi éclairé que mon</i>	and enlightened as my
<i>cousin,</i>	cousin.
<i>M. Robert n'a ni tant de</i>	Mr. Robert has neither so
<i>bien ni tant d'esprit que</i>	much wealth nor wit as
<i>M. Dubois,</i>	Mr. Dubois.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

My father has as many apple - trees  
*autant, adv. pommier, m. ∞*  
 and pear - trees in his orchard as (there are)  
*poirier, m. ∞ verger, m. il y en a, v.*  
 in yours. - - - His eldest brother will be more  
*aîné, adj. sera, v.*  
 attentive, industrious, and rich than he. - - -  
*attentif, adj. industrieux, adj. lui, pro.*  
 Miss S\*\*\* has less wit, less liveliness, and becom-  
*vivacité, f. agré-*  
 ingness than her sister. - - She has as much virtue  
*mens, m. pl.*  
 and good sense as beauty and modesty. - - My  
*sens, m. Mon, pro.*  
 cousin is as merry, lively, and amiable as his  
*gai, adj. enjoué, adj. ses, pro.*  
 school-fellows.  
*compagnon, m.*

The same rule is to be observed with respect to the adverbs used in forming the superlative degree.

The three following adjectives are comparative by themselves, *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; and *moindre*, less; which signify *plus bon*, *plus mauvais*, *plus petit*.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The watch which my grand-father has bought  
*montre, f. que, pro. grand-père, m. achetée, p.p.*  
 is better than the clock which he gave to  
*pendule, f. a donnée, p.p.*  
 my mother. - - - My friend's buckles are better than  
*mère, f. boucle, f.*

those of his uncle, but mine are worse  
*celles, pro. oncle, m. les miennes, pro.*  
 than his. - - - - - The life of a slave is  
*les siennes, pro. vie, f. esclave, m.*  
 ten times worse than death itself. - - - The  
*dix fois, adv. mort, f. même, adv.*  
 pain which I endure is less than that which  
*peine, f. souffre, v. celle, pro. qui, pro.*  
 is inflicted on galley-slaves.  
*infligée, p.p. aux galérien, m.*

The *superlative* expresses the highest degree of any quality. There are two kinds of superlatives: 1. The *relative* which expresses the quality of a person or thing above all others of the same kind. In this case, one of the following articles, *le, la, les, de, du, de la, des, à, au, à la, aux*, precedes the adverbs *plus, most, mieux, best, moins, least*, before an adjective; or the adjectives *meilleur, best, moindre, least, pire, worse*: *ex.*

*Votre sœur est la plus belle* Your sister is the hand-  
*et la meilleure femme de* somest and best woman  
*la ville,* in the town.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The vine is one of the most useful\* and agree-  
*vigne, f. utile, adj.*  
 able gifts of Providence. - - Virtue is 'the' most\* pre-  
*don, m. Providence, f. précieux,*  
 cious\* thing\* in the world. - - - The lion is the  
*cieux, adj. chose, f. du monde, m.*  
 strongest and most courageous of all animals. - - -  
*fort, adj. courageux, adj. animal, m.*  
 (There is) the handsomest lady in London. - - She is  
*Voilà, adv. de*  
 so touchy, that she will not bear the least  
*bourru, adj. veut, v. souffrir, v.*  
 joke. - - - Miss P. is the mildest, politest, and most  
*raillerie, f. doux, adj. poli, adj.*  
 affable of all her sisters. - - Ingratitude is  
*affable, adj. ses, pro.*

\* See the gender of adjectives, p. 50.

the greatest of all vices. - - - If France were as rich  
 as England, (it would be) the best country in the  
 world.\*

The *absolute* simply expresses the quality of a person or thing in its highest degree. This happens when one of the adverbs *très, fort, bien, very, infiniment*, infinitely, precedes an adjective; and when any of the comparatives by excess or defect are preceded by one of the possessive pronouns *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur*, &c. they become superlatives: ex.

*Votre oiseau est très-joli,* Your bird is very pretty.  
*Vous êtes mon meilleur ami,* You are my best friend.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

God is a being infinitely great and perfect. - - -  
*être, m.* *parfait, adj.*

I am your most humble and obedient  
*très, adv.* *obéissant, adj.*

servant. - - - The front of your house is very  
*serviteur, m.* *façade, f.*

beautiful. - - - You are very good, but your brother  
*beau, adj.*

is very wicked. - - - My uncle has a very fine coun-  
*méchant, adj.* *cam-*

try - house, and very spacious<sup>s</sup> gardens<sup>s</sup>. - - -  
*pagne, f.* *spacieux, adj.*

My best friend is dead. - - - - Our common  
*Notre, pro. commun, adj.*

enemy has the most inveterate<sup>s</sup> hatred<sup>t</sup> against  
*invétéré, adj.* *haine, f.* *contre, p.*

this country. - - - Their least embarrassments  
*ce, pro.* *Leurs, pro.* *embarras, m.*

\* It may be observed in some of these examples, that the preposition *in*, following an adjective in the superlative degree, must be rendered in French by one of these articles *de, du, de la, des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which it belongs. The preposition *by*, when it follows an adjective in the comparative degree, is rendered by *de* only.



make their greatest delight. - - - Pride and  
*font*, v. *délices*, f. pl. *Orgueil*, m.  
 passion are his least defects.  
*colère*, f. *ses*, pro. *défaut*, m.

## OF NUMBERS.

There are two kinds of numbers: 1st, The *absolute*, which simply relates the number of the things spoken of, viz.

<i>Un</i> , (femin. <i>une</i> ,)	One.	
<i>Deux</i> ,	Two.	
<i>Trois</i> ,	Three.	
<i>Quatre</i> ,	Four.	
<i>Cinq</i> , ( <i>q</i> is sounded,)	Five.	
<i>Six</i> , (pron. <i>siss</i> ,)	Six.	
<i>Sept</i> , (pron. <i>set</i> ,)	Seven.	
<i>Huit</i> , ( <i>t</i> is sounded,)	Eight.	
<i>Neuf</i> , ( <i>f</i> is sounded,)	Nine.	
<i>Dix</i> , (pron. <i>diss</i> ,)	Ten.	
<i>Onze</i> ,	Eleven.	
<i>Douze</i> ,	Twelve.	
<i>Treize</i> ,	Thirteen.	
<i>Quatorze</i> ,	Fourteen.	
<i>Quinze</i> ,	Fifteen.	
<i>Seize</i> , ( <i>sei</i> is broad,)	Sixteen.	
<i>Dix-sept</i> , (pron. <i>diss-set</i> ,)	Seventeen.	
<i>Dix-huit</i> , (pron. <i>diz-uit</i> ,)	Eighteen.	
<i>Dix-neuf</i> , (pron. <i>diz-neuf</i> ,)	Nineteen.	
<i>Vingt</i> , ( <i>gt</i> are dropped,)	Twenty.	
<i>Vingt et un</i> ,	} <i>g</i> is dropt, but <i>t</i> is sounded.	Twenty-one.
<i>Vingt-deux</i> ,		Twenty-two.
<i>Vingt-trois</i> , &c. }		Twenty-three, &c.
<i>Trente</i> ,		Thirty.
<i>Trente et un</i> ,		Thirty-one.
<i>Trente-deux</i> , &c.		Thirty-two, &c.
<i>Quarante</i> ,		Forty.
<i>Cinquante</i> ,		Fifty.
<i>Soixante</i> , (pron. <i>soissante</i> ,)		Sixty.
<i>Soixante et un</i> ,		Sixty-one.
<i>Soixante et deux</i> , &c.		Sixty-two, &c.

*Soixante et dix,*  
*Soixante et onze, &c.*

*Quatre-vingts, (gts are dropped,*  
 and in the following too,)

*Quatre-vingt-un,*  
*Quatre-vingt-deux, &c.*

*Quatre-vingt-dix, &c.*

*Cent, (t in cent is dropped, and*  
 in the following too,)

*Cent-un,*

Seventy.

Seventy-one, &c.

Eighty.

Eighty-one.

Eighty-two, &c.

Ninety, &c.

A or one\* hundred.

A or one\* hundred  
 and one, &c.

*Deux cents, or rather cens, (x is*  
 dropped, and the final con-  
 sonants in the following also,  
 as before any other word,  
 beginning with a consonant)

Two hundred.

*Trois cens,*

*Neuf cens, (f dropped,)*

*Mille, mil,†*

*Deux mille,*

*Trois mille, &c.*

*Cent mille, &c.*

Three hundred.

Nine hundred.

A or one\* thousand.

Two thousand.

Three thousand, &c.

A or one\* hundred  
 thousand, &c.

*Neuf cent mille, (f dropped,)*

Nine hundred thou-  
 sand.

*Un million,*

A million.

These *absolute numbers* are declined with the article indefinite *de, à,* and are always placed before the substantive to which they are joined; and they are invariable in their form, except *quatre-vingt*, eighty; *cent*, a hundred; and *million*, a million; which take an *s* in their plural, when immediately followed by a substantive: ex.

*Quatre-vingts femmes,*

Eighty women.

*Deux cens hommes,*

Two hundred men.

\* It will be seen by the following, that the English particle *a* or *one* is not expressed in French: ex.

*Je l'ai vu et lui ai parlé cent fois, mille fois,* I have seen him and spoken to him a hundred times, a thousand times.

† Mentioning the date of the year, we must write, *mil*, and not *mille*: ex. *L'an mil huit-cent quinze*, the year 1815.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I was in the company of seven gentlemen and  
*compagnie, f.*  
 nine ladies. - - He has spoken to three officers and  
*parlé, p.p.*  
 two generals. - - If I had a hundred guineas I would<sup>d</sup>  
*avois, v.* *guinée, f.* *en*  
 lend<sup>d</sup> you<sup>t</sup> eighty. - - The army of our  
*prêteroïs, v.* *armée, f.* *nos, pro.*  
 allies was composed of a hundred thousand  
*allié, m.* *composée, p.p.*  
 men of foot, and twenty thousand of horse. - - -  
*infanterie, f.* *cavalerie, f.*  
 They took fifteen hundred men prisoners,  
*prirënt, v.* *prisonnier, m.*  
 killed four thousand, wounded a thousand,  
*en tuèrent, v.* *en blessèrent, v.*  
 and (carried away) above two millions in specie. - -  
*emportèrent, v.* *plus de* *espèces, f.*  
 The battle (was fought) in one thousand eight hun-  
*bataille, f.* *se livra, v.* *en*  
 dred and fourteen, at three o'clock in the morning.  
*heure, f.* *du matin.*

It must be observed, that, when the number *un*, one, comes after *vingt*, twenty, *trente*, thirty, *quarante*, forty, &c.; the substantive, relating to those two numbers taken together, is put in the singular in French, though in the plural in English; and, when the noun singular, in French, immediately following the *unit*, is attended by an adjective, that adjective must be put in the plural: ex.

<i>Vingt-et-un homme,</i>	One and twenty men.
<i>Vingt-et-un an accomplis,</i>	Full one and twenty years old.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have found a purse in which (there were)  
*bourse, f.* *laquelle, pro.* *il y avoit, v.*

one and thirty guineas, one and forty crowns, and  
*guinée, f. écu, m.*  
 one and twenty shillings. - - - I saw one and fifty  
*chelin, m. ai vu, v.*  
 men assembled before St. James's palace. - -  
*devant St. Jâques, m.*  
 When my brother died he was one and thirty  
*mourut, v. avoit, v.*  
 years old. - - - Mr. P\*\*\* will pay<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> one  
*payera, v. me, pro.*  
 and sixty guineas well told. - - - I received  
*bien, adv. comptées, p.p. ai reçu, v.*  
 yesterday by the last mail one and forty  
*hier, adv. dernière, adj. malle, f.*  
 letters well sealed, and very interesting.  
*lettre, f. cachetées, p.p. importantes, adj.*

N. B. Such were the opinion and decision of the French Academy some years ago; but now the best authors write, *vingt-et-un ans accomplis, trente et une guinées bien comptées*.

However, custom will have us say, in the following instances,

*Vingt-et-un chevaux;* One and twenty horses.  
*Trente-et-un volumes,* One and thirty volumes.

The cardinal numbers must be used in French when speaking of the days of the month; though the ordinal be used in English; but we must say, *le premier*, the first, speaking of the first day of every month: as,

*Le premier de Mai,* The first of May.  
*Le deux de Novembre,* The second of November.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My friend will come to see<sup>2</sup> us<sup>1</sup> on the fifth of  
*viendra, v. voir, v.*  
 next<sup>2</sup> month.<sup>1</sup> - - Lady - day falls  
*prochain, adj. mois, m. Notre dame, f. jour, m. tombe, v.*  
 on the twenty-fifth of March. - - In the leap<sup>2</sup>  
*Mars, m. bissextile, adj.*

year<sup>1</sup> the month of February has one day more,  
*année, f. Février, m. de plus, adv.*  
 which is the twenty-ninth. -- The first of November  
*qui, pro. Novembre, m.*  
 is (all-saints - day,) and the fifth of the same month  
*la toussaint, f. même, adj.*  
 is the day of the <sup>2</sup>Gun - powder <sup>1</sup>plot.  
*des poudres, pl. conspiration, f.*  
 Come on the first day of July.  
*Venez, v. Juillet, m.*

2. *The ordinal numbers.* This class of numerals, beside the simple notation, signifies the order or rank of things, viz.

<i>Le premier ou unième,</i>	The first.
<i>Le second ou deuxième,</i>	The second.
<i>Le troisième,</i>	The third.
<i>Le quatrième,</i>	The fourth.
<i>Le cinquième,</i>	The fifth.
<i>Le sixième,</i>	The sixth.
<i>Le septième,</i>	The seventh.
<i>Le huitième,*</i>	The eighth.
<i>Le neuvième,</i>	The ninth.
<i>Le dixième,</i>	The tenth.
<i>Le onzième,*</i>	The eleventh.
<i>Le douzième,</i>	The twelfth.
<i>Le treizième,</i>	The thirteenth.
<i>Le quatorzième,</i>	The fourteenth.
<i>Le quinzième,</i>	The fifteenth.
<i>Le seizième,</i>	The sixteenth.
<i>Le dix-septième,</i>	The seventeenth.
<i>Le dix-huitième,</i>	The eighteenth.
<i>Le dix-neuvième,</i>	The nineteenth.
<i>Le vingtième,</i>	The twentieth.
<i>Le vingt-et-unième,</i>	The twenty-first.
<i>Le vingt-deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	The twenty-second, &c.
<i>Le trentième,</i>	The thirtieth.
<i>Le trente-deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	The thirty-second, &c.
<i>Le quarantième,</i>	The fortieth.

\* No elision is to be made in the article before *onze, onzième; huit, huitième*; for we say, *le, du, au, la, de la, à la, &c. onze, onzième, &c.*

<i>Le cinquantième,</i>	The fiftieth.
<i>Le soixantième,</i>	The sixtieth.
<i>Le soixante-et-dixième,</i>	The seventieth.
<i>Le quatre-vingtième,</i>	The eightieth.
<i>Le centième,</i>	The hundredth.
<i>Le cent unième,</i>	The hundred and first.
<i>Le cent deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	The hundred and second, &c.
<i>Le deux centième,</i>	The two hundredth.
<i>Le millième,</i>	The thousandth.

These ordinal numbers are declined with the article definite *le, la, &c.* and are placed before their substantives: *ex.*

*Le premier jour du mois,* The first day of the month.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

On the eleventh of June I received twelve letters,  
*Jun, ai reçu, v.*  
 but the eleventh<sup>2</sup> has afforded<sup>3</sup> me<sup>1</sup> more  
*procuré, p.p. me, pro. plus, adv.*  
 pleasure than the others. - - - Mrs. B. is the fifth  
*autre, pro. Madame, f.*  
 lady whom I saw to day. - - - The spring  
*que, pro. ai vue, v. aujourd'hui, adv. printemps, m.*  
 begins on the twenty-first or twenty second of  
*commence, v.*  
 March. - - - He cannot spend the sixth  
*Mars, m. ne peut pas, v. dépenser, v.*  
 part of his fortune. - - - The eleventh of No-  
*partie, f. sa, pro. fortune, f.*  
 vember, which is the eleventh month of the year,  
*année, f.*  
 was the dullest<sup>2</sup> day<sup>1</sup> of the<sup>2</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> month<sup>3</sup>.  
*triste, adj. tout, adj.*

Speaking of sovereigns, we use the *absolute* number in French, though the ordinal be used in English, except the *first* and *second*; but we place it after the substantive, as in English, without expressing the article *the*: *ex.*

*George Trois,  
Louis Seize,  
Henri Quatre,  
Henri Premier,  
George Second,*

*George the Third.  
Lewis the Sixteenth.  
Henry the Fourth.  
Henry the First.  
George the Second.*

and not, *Henri Un, George Deux.*

We also say, for the following *names* of *Emperor* and *Pope* only,

*Charles Quint;  
Sixte Quint,*

*Charles the Fifth.  
Sixtus the Fifth.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Edward the Sixth, the son of Henry the  
*Edouard, m. fils, m.*

Eighth, and the grand - son of Henry the Seventh,  
*petit, adj.*

was<sup>2</sup> 'but<sup>3</sup> nine years old when he began  
*avoit, v. ne que, an, m. quand, c. commençâ, v.*  
to reign. - - - - Henry the Fifth, King of England,  
*à régner, v. roi, m.*

the son of Henry the Fourth, and father of Henry  
the Sixth, married Catharine, the daughter of  
*épousa, v. Cathérine, f.*

Charles the Sixth, king of France; conquered the  
*conquit, v.*

greatest part of that kingdom, and died  
*grand, adj. partie, f. ce, pro. royaume, m. mourut, v.*

(in the) midst of his victories. - - - (Long live)  
*au milieu ses, pro. victoire, f. Vive, v.*

George the Third, grand - son to George the  
*petit, adj.*

Second. - - - - Charles the Fifth, king of Spain, and  
*roi, m.*

Sixtus the Fifth, pope of Rome, were two  
*pape, m. étoient, v.*

great men.  
*grand, adj.*

The definite article *the* is also suppressed in French before the ordinal number, when it is preceded by a noun used to quote a *chapter, article, or page* of a book ;

but, should the ordinal number precede the noun, the construction is the same in French as in English, and the article is expressed : *ex.*

<i>Livre troisième,</i>	Book the third.
<i>Le troisième livre,</i>	The third book.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

What you (look for) you (will find<sup>2</sup>) it<sup>1</sup>  
*Ce que, pro. cherchez, v. trouverez, v. le, pro.*  
 in the Second Book of Samuel, chapter the  
*Samuel, m. chapitre, m.*  
 third, verse the ninth, page the first, and  
*verset, m. page, f.*  
 line the tenth. --- We read in Telemachus,  
*ligne, f. lisons, v. Télémaque, m.*  
 book the seventh, page the hundred and twenty-  
 fifth, that Mentor pushed Telemachus into the sea,  
*que poussa, v. mer, f.*  
 and threw<sup>3</sup> himself<sup>1</sup> (into it<sup>2</sup>) afterward with  
*jeta, v. se, pro. y, adv. ensuite, adv.*  
 him. --- Our master forgives the first time,  
*lui, pro. Notre, pro. pardonne, v. fois, f.*  
 threatens the second, and always<sup>2</sup> punishes<sup>1</sup>  
*menace, v. toujours, adv. punit, v.*  
 the third.

#### RECAPITULATORY or promiscuous EXERCISES upon all the preceding RULES.

Ignorance is the mother of admiration,  
*Ignorance, f. est, v. mère, f. admiration, f.*  
 error, and superstition. ---- The covetous de-  
*erreur, f. superstition, f. avare, adj. mé-*  
 spise the poor. ---- Humility is the basis of  
*prisent, v. pauvre, adj. Humilité, f. base, f.*  
 Christian virtues. - Pride is generally the effect  
*Chrétien, adj. Orgueil, m. effet, m.*  
 of ignorance. - - Give me some bread, meat,  
*Donnez, v. moi, pro.*



turnips, and water. -- Merit and favour are  
*navet, m. Mérite, m. faveur, f. sont, v.*

the two springs of envy. --- Interest, pleasure,  
*source, f. envie, f. Intérêt, m.*

and glory, are the three motives of the actions  
*motif, m.*

and conduct of men. -- Is<sup>2</sup> it<sup>2</sup> 'not'  
*conduite, f. Est, v. ce, pro. ne pas, adv.*

Peter's book? --- Your father is gone to London,  
*allé, p. p.*

where he has bought some horses and a great many  
 cows, which he intends to send to Canada or  
*vache, f. que, pro. se propose, v. d'envoyer, v.*

Jamaica. -- The father's house and the son's gar-  
*maison, f. jar-*

den (are adjoining.) -- He found the windows  
*din, m. se joignent, v. trouva, v.*

and the doors shut. -- Truth is the bond of  
*Vérité, f. lien, m.*

union and the basis of human happiness :  
*union, f. humain, adj. bonheur, m.*

without it (there is no) confidence in  
*sans, p. elle, pro. il n'y a point confiance, f.*

friendship, and no security in promises. --  
*amitié, f. point, adv. sûreté, f. promesse, f.*

The love of liberty and independence is the  
*amour, m. liberté, f.*

character of noble minds. --- Iron, steel,  
*caractère, m. âme, f. Fer, m. acier, m.*

and brass are more useful than gold and  
*cuivre, m. utile, adj.*

silver. -- The smith has at last repaired  
*serrurier, m. enfin, adv. réparé, p. p.*

the two jacks, and the cook (is  
*tourne-broche, m. cuisinière, f. fait*

roasting) the meat. -- I have seen the inside of the  
*rôtir, v. dedans, m.*

church. --- Bring me my powder-box, and  
*église, f. ma, pro.*

my toupee-iron. -- I take a lesson three times  
*mon, pro. prends*

a week. -- The study of grammar is <sup>neither</sup> ~~neither~~  
    *étude, f.*   *ne ni, c.*  
 dry nor so dull as (it is thought.) --  
*sec, adj.*   *triste, adj.*   *on se l'imagine, v.*  
 Have prudence and patience, and you (will ha  
*Ayez, v.*   *aurez,*  
 success. ---- A good conscience is to the sou  
*succès, m.*   *conscience, f.*   *âme*  
 what health is to the body. -- Merit a  
*ce que, pro.*   *santé, f.*   *corps, m.*  
 virtue are the only source of true  
    *unique, adj.*   *véritable, ad*  
 nobility. --- Religion, commerce, and arms  
*noblesse, f.*   *Religion, f.*   *commerce, m.*   *arme, f*  
 are proper instructions for a young prince. --  
    *propre, adj.*   *instruction, f.*   *à*  
 Her father has been made a knight  
*Son, pro.*   *été, p.p.*   *fait, p.p.*   *chevalier, m.*  
 of the order of the Bath, and her grandfather  
    *ordre, m.*   *Bain, m.*  
 was a knight of the order of the Garter. ----  
*étoit, v.*   *Jarretière, f.*  
 He has not so much profit, but more honour. --  
    *tant, adv.*   *profit, m.*  
 Fortune's favours are seldom the prize of  
    *faveur, f.*   *rarement, adv.*   *prix, m.*  
 virtue. -- Gaming is the son of avarice, and the father  
    *Jeu, m.*  
 of despair. -- This cloth is equal to silk. -  
    *désespoir, m.*   *Ce, pro.*   *drap, m.*   *comparable, adj.*   *soie, f.*  
 I see the coast of England. ---- A forest twenty  
    *vois, v.*   *côte, f.*   *forêt, f.*  
 miles long and eleven wide. --- The example of a  
    *mille, m.*   *exemple, m.*  
 good life is a lesson for the rest of man-  
    *pour, p.*   *reste, m.*   *genre*  
 kind. - The French fleet was destroyed  
*humain, m.*   *François, adj.*   *flotte, f.*   *fut, v.*   *détruite, p. p.*  
 by the brave Admiral Nelson, on the first of August,  
    *Amiral, m.*   *vo*   *Août, m.*  
 ne thousand seven hundred and ninety eight. ....

The eldest son of the king of England  
*aîné, adj.*

bears the title of Prince of Wales as  
*porte, v. titre, m. Galles, pl. comme, adv.*

presumptive heir to the crown. - - Lewis

*présomptif, adj. héritier, m. couronne, f. Louis*

the sixteenth was the grand-son of Lewis the fif-  
*petit, adj.*

teenth. - - William, surnamed the Con-

*Guillaume, m. surnommé, p.p. Con-*

queror, King of England and Duke of Nor-

*quérant, m. Duc, m. Nor-*

mandy, was one of the greatest generals of the

*mandie, f.*

eleventh century. - - He (was born) at Falaise, and

*siècle, m. nâquit, v. à*

was the natural son of Robert, Duke of Nor-

*naturel, adj.*

mandy, and of Arlotte, a furrier's daughter. - - He

*fourreur, m. fille, f.*

died at Hermentrude in France, on the ninth of

*mourut, v. à*

September, one thousand eighty-seven. - - Mrs. Nel-

son's servant knows the price of all the provisions.

*servante, f. sait, v. prix, m. denrée, f.*

- - She bought yesterday some chickens at one shilling

*poulet, m. à*

and three pence a piece. - - She came from America

*vint, v.*

in three weeks. - - Thomas was formerly a mu-

*en, p. autrefois, adv. mu-*

sician, now he is a dancing - master,

*sicien, m. à présent, adv. danse, f. maître, m.*

to-morrow he will be a painter. - - This

*demain, adv. sera, v. peintre, m. Cette, pro.*

water is very agreeable to the smell. - - - - We

*odorat, m.*

(are going) to Coxheath, to see the camp. - - I

*allons, v. voir, v. camp, m.*

have in my ward-robe five coats, sixteen waistcoats,

twenty-two pair of stockings, and forty-six hand-  
 kerchiefs. - - - The road to Croydon is very bad  
*chair, m. chemin, m.*  
 in winter. - - Bring us good wine, good beer,  
*en, p. hiver, m.*  
 and the oil-bottle. - - The front of the king's pa-  
*façade, f.*  
 lace (is not) so beautiful as I thought. - - - Gene-  
*n'est pas croyois, v. Génér-*  
 rosity excites admiration. - - Charles the second,  
*rosité, f. excite, v. admiration, f.*  
 the son of Philip the fourth, the grandson of Philip  
*Philippe*  
 the third, and the great grand-child of Philip the  
*arrière, petit - fils, m.*  
 second, left his kingdom to Philip the fifth. - -  
*laissa, v. son, pro.*  
 On the eighteenth of February one thousand four  
*on Février,*  
 hundred and seventy-eight, the Duke of Clarence,  
 brother to King Edward the fourth, was drowned in  
*frère, m. fut, v. noyé, p.p.*  
 a butt of malmsey-wine. - The inhabitants of the  
*tonneau, m. malvoisie, f. habitant, m.*  
 city of Dublin have presented a petition to  
*ville, f. ont, v. présenté, p.p. adresse, f.*  
 the king. It was signed by one-and-  
*Elle, pro. étoit, v. signé, p.p. par, p.*  
 twenty knights and above two hundred citizens.  
*plus de, adv. citoyen, m.*  
 - - Good cider is preferable to bad wine. - - That  
*cidre, m.*  
 man always wears a green hat, a white shirt, red  
*a, v. chemise, f.*  
 shoes, and black stockings. He has many children  
*bas, m. bien, adv.*  
 and plenty of money. - - - The longer the  
*beaucoup, adv. argent, m. long, adj.*  
 day is, the shorter is the night. - - You have a fine

**Inst.** - - Shame is a mixture of the grief and  
*Honte, f. mélange, m. chagrin, m.*  
 fear which infamy causes. - - Religion,  
*crainte, f. que, pro. infamie, f. cause, v.*  
 morality, government, fine arts, in a word,  
*morale, f. gouvernement, m. en, p.*  
 (every thing) is overturned. - - Homer was the  
*tout renversé, p.p. fut, v.*  
 first poet who personified the divine at-  
*poète, m. personnifia, v. divin, adj. at-*  
 tributes, human passions, and physical  
*tribut, m. humain, adj. physique, adj.*  
 causes. - - Pride and vanity are often the source  
*vanité, f. souvent, adj.*  
 of the misfortunes of mankind. - - - - - We sell  
*malheur, m. vendons, v.*  
 good bread, excellent meat, and very large  
*gros, adj.*  
 fishes; but<sup>1</sup> we<sup>2</sup> have<sup>3</sup> neither<sup>5</sup> gold nor  
*poisson, m. mais, c. avons, v.*  
 silver. - - (Is there) any beer in the cellar? - -  
*Y a-t-il dans, p. cave, f.*  
 Mrs. B. is a good, virtuous, prudent, and  
*vertueux, adj.*  
 generous lady: she has a daughter as beautiful as an  
*fille, f.*  
 angel, but she has neither so much docility nor af-  
*ange, m.*  
 fability as her cousin. - - Pindar (was born) at  
*Pindare, m. naquit, v.*  
 Thebes, a city of Greece. - - Malta is a small  
*Grèce, f. Malte, f.*  
 island, but it produces corn, cotton, honey,  
*île, f. elle, pro. produit, v. coton, m. miel, m.*  
 figs, and the finest oranges in the world. - - The  
*figue, f. beau, adj. orange, f.*  
 inhabitants of that fine country are all catholics,  
 and go every Sunday to hear high mass. - - The  
*vont, v. Dimanche, m.*  
 pleasure of the mind is greater than the pleasure

of the body, and the diseases of the mind  
*corps, m. maladie, f.*

more pernicious than the diseases of the body  
*pernicieux, adj.*

Health, honors, and fortune, united together,  
*Santé, f. uni, p.p. ensemble, adv*

cannot satisfy the heart of man. -  
*ne peuvent, v. satisfaire, v. cœur, m.*

(It is) in the sixth page of the second book, chapter  
*C'est, v.*

the third. - Miss W's. father, a banker in the  
 Strand, is one of the richest men in town, but  
*Strand, m.*

she is prouder and more haughty than  
*orgueilleux, adj. hautain, adj.*

if she were the handsomest woman in Europe. - - -  
*étoit, v. \**

Their son arrived yesterday at Portsmouth from  
*Leur, pro.*

Péru and Martinico, in the St. George, a ninety-  
*Perou Martinique,*

gun ship. - - - Hypocrisy is a homage which  
*canon, m. vaisseau, m. hommage, m. que, pro.*

vice pays to virtue. - - A judicious answer  
*vice, m. rend, v. judicieux, adj. réponse, f.*

does more honour than a brilliant repartee. - -  
*fait, v. brillant, adj. repartie, f.*

Give me a knife and fork. - - My father has bought  
 one-and-thirty fine grey horses. - - (He is) an  
*gris, adj. C'est, v.*

intrepid man, and a man of honor and pro-  
*intrépide, adj. pro-*

bity. - - - Mr. C\*\*\*, the queen's jeweller, has a  
*bité, f. jouailler, m.*

very prudent wife, and the most faithful, indus-  
*fidèle, adj. indus-*

trious, and honest servant in London. - -  
*trieux, adj. honnête, adj. \**

\* See the remarks on the prepositions *in* and *by*, in the note, in the degrees of comparison, page 66.

He found beauty, youth, riches, wisdom,  
*trouva, v. jeunesse, f.*  
 and even virtue, united in her per-  
*même, adv. réuni, p.p. sa, pro.*  
 son. - Thomas has discretion, but he has no  
*discretion, f. ne point, adv.*  
 wit. - - They have a quantity of apples and pears. - -  
*quantité, f.*  
 Vienna, the capital of the empire of Germany,  
*Vienne, f. Allemagne, f.*  
 is a fine city. - - The more pleasing plays  
*agréable, adj. spectacle, m.*  
 are, the more dangerous they are. - - The rich,  
*dangereux, adj.*  
 the poor, the young, the old, the learned, and  
*savant, adj.*  
 the ignorant, are all subject to death. - - True  
*sujet, adj. mort, f. Vrai, adj.*  
 friends are as rare as good kings. - - The  
*rare, adj.*  
 famous mine of Potosi, in Peru, is above  
*fameux, adj. mine, f. plus, adv.*  
 two hundred and fifty fathoms deep. - - Henry the first,  
*toise, f. Henri*  
 king of England, and brother to William Rufus,  
*le Roux,*  
 died the richest prince in Europe. - - Paul is taller  
*mourut, v.*  
 than you by an inch, but Mrs. Nichol's brother is  
*\* pouce, m.*  
 the tallest of all.

### SECT. III. OF PRONOUNS.

There are seven sorts of PRONOUNS ;

1. *Les Pronoms personnels,* Pronouns personal.
2. *Les Pronoms conjonctifs,* Pronouns conjunctive.

- |                                      |                         |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 3. <i>Les Pronoms possessifs,</i>    | Pronouns possessive.    |
| 4. <i>Les Pronoms démonstratifs,</i> | Pronouns demonstrative. |
| 5. <i>Les Pronoms relatifs,</i>      | Pronouns relative.      |
| 6. <i>Les Pronoms interrogatifs,</i> | Pronouns interrogative. |
| 7. <i>Les Pronoms indéfinis,</i>     | Pronouns indefinite.    |

## OF PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

*Pronouns personal* are those which directly denote persons, and supply the place of them.

There are three persons :

The first is the person who speaks : ex.

<i>Je parle,</i>	I speak.
<i>Nous parlons,</i>	We speak.

The second is the person spoken to : ex.

<i>Tu parles,</i>	Thou speakest.
<i>Vous parlez,</i>	You speak.

The third is the person spoken of : ex.

<i>Il or elle parle,</i>	He or she speaks.
<i>Ils or elles parlent,</i>	They speak.

Both Genders.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Je or moi, I.</i>	<i>Nous, we.</i>
<i>Tu or toi, thou.</i>	<i>Vous, you or ye.</i>

Masculine.

<i>Il or lui, he, it.</i>	<i>Ils, or eux, they.</i>
---------------------------	---------------------------

Feminine.

<i>Elle, she, it.</i>	<i>Elles, they.</i>
-----------------------	---------------------

The above pronouns are never to be used but as nominatives to the verbs. The rest are declined with the article indefinite : ex.

First Person for both Genders.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
G. A. <i>de moi, of or from me,</i>	<i>de nous, of or from us.</i>
Dat. <i>à moi, to me,</i>	<i>à nous, to us.</i>
Acc. <i>moi, me.</i>	<i>nous, us.</i>



**Second Person, for both Genders.**

**SINGULAR.**

### PLURAL.

**G. A. de toi, of or from thee, de vous, of or from you.**

Dat. *à toi*, to thee,                      *à vous*, to you.

**Acc.** *toi*, thee.                      *vous*, you.

### Third Person.

**SINGULAR.**

**G. A. de lui, of or from him, d'elle, of or from her.\***

**Dat.** *à lui*, to him,                      *à elle*, to her.\*

**Acc.** *lui, him.* *elle, her.\**

**PLURAL.**

**Masculine.**

**Feminine.**

**G. A. *d'eux*, of or from them, *d'elles*, of or from them.**

Dat. à eux, to them,      à elles, to them.

**Acc.** *eux*, them,                      *elles*, them.

There are two other pronouns of the third person,  
viz.

**SINGULAR and PLURAL. Both Genders.**

1st. G. A. *de soi*, of or from { one's self, himself, herself,  
themselves.

**Dat.** *à soi*, to one's self, himself, &c.

**Acc.** *soi*, one's self, himself, &c.

**N. B.** Though it have been said, that the personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, it must not thence be concluded, that they are never employed for the names of animals or inanimate objects : this seldom happens in the first and second persons ; but the personal pronouns, *il, elle, ils, elles*, may denote every object in nature, either animate or inanimate : ex.

*Ce chien est fort beau, mais  
il est trop gras,*      That dog is very handsome,  
   but it is too fat.

\* *Her*, when standing by itself, is to be rendered by *elle*, *la*, or *lui*; but, if joined to a noun, by the pronoun possessive, *son*, *sa*, *ses*.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

This picture is very old, but  
*Ce, pro. portrait, m. ancien, adj.*  
 well painted. - - The house which I bought  
*bien, adv. peint, p.p. que, pro. ai achet*  
 is well situated, but I assure<sup>s</sup> you<sup>t</sup> that it  
*situé, adj. assure, v. que, adv.*  
 cost<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> much. - - - The books  
*coûte, v. me, pro. beaucoup, adv.*  
 you saw in my library are  
*vîtes, v. ma, pro. bibliothèque, f.*  
 books, but they are badly bound. - - - You  
*mal, adv. relié, p.p. Vos*  
 buckles would be much more in the fashi  
*boucle, f. seroient, v. à mode*  
 they were smaller. - - - My hat is quit  
*étoient, v. Mon, pro. tout,*  
 new, but it is too big. - - - - - The  
*neuf, adj. trop, adv. grand, adj. Leu*  
 coach is old, but it is as good as if  
*carosse, m. vieux, adj. si, c.*  
 it were new.  
*étoit, v.*

2d. The general and indefinite pronoun, *on*, is  
 always considered as a nominative of the masculin  
 der, and can never be used (in French) but in the  
 lar, though the meaning be plural; ex. When we  
*On chante, on mange,* They sing, one eats, or peopl  
*i. e. some men or women sing, eat.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

People imagine that when they  
*On, pro. s'imaginer, v. que quand, adv. on*  
 rich, they are happy; but they (are mist  
*on heureux, adj. on se tromp*  
 very often; for, the more one ha  
*très, adv. souvent, adv. car, c.*  
 more one wishes to have. - - - - - When w  
*veut, v. avoir, v.*

(raised up) to honors, or we are invested  
*élevé*, p. p. ou *que*, c. *revêtu*, p. p.  
 with some dignity, we are to expect  
*de quelque*, adj. *dignité*, f. *doit*, v. *s'attendre*, v.  
 to be criticised. - - - (Some persons) reported  
*à être critiqué*, p. p. On, pro. *rapporta*, v.  
 last week, that in France they  
*dernière*, adj. *semaine*, f.  
 talk of peace.  
*parle*, v.

The word *même*, self, is very often joined to the personal pronouns, to denote, in a more special manner, the person spoken of: as,

<i>Moi-même</i> , myself.	<i>Soi-même</i> , one's self.
<i>Toi-même</i> , thyself.	<i>Nous-mêmes</i> , ourselves.
<i>Lui-même</i> , himself.	<i>Vous-mêmes</i> , yourselves.
<i>Elle-même</i> , herself.	<i>Eux-mêmes</i> , or <i>elles-mêmes</i> , themselves.

#### OBSERVATIONS on the PRONOUNS *Je* and *Moi*, *Tu* and *Toi*, *Il* and *Lui*, *Ils* and *Eux*.

*Je* and *moi* are used in two different senses, though both in the nominative case; *Je* is always followed or preceded immediately by a verb to which it is the nominative case, and has no need to be joined to another pronoun: but *moi* always requires to be followed by one pronoun or more, either expressed or understood: ex

<i>Qui a pris mon livre?</i>	Who took my book?
<i>C'est moi,</i>	It is I. That is,
<i>C'est moi qui l'ai pris,</i>	It is I who took it.

*Moi* must be used instead of *Je* before an infinitive mood, or at the end of a sentence, when it is intended to express something sudden, as *grief*, &c.; when *I*, in English, is followed by the pronoun relative *who* or *whom*, or is preceded by the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as *c'est*, it is; and lastly, whenever any difference or distinction is intended between persons; in which case it must be immediately followed by *Je*: ex.

<i>Moi lui parler!</i>	I speak to him or her!
<i>Moi qui vous aime,</i>	I who love you.

*Il étoit à pied et moi j'étois à cheval,*      *He was on foot, and I was on horseback.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Who (was calling<sup>a</sup>) me<sup>1</sup>? -- It was not  
*appeloit, v. me, pro. Ce, pro. ne pas, adv.*  
 I. -- The boy wants to speak<sup>a</sup> to you<sup>1</sup>. ---- I  
*désire, v. ∞ parler, v. ∞*  
 who am older than he, I, go and speak<sup>a</sup>  
*âgé, adj. lui, pro. aller, v. ∞*  
 to him<sup>1</sup>! No, I will not go, (let him come)  
*lui, pro. Non, adv. veux, v. qu'il vienne, v.*  
 himself. --- It is I who am to be rewarded  
*dois, v. ∞ récompensé, p. p.*  
 instead of him. --- My father commanded the  
*au lieu lui, pro. commandoit, v.*  
 horse, and I commanded the foot. ----- He  
*cavalerie, f. infanterie, f.*  
 could not do<sup>a</sup> it in one day, and I  
*put, v. faire, v. le, pro. en, p.*  
 did it in the space of three hours. ---  
*ai fait, v. dans, p. espace, m. heure, f.*  
 When the enemy appeared, my companions  
*parut, v. mes, pro.*  
 (ran away) and I remained alone.  
*priront la fuite, v. restai, v. seul, adj.*

The same rule is to be attended to with respect to  
*toi, lui, eux, &c.:* as,

<i>Toi qui me parles,</i>	Thou who speakest to me.
<i>Lui que je méprise,</i>	He whom I despise.
<i>Eux que je respecte,</i>	They whom I respect.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

How darest thou answer thy  
*Comment, adv. oses, v. répondre à, v. ton, pro.*  
 master in so<sup>a</sup> insolent<sup>a</sup> a<sup>1</sup> manner<sup>a</sup>? thou  
*de, si, adv. insolent, adj. manière, f.*  
 whom he loves, thou for whom he takes  
*que, pro. aime, v. pour, p. qui, pro. prend, v.*  
 — so much pains. ---- He and they, not (being able)  
*peine, f. sing. pouvant, v.*



## For the third.

## SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Dat. *Lui*, { to him, to it, } for *à lui*.  
 Acc. *Le*, { him, it, } *lui*.

## Feminine.

Dat. *Lui*, { to her, to it, } for *à elle*.  
 Acc. *La*, { her, it, } *elle*.

## PLURAL.—Both Genders.

Dat. *Leur*, { to them, } for *à eux*, m. *à elles*, f.  
 Acc. *Les*, { them, } *eux*, m. *elles*, f.

Dat. or Acc. *Se*, { one's self, himself, } for *à soi*, or *soi*.  
 { herself, themselves, }

Five of these pronouns are used for the dative or accusative case, and are of both Genders, viz.

*Me* or *moi*, *te* or *toi*, *nous*, *vous*, *se* : ex.

*Vous me parlez*, You speak to me.  
*Il vous croit*, He believes you.  
*Vous me priez de*, &c. You desire me to, &c.

In the first example, *me* is the dative case, because it may be turned by *à moi*, to me; in the second, *vous* is the accusative, &c.

*Lui* and *leur* are used in the dative only, and are of both genders :

*Je lui parle*, I speak to him or to her.  
*Vous leur écrivez*, You write to them.

The three others are used for the accusative, and may be applied to things animate or inanimate, viz.

*Le*, masc. him, it; *la*, fem. her, it; and *les*, masc. and fem. them : ex.

*Je le vois tous les jours*, I see him every day.  
*Je le sais*, I know it.  
*Nous la connoissons*, We know her.  
*Il les enverra ce soir*, He will send them to-night.

The pronoun personal may be placed before or after the verb, agreeably to the English construction ; but the conjunctive pronouns are to be placed (in French) before the verbs by which they are governed, though they come after them in English : ex.

<i>Je parle,</i>	I speak.
<i>Avons-nous parlé,</i>	Have we spoken?
<i>Il me parle,</i>	He speaks to me.
<i>Nous les connoissons,</i>	We know them.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Your brother bought yesterday a very good book,  
*acheta, v.*  
 and after having<sup>a</sup> read<sup>a</sup> it<sup>1</sup>, he gave<sup>a</sup> it<sup>1</sup>  
*après, p. avoir, v. lu, p. p. le, pro. donna, v.*  
 to my sister. - - - You speak of my cousin,  
*ma, pro. mon, pro.*  
 do you know him ? - - - I see her and speak  
*connoissez, v. vois, v. parle, v.*  
 to her (every day). - - - Do you<sup>a</sup> know<sup>a</sup> your  
*tous les jours. savez, v. vos, pro.*  
 lessons ? - - - We know them all. - - I will carry  
*leçon, f. savons, v. tout, adj. mènerai, v.*  
 them to my brothers, but I (will write)  
*chez, p. mes, pro. écrirai, v.*  
 to them before. - - - I find him more reason-  
*auparavant, adv. trouve, v. raison-*  
 able than his sister. - - Your dog (is  
*noble, adj. sa, pro. chien, m. a*  
 thirsty), shall<sup>a</sup> I give<sup>a</sup> him<sup>a</sup> water ? - - They are  
*soif, donnerai, v.*  
 tired, and I give them some rest.  
*fatigué, p. p. donne, v. repos, m.*

In the second person singular and the first and second persons plural of a verb in the imperative mood conjugated affirmatively, the conjunctive pronouns come after the verb : but if the verb be conjugated negatively, the pronouns follow the above rule : ex.

*Donnez-lui de l'argent,* Give him money.  
*Ne lui donnez pas de pain,* Do not give him any bread.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Send them some apples, but do not send  
*Envoyez, v.*  
 them any plums. - - I give you these books,  
*prune, f. donne, v. ces, pro.*  
 but do not lend them to your brother. - - -  
*prêtez, v. votre, pro.*  
 You may tell it to my father, but do not  
*pouvez, v. dire, v. mon, pro.*  
 tell it to my mother. - - Believe me, go  
*dites, v. ma, pro. Croyez, v. allez, v.*  
 and speak to them, but do not insult them. - -  
*parler, v. insultez, v.*  
 Have you returned (to her) the handkerchief  
*rendu, p.p. mouchoir, m.*  
 which she has lent you? - - Send it to-morrow,  
*prêté, p.p. demain, adv.*  
 do not forget it. - - Bring me some cho-  
*oubliez, v. Apportez, v. cho-*  
 colate, but bring<sup>s</sup> me<sup>s</sup> no sugar.  
*colat, m.*

When two imperatives are joined by either of the conjunctions, *et*, and; *ou*, or; the conjunctive pronoun or pronouns must precede the last imperative by which it is governed: ex.

*Allez le trouver, et lui dites* Go to him, and tell him to  
*de venir ici,* come hither.

After the verbs *se fier à*, to trust to, *penser, songer à*, to think of, *viser à*, to aim at, *courir, accourir à*, to run to, *venir à*, to come to, and some of the reflexive verbs followed by a preposition governing a dative case, the pronouns must be placed after the verb, especially if used in opposition or contradiction to each other; or denote the order in which a thing ought to be done; and if there be more than one dative pronoun, the first only may be placed before the verb, and the others after: ex.



<i>Fiez-vous à moi,</i>	Trust to me.
<i>Nous pensons à vous,</i>	We think of you.
<i>Cela s'adresse à toi,</i>	That is addressed to thee.
<i>Je cours à lui,</i>	I ran to him.
<i>Il me parle aussi bien qu'à vous et à eux.</i>	He speaks to me as well as to you and them.

## EXERCISE ON THESE AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Bring me my hat, or send<sup>3</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to me<sup>1</sup> by the carrier. - - - Trust to him, but do not  
*voiturier, m. Fiez-vous, v.*  
 Trust to them, and do not believe them. - - Think of us, and write to us as soon as you can. - - -  
*écrivez, v. tôt, adv. pourrez, v.*  
 Go and see her, and carry her these flowers. - - - Send me my clock, or bring<sup>3</sup> it<sup>2</sup>  
*Allez, v. voir, v. portez, v. ces, pro. fleurs, f. pendule, f.*  
 to me<sup>1</sup> yourself. - - - Do not give it to me, pro. *vous-même, pro. donnez, v.*  
 my sister, give it to me. Why do you prefer her to me, and give her all your affection?  
*préférez, v.*

When two or more of the conjunctive pronouns come together in the same sentence, they must be arranged in the following order.

## SINGULAR.

*Me, m. & f. me or to me,*  
*Te, m. & f. thee or to thee,*  
*Se, m. & f. one's self, him-  
 self, herself,*

are to be placed before all others;—next,

*Le, m. him, it,*

*La, f. her, it,*

Then,

*Lui, m. & f. to him, to her,*

*Il me le promet,*

*Je vous les donnerai,*

## PLURAL.

*Nous, m. & f. us or to us.*

*Vous, m. & f. you or to you.*

*Se, m. & f. themselves,*

*Les, m. & f. them.*

*Leur, m. & f. to them.*

*He promised it to me.*

*I will give them to you.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brother (will send) them to you, or  
*enverra, v.*  
 (will bring) them to you himself. - - - He like  
*apportera, v.* *aim*  
 your<sup>2</sup> house<sup>3</sup> (very much<sup>1</sup>) for. we showed  
*votre, pro.* *fort, adv.* *car, c.* *fimes voir,*  
 it to him. - - - Carry it to them. - - - He will<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>not  
*Portez, v.* *veut, v. ne*  
 sell<sup>6</sup> it<sup>4</sup> to them, but he will give  
*vendre, v.* *veut donner, v.*  
 you. - - - If they ask a favour, will  
*Si, c.* *demandent, v.* *grâce, f.* *en*  
 refuse it to them? - - - Why do  
*refuserez, v.* *Pourquoi, adv.*  
 give it to him? Had you not promised  
*donnez, v.* *Avez, v.* *promis, p.p.*  
 it to her? - - - He speaks to me, and not to you.  
*parle, v.*  
 If they behave themselves well, I  
*comportent, v.*  
 reward them. - - He had promised it  
*récompenserai, v.* *avoit, v.*  
 him, but he gave it to me.  
*a donné, v.*

N. B. There are three other conjunctive pronouns commonly called particles relative, or supplying pronouns; they are *en*, *y*, and *le*.

*En* always denotes a genitive or ablative, and relative to some object mentioned before: it is rendered in English by *of* or *from* *him, her, it, them*; *about* *him, her, it, &c.*; *with* or *without* *him, her, it, &c.*; *at* *it, &c.*; *for* *it, &c.*; *upon* *it, &c.*; *any, one, ones, none, some, some* *&c.*; *thence, thereof*, and sometimes it is elegantly understood in English, especially when immediately followed by a numeral adjective or a noun of quantity, though it must be absolutely expressed in French: e

*Nous en parlons,*

We speak of him, of her,  
of it, of them; about  
him, about her, about it,  
about them.

*J'en suis fâché,*

I am sorry for it.

*Donnez-lui en,*

Give him some.

*Lui en avez-vous porté?*

Did you carry him or her  
any?

*Né lui en envoyez pas,*

Send him or her none.

*Nous en venons,*

We come from it or thence.

*Combien avez-vous de do-  
mestiques? Nous en avons  
six,*

How many servants have  
you? We have six.

*Avez-vous un jardin à la  
campagne? Oui, nous en  
avons un très-joli,*

Have you a garden in the  
country? Yes, we have  
a very pretty one.

In the third, fourth, and fifth sentences it should be observed, that the pronouns *of it*, or *of them*, are elegantly understood in English, according to the object or objects mentioned before.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I have heard that your uncle is arrived,  
ouï dire, v. arrivé, p.p.  
and I am<sup>3</sup> very<sup>4</sup> glad<sup>5</sup> of it<sup>2</sup>. - - She spoke<sup>3</sup> to  
him<sup>1</sup> of it<sup>2</sup>. - - - - - Talk<sup>3</sup> aise, adj. parla, v.  
will<sup>3</sup> not<sup>2</sup> hear<sup>5</sup> ne<sup>1</sup> more<sup>4</sup> of it<sup>2</sup>, for I<sup>1</sup>  
veux, v. ne entendre parler, v. ne plus, car, c.  
I<sup>1</sup> thank<sup>4</sup> you<sup>2</sup> for it<sup>2</sup>. - - Do you<sup>4</sup> 'not<sup>5</sup> see<sup>3</sup>  
remercie, v. voyez, v.  
the<sup>5</sup> beauty<sup>7</sup> of it<sup>2</sup>? - - They are sorry for  
sont, v. fâché, adj.  
it. - - Since you have no pears in your garden,  
Puisque, c. poire, f.  
I (will send) you some. - - They<sup>1</sup> have<sup>4</sup> stolen<sup>5</sup>  
enverrai, v. ont, v. volé, p.p.

from us<sup>2</sup> the<sup>2</sup> great<sup>2</sup> part<sup>2</sup> of them<sup>2</sup>. - My  
*partie, f. Mon,*  
 brother has written a letter to your sister,  
*écrit, p. p.*  
 shown<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> the<sup>1</sup> two<sup>1</sup> first<sup>1</sup> lines<sup>1</sup> of it<sup>2</sup>.  
*a montré, v. ligne, f.*  
 Will you lend me some books? With  
*Voulez, v. prêter, v. De, p*  
 my heart, I will lend you some very pl  
*cœur, m. prêterai, v.*  
 ones. - - Do you<sup>2</sup> think<sup>1</sup> that<sup>2</sup> she<sup>4</sup> has<sup>7</sup> spoke  
*croyez, v. ait, v. parlé,*  
 to him<sup>5</sup> of it<sup>6</sup>? - - If I had money, I would  
*avois, v. donnerai*  
 you some, but you know, as well as I  
*mais, c. savez, v.*  
 how scarce<sup>2</sup> it is<sup>1</sup> now. - - - Send<sup>4</sup>  
*combien, adv. rare, adj. à présent, adv. Envoyez*  
 me<sup>2</sup> none<sup>3</sup>. - - - Have<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> any<sup>1</sup>? - - - Do<sup>1</sup> y  
*ne en pas Avez, v.*  
 remember<sup>3</sup> it<sup>2</sup>?  
*souvenez, v. en.*

Y is used for the dative only: it is Englished by *to them, of it, in it, upon it, thither, there, &c.* and very oft not expressed in English, though it must be in French. It seldom supplies the place of animate objects, except when connected with the verbs *fier*, to trust; *penser*, think; and the like in a reply: ex.

<i>J'y consens,</i>	I agree to it.
<i>Nous y penserons,</i>	We shall think of it.
<i>Ne vous y fiez plus,</i>	Trust them no more.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I<sup>1</sup> never<sup>5</sup> will<sup>4</sup> consent to<sup>3</sup> it, and  
*ne jamais, adv. consentirai, v.*  
 I<sup>1</sup> neither<sup>4</sup> will<sup>3</sup> speak<sup>6</sup> nor<sup>7</sup> write<sup>9</sup> to  
*ne ni veux, v. parler, v. ni, c. écrire, v.*  
 him<sup>8</sup>. - - Believe me, go and see them, d  
*Croyez, v. allez, v.*

not<sup>2</sup> confide<sup>2</sup> in<sup>3</sup> it. -- We<sup>1</sup> have<sup>4</sup> forced<sup>4</sup>  
*fiez vous, v. avons, v. forcé, p.p.*  
 them<sup>2</sup> to it<sup>2</sup>. -- I (will carry<sup>2</sup>) my<sup>3</sup> brother<sup>4</sup> thither<sup>2</sup>  
*mènerai, v.*  
 myself<sup>5</sup>. -- He<sup>1</sup> (will carry<sup>2</sup>) them<sup>3</sup> to you<sup>2</sup> thither<sup>4</sup> him<sup>1</sup>  
*portera, v. y*  
 self. -- Did you think of what you had  
*Avez, v. pensé, p.p. à ce que, pro. aviez, v.*  
 promised me? -- No, but I<sup>2</sup> will think<sup>4</sup>  
*promis, p.p. Non, adv. penserai, v.*  
 (of it<sup>2</sup>). -- (It is) a good book, we<sup>1</sup> read<sup>3</sup> excellent<sup>4</sup>  
*y C'est, v. on, pro. lit, v.*  
 things<sup>4</sup> in it<sup>2</sup>. -- Our orchards are very fruit-  
*chose, f. Nos, pro. verger, m. fer-*  
 ful, we see all sorts of fruits in  
*tile, adj. on, pro. voit, v. sorte, f. fruit, m.*  
 them. -- Since those people have deceived  
*Puisque, c. ces, pro. gens, pl. trompé, p.p.*  
 you, do not trust them (any more). -- When a  
*∞, v. fiez, v. plus, adv.*  
 friend is dead we<sup>2</sup> often<sup>1</sup> think<sup>5</sup> of  
*mort, adj. on, pro. souvent, adv. pense, v.*  
 him<sup>4</sup> no longer<sup>2</sup>.  
*plus, adv.*

*Le* which in English is either not expressed, or most commonly rendered by *so*, likewise prevents the repetition of one or more words, and supplies the place of the same. It is indeclinable when it relates to, and holds the place of, one adjective or more, a verb, or a whole member of a sentence: ex.

*Vous m'avez cru belle, mais je ne le suis pas,* You have thought me handsome, but I am not.  
*Nous étions embarrassés, et nous le sommes encore,* We were embarrassed, and are so yet.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

My brothers were ill yesterday  
*Mes, pro. malade, adj. hier, adv.*

and are so still to-day. - - -  
*encore, adv. aujourd'hui, ad*  
 satisfied with my fate, but my sister is  
*content, adj. de sert, m. ma, pro.*  
 I had heard that your sister was marr  
*avois, v. ouï dire, v. que étoit, v. marié*  
 but my cousin tells me that she is not.  
*mon, pro. dit, v.*  
 Our master rewards us when we deserv  
*Notre, pro. récompense, v. mérito*  
 it. - - - Children ought to apply to their  
*doivent, v. s'appliquer, v. leurs.*  
 studies as much as they can. - - - I thoug  
*autant, adv. peuvent, v. croyoi*  
 your brother was diligent, but I mistook,  
*étoit, v. me suis trompé.*  
 for he is not, and 'never' will be<sup>2</sup> so<sup>2</sup>.  
*jamais, adv. sera, v.*

On the contrary, *le* is declinable when it relate  
 and holds the place of, one substantive or more ;  
*le* is used for the masculine, *la* for the feminine,  
*les* for the plural : ex.

*Etes-vous le fils de mon* Are you my friend Mr.  
*ami M. D\*\* ? Oui, je* son ? Yes, I am.  
*le suis,*  
*Etes-vous la mère de ce* Are you the mother  
*bel enfant ? Oui, je la* that fine child ?  
*suis,* I am.  
*Etes-vous les tantes de* Are you Mr. Brov  
*M. Brown ? Oui, nous* aunts ? Yes, we are.  
*les sommes,*  
*Est-ce là votre livre ? Oui,* Is this your book ?  
*ce l'est.* it is.

# EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

(It is said) that you are the son of my neighb  
*On dit, v. voisin, r*

Mr. Peter, are you so ? Yes, Sir,  
*Pierre, m. Monsieur, m.*

am. - - Are you the sister of Mrs. Adams? Yes,  
*Madame, f.*  
 I am. - She is very amiable, 'and so' are 'you' also. - -  
*aimable, adj. aussi,*  
 Are you the ladies whom my mother expects?  
*dame, f. que attend, v.*  
 Yes, we are. - - 'Are 'these 'young 'people the  
*(Sont-ils) ces, pro. jeune, adj. gens, pl.*  
 scholars whom you have taught? Yes, madam,  
*écolier, m. enseigné, p.p.*  
 they are. - - (Is that) the horse which you bought  
*Est-ce là cheval, m. que*  
 from my brother? Yes, it is. - - - (Are these) the  
*à Sont-ce là*  
 houses which you built? Yes, they are.  
*avez fait bâtir, v. sont.*

N. B. It must be observed, that the following pronouns, *me, te, se, le, la, and les*, can never be used after a preposition; as we cannot say, *j'étois avec le, avec la*, I was with him, with her; but we must use the personal pronouns, *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle, and eux, or elles*, and say, *j'étois avec lui, avec elles, &c.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The nosegay which I gathered in our  
*bouquet, m. que, ai cueilli, p.p.*  
 garden is for her, and not for him. - - He  
*pour, p. non pas, adv.*  
 was with me when we received a letter from  
*étoit, v. reçûmes, v.*  
 them. - - If he do not come soon we (will set  
*viens, v. vient, v. bientôt, adv. parti-*  
 out) without him. - - - Your sisters have dis-  
*rons, v. sans, p. Vos, pro. mécon-*  
 pleased me, I am very angry with them.  
*tenté, p.p. fâché, adj. contre, p.*  
 - - Your brothers have broken these windows, I  
*cassé, p.p. ces, pro.*

— am sure of it, for I was behind them  
*sûr, adj. car, c. derrière, p.*  
 John was with me.  
*Jean, m.*

Y and *en* always go last in a sentence, except pronoun of the first person *moi*, which, in the imperative mood of a verb conjugated affirmatively, is placed after *y* and *en* : ex.

*Il vous y en enverra,* He will send some to thither.

*Apportez-y en moi,* Bring me some hither.

N. B. The above pronouns, when governed by or more verbs, must be repeated, in French, before every governing verb; though most generally expressed but once in English, and after the last verb : ex.

*Votre fils vous aime et vous* Your son loves and fears  
*craint,* you.  
*Je le plains et l'encourage,* I pity and encourage him

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You have very fine roses in your garden : will you have, v.

I am in the country, pray send me some hither  
*serai, v. à de grâce, envoyez, v.*

- - May God bless and reward her ! say  
*Que Dieu, bénisse, v. récompense, v. dit*

the prince. - - I neither will sell nor give  
*ne ni, veux, v. vendre, donner,*

'them' to 'you'. - - Our master rewards and punishes  
*punit,*

us when we deserve it. - - - Often beauty seduces  
*séduit,*

and deceives us. - - - A well-bred child, will  
*trompe, v. né, p.p.*

knows the extent of his duties towards his  
*connoît, v. étendue, f. devoir, m. envers, p.*

— parents, far from offending and vexing  
*éloigné, m. et f. loin de, offenser, v. molester, v.*



them, cherishes, loves, honors, respects, and  
*chérît, v. honore, v. respecte, v.*  
 venerates them.  
*vénère, v.*

## OF PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

These pronouns are called *possessive*, because they always denote property or possession.

There are two sorts of possessive pronouns, viz. absolute and relative.

The *absolute* are so called, because they must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it (and not with the possessor as in English) in *gender, number, and case*:—They are,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Masc.	Fem.	Both Genders.
<i>Mon,*</i>	<i>Ma,</i>	<i>Mes, my.</i>
<i>Ton,*</i>	<i>Ta,</i>	<i>Tes, thy.</i>
<i>Son,*</i>	<i>Sa,</i>	<i>Ses, his, her, or its.</i>
Both Genders.		
	<i>Notre,</i>	<i>Nos, our.</i>
	<i>Votre,</i>	<i>Vos, your.</i>
	<i>Leur,</i>	<i>Leurs, their.</i>

They are declined with the article indefinite *de, à*: ex.

### SINGULAR.

#### Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mon père*, my father.

Gen. Abl. *de mon père*, of my father, or from, &c.

Dat. *à mon père*, to my father.

#### Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *ma mère*, my mother.

Gen. Abl. *de ma mère*, of or from my mother.

Dat. *à ma mère*, to my mother.

\* *Mon, ton, son*, must be used before a noun feminine beginning with a vowel, to prevent the hiatus: ex.

*Mon âme,*

*Ton indifférence,*

*Son opinion,*

*My soul.*

*Thy indifférence.*

*His, or her opinion.*

## PLURAL.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mes frères*, my brothers.

Gen. Abl. *de mes frères*, of or from my brothers.

Dat. *à mes frères*, to my brothers.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *mes sœurs*, my sisters.

Gen. Abl. *de mes sœurs*, of or from my sisters.

Dat. *à mes sœurs*, to my sisters.

The others are declined as the preceding.

These pronouns ought to be repeated before a substantive in a sentence, though but once expressed in English; they must also be used in French, when speaking to any of our relations or friends, though suppressed in English: ex.

*J'ai perdu mon chapeau* I lost my hat and glove  
*et mes gants,*

*Bon jour, mon père,* Good day, father.

*Etes-vous là, ma sœur ?* Are you there, sister ?

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Give me my dictionary and grammar. - -  
*dictionnaire, m. grammaire, f.*

had lost her gloves and fan. - - - - - *Had*  
*avoit, v. perdu, p.p. éventail, m. Ave*

you found your pen? - - - - - *His daughter*  
*trouvé, p.p. plume, f. fille, f.*

older than my son, but her son (is not  
*vieux, adj. fils, m. n'est pas*

so tall as my nephew. - - - *Her brother is*  
*grand, adj. neveu, m. dit*

that he will not refuse you what you ask  
*refusera, v. ce que demande*

of him. - - *Dear father, pray, forgive me. - -*  
*de grâce,*

ambition is the only cause of my imp  
*ambition, f. seul, adj. cause, f. imp*

dence. - - I have seen your father, mother, b  
*dence, f. ai, v. vu, p.p.*

thers, and sisters. - - - Her affection for me is  
*affection, f. pour, p.*  
 false. - - - Good night, cousin, I hope that you  
*faux, adj. soir, m. espère, v.*  
 will come soon to see my country-  
*viendrez, v. bientôt, adv. voir, v.*  
 house and gardens. - - - Your horses and carriage  
*cheval, m. carrosse, m.*  
 are very beautiful, but the queen's horses and carriages  
*beau, adj.*  
 are much more so.  
*beaucoup, adv.*

When these pronouns are used in a sentence, speak-  
 ing of any part of the body, they are not to be express-  
 ed in French, but the preposition *in* and the pronoun  
 are rendered by the article definite; the personal pro-  
 noun being sufficient to determine the possession: ex.

*J'ai mal aux yeux,* I have a pain in my eyes.  
 and not *dans mes yeux,*  
*Il se cassa le bras,* He broke his arm.  
 and not *son bras,*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My mother has (a pain) in her head. - - - I have  
*a, v. mal, m. à, p. tête, f.*  
 a pain in my ear, and she has a pain in her  
*oreille, f.*  
 teeth. - - - When I eat meat, I have always  
*dent, f. mange, v. toujours, adv.*  
 a pain in my stomach. - - The man who fell from  
*estomac, m. tomba, v.*  
 the roof of our house, disjoined his wrist,  
*toit, m. se démit, v. poignet, m.*  
 broke his right leg, sprained  
*droit, adj. jambe, f. se donna une entorse au*  
 his left foot, dislocated his shoulders,  
*gauche, adj. pied, m. se disloqua, v. épaule, f.*  
 and hurt his head. - - - When I run fast,  
*se blessa, v. cours, v. vite, adv.*

I (am afraid) of falling and breaking  
*crains, v. de tomber, v. de me casser, v*  
 arm or neck.

*Its, their*, having a reference to inanimate or  
 tional objects, and placed in another member of  
 sentence from that wherein the object referred to  
 self expressed, are not made into French by *son, sa*  
 &c. but by *en* and the articles *le, la, les* : ex.

*Paris est une grande ville, Paris is a large city,*  
*mais les rues en sont trop its streets are too*  
*étroites, row.*

### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Windsor is a fine town, I admire  
*ville, f. admire, v.*  
 situation, walks, and streets. - - This  
*situation, f. promenade, f. rue, f. Cette, f.*  
 house is well situate, but its architectu  
*situé, adj. architectur*  
 does not please me much. - - - His coach  
*plait, v. beaucoup, adv. carrosse, m.*  
 beautiful, (every body) admires its paintin  
*tout le monde, m. admire, v. peintur*  
 and ornaments. - - - The shops of London  
 (very fine,) foreigners especially see the  
*superbe, adj. étranger, m. sur-tout, adv.*  
 riches and cleanliness with pleasure and astoni  
 ment. - - - The walks of your (country-seat) are w  
*allée, f. château, m.*  
 kept, I like their regularity.  
*tenu, p.p. régularité, f.*

The *relatives* are never joined to any substantive; f  
 the substantive to which they refer is always implied  
 the pronoun. They are,

#### Masculine.

#### Feminine.

##### SING.

##### PLUR.

##### SING.

##### PLUR.

— Le mien,	les miens,	la mienne,	les miennes, mine.
tien,	les tiens,	la tienne,	les tiennes, thine.
sien,	les siens,	la sienne,	les siennes, his or her

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

SING.	PLURAL.	SING.	PLURAL.
<i>Le nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres, ours.</i>
<i>Le vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres, yours.</i>
<i>Le leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs, theirs.</i>

They are declined with the article definite; ex.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne, mine.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>Du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne, of or from mine.</i>
Dat.	<i>Au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne, to mine.</i>

## PLURAL.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes, mine.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>Des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes, of or from mine.</i>
Dat.	<i>Aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes, to mine.</i>

The rest are declined as the preceding.

When any one of these relative pronouns is used after the verb *être*, to be, signifying to belong to, it must be expressed in French by one of the pronouns personal in the dative; and when joined to a noun substantive, it ought to be rendered by a pronoun possessive absolute, and the substantive must be put in the genitive plural: ex.

<i>Ce livre est à moi,</i>	<i>This book is mine.</i>
<i>C'est un de mes amis,</i>	<i>He is a friend of mine.</i>

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Your daughter is handsomer than mine, but  
*beau, adj.*  
 mine has more wit than yours. --- Her house is  
*esprit, m.*  
 more convenient than ours, but yours is not so  
*commode, adj.*  
 well situate as theirs. --- This hat is mine and  
*Ce, pro.*

not yours, but this sword is yours and  
*non pas* *cette*, pro.  
 not his. - - - I lost a book of mine, and a friend  
*ai perdu*, v.  
 of yours found it. - - - He sold me a knife,  
*a trouvé*, v. *couteau*, m.  
 but this knife was not his, it was a friend of his  
*étoit*, v.  
 who had lent it to him.  
*prêté*, v.

## OF PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

These pronouns are called *demonstrative*, because they distinguish, in a precise manner, the persons or things to which they are applied. They are,

### SINGULAR.

Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>Ce, cet</i> ,*	<i>cette</i> , this, that.
<i>Celui</i> , he, that,	<i>celle</i> , she, that.
<i>Celui-ci</i> ,	<i>celle-ci</i> , this.
<i>Celui-là</i> ,	<i>celle-là</i> , that.

### PLURAL.

Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>Ces</i> ,	<i>ces</i> , these, those.
<i>Ceux</i> ,	<i>celles</i> , they, these, those.
<i>Ceux-ci</i> ,	<i>celles-ci</i> , these.
<i>Ceux-là</i> ,	<i>celles-là</i> , those.
<i>Ce qui, ce que</i> , what.	
<i>Ceci</i> , this; <i>cela</i> , that.†	

The last two are always of the masculine gender, and of the singular number.

\* *Cet* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel, or H mute: ex. *cet oiseau*, this bird; *cet honneur*, this honour.

† The word *that*, whether expressed or understood, coming between two verbs, and followed by a noun or pronoun, is then a conjunction, and must be rendered into French by *que*, which must be placed immediately after the first verb: ex.

*e sais que votre frère est marié*, I know that your brother is married.

These pronouns are declined with the article indefinite, *de, à*: ex.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *ce livre*, this or that book.

Gen. Abl. *de ce livre*, of or from this book.

Dat. *à ce livre*, to this book.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces livres*, these books.

Gen. Abl. *de ces livres*, of or from these books.

Dat. *à ces livres*, to these books.

## SINGULAR.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *cette plume*, this or that pen.

Gen. Abl. *de cette plume*, of or from this pen.

Dat. *à cette plume*, to this pen.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces plumes*, these pens.

Gen. Abl. *de ces plumes*, of or from these pens.

Dat. *à ces plumes*, to these pens.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *celui*, he, him, that.

Gen. Abl. *de celui*, of or from him.

Dat. *à celui*, to him.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *celle*, she, her, that.

Gen. Abl. *de celle*, of or from her.

Dat. *à celle*, to her.

## PLURAL.

## Masc.

## Fem.

N. Acc. *ceux*, *celles*, they, them, those, such as.

G. Abl. *de ceux*, *de celles*, of or from those.

Dat. *à ceux*, *à celles*, to those.

The others are declined as the preceding.

N. B. *He, she, they, him, her, them*, being immediately followed in a sentence by *who, whom, or that*, used in an indeterminate sense, not relating to any individual mentioned before, and only implying *any person, one or any body*, must not be rendered in French by the personal pronouns, *il, elle, &c.* but by the above pronouns, *celui, celle, &c.*

The same rule must be observed with respect to *such as, such that*, used in English in the same sense as *he who, they who* : ex.

<i>Celui ou celle qui pratique la</i>	He or she who practices
<i>vertu vit heureux,</i>	virtue lives happy.
<i>Ceux qui méprisent la sci-</i>	Such as despise learning
<i>ence n'en connoissent pas</i>	do not know its value.
<i>le prix,</i>	

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He who supports	idleness	makes himself
<i>encourage, v.</i>		<i>se rend, v.</i>
despicable. - - - She whom	you saw	at my
<i>méprisable, adj.</i>	<i>que, pro.</i>	<i>vites, v. chez, p.</i>
brother's is not yet	married. - - - - -	You
<i>encore, adv.</i>	<i>marié, adj.</i>	
punish	him who is not guilty. - - -	Men com-
<i>punissez, v.</i>		<i>coupable, adj. ordi-</i>
monly <sup>2</sup>	hate <sup>1</sup> him whom they fear. - - - -	
<i>nairement, adv.</i>	<i>haïssent, v. que, pro. craignent, v.</i>	
She whom you hate	is my best friend. - - -	You
<i>haïssez, v.</i>		<i>amie, f.</i>
have punished	him who did not deserve	it,
<i>puni, p. p.</i>		<i>méritoit, v.</i>
and rewarded	her who was guilty. - -	We
<i>récompensé p. p.</i>		
ought to pray for them who	persecute	
<i>devons, v.</i>	<i>qui, pro. persécutent, v.</i>	
us. - - - Of all virtues, that which	most <sup>2</sup>	dis-
	<i>qui, pro. le plus, adv.</i>	<i>dis-</i>
tinguishes <sup>1</sup> a Christian is	charity. - -	This book and
<i>tingue, v.</i>		



that which I lent                      you are the two best. - - -  
                          *que, pro. ai prêté, v.*  
 Such as                      seem                      to be happy, are not  
                          *qui, pro. paroissent, v. être, v.*  
 always                      so.  
*toujours, adv.*

*Ce, celle, ces*, this, that, these, those, most always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it in gender, number, and case. On the contrary, *celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là*, this, that, &c. either in the singular or plural, are never joined to any noun; for the noun to which they refer is always implied in the pronoun: *ex.*

*J'ai vu le portrait du père* I have seen the father's  
                          *et celui du fils,*                      picture, and that of the  
                             son.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

She who dines                      with us, is my brother's wife. - -  
                          *dîne, v. avec, p. femme, f.*  
 She brought                      her picture,                      and that of her  
                          *a apporté, v. portrait, m.*  
 husband. - - - I have seen the king's palace,                      and  
                          *mari, m. palais, m.*  
 that of the queen. - - - That gold watch,                      which  
                             *montre, f. que, pro.*  
 you showed                      me, is not yours, it is                      that of  
                          *avez montré, v. c'est, v.*  
 your brother. - - I have lost                      my buckles and  
                             *perdu, p. p.*  
 those of your cousin. - - - Your books and those of  
                          *cousin, m.*  
 your little                      sister are torn. - - - I know this  
                          *petit, adj. déchiré, p. p. connois, v.*  
 cap,                      it is                      that of your mother.  
*bonnet, m. c'est, v.*

N. B. The pronoun *that*, either in the singular or plural, is often suppressed in English, and supplied by

an apostrophe and an *s*, thus (*'s*), at the end of the noun substantive as above, but it must be expressed in French by the above pronouns *celui*, *celle*, and according to the gender and number of the object to which it refers: ex.

*Il a pris mon chapeau et celui de mon père,*      He has taken my hat and my father's, *that is*, and *that* of my father.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You have torn                      my gown,    and my sister's. - -  
    *déchiré*, p. p.    *robe*, f.  
 I have found                      my hat and my brother's in the  
    *trouvé*, p. p.  
 room. - - - - The thieves                      came                      by night  
*chambre*, f.                      *voleur*, m.    *entrèrent*, v.    *de nuit*, adv.  
 into my father's house, they broke open my room  
    *forcèrent*, v.    *en*  
 and my mother's, and stole                      my watch and  
    *volèrent*, v.  
 my sister's. - - You may,                      if you please,    take  
    *pouvez*, v.                      *voulez*, v.    *prendre*, v.  
 your grammar and your brother's, but leave  
    *laissez*, v.  
 mine and my friend's. - - - - Our oranges and Mr.  
    *orange*, f.  
 Savage's are the best that you can  
*Savage*,    on, pro.    *puisse*, v.  
 find.  
*trouver*, v.

Sometimes the particles *ci*, *là*, here, there, are also joined to the substantive following the pronouns, *ce*, *cette*, *ces*, to distinguish with more precision the objects to which they are applied: ex.

*Ce chapeau-ci*, this hat; *cette ville-là*, that town, &c.

N. B. The two following expressions, *the former*, *celui-là*, m. *celle-là*, f. *ceux-là*, m. *celles-là*, f.; *the latter*, *celui-ci*, m. *celle-ci*, f. *ceux-ci*, m. *celles-ci*, f. referring to substantives mentioned in a preceding sentence, are

elegantly used in French, and agree with the nouns, instead of *le premier*, *le second*, the repetition of which they avoid : ex.

*Un François et un Ecos- A Frenchman and a Scotch-*  
*sois se battirent hier à man fought yesterday with*  
*l'épée, celui-là, fut blessé swords, the former was*  
*à l'épaule, et celui-ci au wounded in the shoulder*  
*bras, and the latter in the arm.*

# EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Learn this lesson, it is not so difficult  
*Apprenez, v. difficile, adj.*  
 as that. - - I prefer this way to that road. - -  
*chemin, m. route, f.*  
 This room is much larger than that parlour. - -  
*grand, adj. salon, m.*  
 These candles are better than those. - -  
*chandelle, f.*  
 (There was) a great battle between George  
*Il y eut, v. combat, m. entre, p.*  
 and Stephen; the former had a broken nose,  
*Etienne, m. eut, v. le cassé, p. p. nez, m.*  
 and the latter lost a tooth. - - In the engagements  
*perdit, v. bataille, f.*  
 which took place between the Austrians  
*qui, pro. eurent, v. lieu, m. Autrichien, m.*  
 and the French, the former lost two  
*François, m. perdirent, v.*  
 thousand men, and the latter fifteen hundred. - -  
*homme, m.*  
 Among the peaches which you sent me at two  
*Parmi, p. pêche, f. que, pro. à*  
 different times, I observed that the former  
*différent, adj. fois, f. ai remarqué, v.*  
 were better than the latter.  
*étoient, v.*

*Ce qui*, in the nominative case, *ce que*, in the accusative, what. This pronoun is never joined to any noun; it always may be turned into *that which*, or the thing —

*which*; and *ceci, cela*, this, that, are only used when speaking of things, the word *thing* being always understood: ex.

<i>Je sais ce qui est arrivé,</i>	I know what has happened.
<i>Savez-vous ce que je pense?</i>	Do you know what I think?
<i>Ceci me plaît,</i>	This pleases me; i. e. this thing, &c.
<i>Cela me fait peur,</i>	That frightens me; i. e. that thing, &c.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

May	I know	what causes your grief
<i>Puis, v.</i>	<i>savoir, v.</i>	<i>cause, v. chagrin, m.</i>
and sadness? - - -	Your father has (a good deal)	
<i>tristesse, f.</i>	<i>beaucoup, adv.</i>	
of friendship for you; for,	he	'never'
	<i>car, c.</i>	<i>ne jamais, adv.</i>
refuses <sup>s</sup> you <sup>s</sup> what you ask		of him. - - -
<i>refuse, v.</i>	<i>demandez, v.</i>	<i>lui</i>
You seem	much	dejected,
<i>paraissez, v.</i>	<i>bien, adv.</i>	<i>abattu, adj.</i>
vexes you. - - -	Go	and tell
<i>fâche, v.</i>	<i>Allez, v.</i>	<i>dire à, v.</i>
has passed here and do not forget	what you	
<i>s'est passé, v.</i>	<i>ici, adv.</i>	<i>oubliez, v.</i>
have seen, and what you have heard. - - -	Give	
	<i>entendu, p.p.</i>	
me this, and take	that. - - -	I prefer
<i>prenez, v.</i>		<i>préfère, v.</i>
that.		this to

#### OF PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

These pronouns are called *relative*, because they have always a reference to some other noun or pronoun in the discourse, either expressed or implied. They are declined as follows:

## SINGULAR and PLURAL.

## Both Genders.

Nom.	<i>qui,</i>	who, which, that.
Gen.	<i>de qui, or dont,</i>	of whom, whose,* of which.
Dat.	<i>à qui,</i>	to whom, to which.
Acc.	<i>que, qui,†</i>	whom, which, that.
Abl.	<i>de qui, dont,</i>	from whom, from which.
Acc.	<i>quoi, que,</i>	what.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de quoi, or dont,</i>	of or from what.
Dat.	<i>à quoi,</i>	to what.

## SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
Nom. Acc.	<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle,</i> which.
Gen. Abl.	<i>duquel, or dont,</i>	<i>de laquelle,</i> of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle,</i> to which.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelles,</i> which.
Gen. Abl.	<i>desquels, or dont,</i>	<i>desquelles,</i> of or from, &c.
Dat.	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles,</i> to which.

The noun, or pronoun, to which the pronoun relative has a reference, is called the *antecedent*, with which it must agree in gender and number : ex.

*Je connois un homme qui doit aller voir le camp,* I know a man who is to go and see the camp.

In this sentence *qui* has a reference to *homme*, man, because I can say, *lequel homme*, which man, &c.

*J'ai lu la lettre que vous m'avez envoyée,* I have read the letter(that) you sent me.

In this last sentence *que* has a reference to *lettre*, letter, because it may be said, *laquelle lettre*, which letter, &c.

\* *Whose*, being used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by *à qui* : ex.

*A qui est ce livre ?*

Whose book is this ?

† *Qui*, whom, is never used in the accusative but when it is governed by some of the prepositions : ex.

*Avec qui,* With whom.  
or when it signifies *what person* : ex.

*Pour qui,* For whom.

*Amenez qui vous voudrez,*  
that is, *what person* you please.

Bring whom you please.

*La dame que vous connoissez*      The lady you know is ar-  
*est arrivée,*                                  rived.

**EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.**

The man who sold me these pens is very  
a *vendu*, v.

cunning. - - - The lady of whom you speak  
rust, adj.                      dame, f.                      parlez, v.

is not handsome. - - Miss D\*\*\*, whom you love  
aimez, v.

so much,            is very ill. - - - The person            to  
tant, adv.            malade, adj.    personne, f.

whom I wrote last year has answered  
*ai écrit, v. passé, p.p. année, f. répondu, p.p.*

me this morning. - - He who was with you, related  
*matin, m.* *étoit, v.* *a raconté, v.*

to me (every thing) that had passed. . . .  
tout ce qui s'étoit, v. passé, p.p.

She will not hear of the lady whom  
*veut, v. entendre parler, v.*

he (is going) to marry. - - - Shun vice, and  
 va, v. épouser, v. Evitez, v. vice, m.

love      what is good. . . . Who      was with  
aimez, v.      bon, adj.      étoit, v. avec, p.

you? - - - It was a gentleman, whose<sup>1</sup> name<sup>6</sup> I<sup>3</sup>  
Ce monsieur, m. nom, m.

know<sup>4</sup>    'not<sup>5</sup>. - - Men generally<sup>2</sup>    love<sup>1</sup>    him  
sais, v.                                      généralement, adv.

who flatters them. - The man I sent you was  
*flatte, v.* - *ai envoyé, v.*

honest. - - Whose<sup>1</sup> sword<sup>4</sup> is<sup>2</sup> this<sup>3</sup>? - - You speak  
*parlez, v.*

of the lady whose husband has been so ill.  
*mari, m.      été, p.p.*

These pronouns, like the personal and conjunctive, when governed by two or more verbs, must be repeated (French) before each governing verb, though most

commonly expressed but once in English, and before the first verb : ex.

*Le Dieu que nous aimons* The God whom we love  
*et que nous adorons,* and worship.

# EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The man who caresses and flatters you is the  
*caresse, v.*

most dangerous being I know. - - - A man  
*plus, adv. être, m. connoisse, v.*

whose manners are innocent, and behaviour  
*mœurs, f.pl. innocent, adj. conduite, f.*

is blameless, is the man whom we ought to che-  
*irréprochable, adj. devons, v. ché-*

rish and honour. - - - The letters which you have  
*rir, v. respecter, v.*

written, and showed me, were tole-  
*écrites, p.p. montrées, p.p. étoient, v. passa-*

rably well. - - - The woman to whom I have  
*blement, adv. femme, f.*

lent so much money, and spoken so often,  
*prêté, p.p. parlé, p.p.*

is dead. - - - Servants are men or wo-  
*mort, adj. Domestiques, m.et f. ou, c.*

men whom we keep and reward  
*nourrissons, v. récompensons, v.*

for the services which they do us.  
*pour, p. rendent, v.*

When the words *to which, to what, at which, at what, in which, in what*, have a reference to inanimate things, and when they can be expressed by *where, whereto, whereat, or wherein*, they are to be rendered in French by the adverb of place, *où* : ex.

*Je vous montrerai la mai-* I will show you the house  
*son où il demeure,* in which he lives ; that  
 is, where he lives.

# EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The state of misery to which he was reduced  
*réduit, p.p.*

has touched me to the quick. - - The town to  
*touché, p.p. au vif, m. ville, f.*  
 which he is gone is precisely the same  
*allé, p.p. précisément, adv. même, adj.*  
 place through which we went in (coming up)  
*place, f. par, p. où passames, v. en, p. venant, p. act.*  
 to London. - - (This is) the door through which  
*Voici, adv.*  
 the thieves went into the house. - - The pri-  
*voleur, m. entrèrent, v.*  
 son in which they used to shut up  
*l'on, pro. avoit coutume, v. de renfermer, v.*  
 the prisoners, has been demolished.  
*prisonnier, m. détruite, p.p.*

Quoi, what, and sometimes that or which, is never used in the nominative case: in the other cases it is generally used in an indeterminate signification, and is never expressed except in speaking of inanimate things, and especially when it has for its antecedent, *ce* or *rien*: ex.

*C'est à quoi je vous conseille de penser,* It is what I advise you to think of.  
*Il n'y a rien à quoi il ne soit disposé,* There is nothing for which he is not disposed.

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Of<sup>s</sup> what<sup>t</sup> does your<sup>t</sup> sister<sup>s</sup> complain<sup>s</sup>? - - - What!  
*se plaint-elle, v.*  
 you dare answer me thus! - - For what do  
*osez, v. répondre, v. ainsi, adv. Pour, p.*  
 you call me? - - Why did you  
*appelez, v. Pourquoi, adv. avez, v.*  
 bring that man before me? what is he  
*amené, p.p. devant, p.*  
 guilty of? - - What is your brother sorry  
*coupable, adj. fâché, adj.*  
 for? - - At what were<sup>t</sup> you<sup>s</sup> playing<sup>t</sup>, when I came  
*de à jouiez, v. suis*



in ? - To what shall we apply ourselves ? -  
*entré, v. appliquons, v. nous, pro.*  
 ('There<sup>3</sup> is<sup>4</sup>) 'nothings' for which he is<sup>2</sup> not<sup>1</sup>  
*Il y a, v. ne rien, adv. à soit, v. ne*  
 fit. - - - In what do you intend to spend  
*propre, adj. A proposez-vous, v. de passer, v.*  
 your holidays ?  
*vacance, f. pl.*

When we speak of irrational beings or inanimate things in the genitive, dative, or ablative cases, we make use of *lequel, laquelle*, which, &c. instead of *qui* ; also after a preposition, and when who, whom, or which, refer to one or more objects on which the choice is to be formed : ex.

*Le cheval auquel vous donnez à boire,* The horse to which you give some drink.  
*La fenêtre sur laquelle vous appuyez,* The window upon which you lean.  
*Apportez lequel vous voudrez,* Bring whom you please.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

The trade to which you apply,  
*commerce, m. vous vous appliquez, v.*  
 and the profession to which you are devoted,  
*profession, f. dévoué, p. p.*  
 are very honourable. - - (Is that) the horse for  
*Est-ce là, v.*  
 which you gave a hundred guineas ? - - Lying  
*Mensonge, m.*  
 is a vice for which young people ought to  
*gens, pl. doivent, v.*  
 have the greatest horror. - - - The table, upon  
*horreur, f. table, f. sur, p.*  
 which you write, is broken. - - - The reasons  
*écrivez, v. cassé, p. p.*  
 upon which you ground your system are  
*appuyez, v. système, m.*

satisfactory. - - - (There are) four drawings, which  
*satisfaisant*, adj. *Voilà*, adv. *dessein*, m.  
do you choose? - - (Here are) two pears, which  
*choisissez*, v. *Voici*, adv. *poire*, f.  
will you have? - - They are two sisters, which  
*voulez*, v. *sont*, v.  
do you like the best?  
*aimez*, v. *le mieux*, adv.

## OF PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

They are called *interrogative*, because they are used only in asking questions, and have no antecedent: they are declined with the article indefinite.

### SINGULAR and PLURAL.

#### Both Genders.

Nom. Acc. *qui*, who, whom.  
Gen. Abl. *de qui*, of or from whom.  
Dat. *à qui*, to whom, whose.  
  
Nom. Acc. *quoi*, or *que*, what ;\*  
Or, *qu'est-ce qui*, *qu'est-ce que*.  
Gen. Abl. *de quoi*, of or from what.  
Dat. *à quoi*, to what.

### SINGULAR.

#### Masculine.

#### Feminine.

N.A. <i>quel</i> , or <i>lequel</i> ,	<i>quelle</i> or <i>laquelle</i> , what, which.
G.A. <i>de quel</i> , &c.	<i>de quelle</i> , &c. of or from, &c.
Dat. <i>à quel</i> , &c.	<i>à quelle</i> , &c. to what, which.

### PLURAL.

#### Masculine.

#### Feminine.

N.A. <i>quels</i> , or <i>lesquels</i> ,	<i>quelles</i> , or <i>lesquelles</i> , what, which.
G.A. <i>de quels</i> , &c.	<i>de quelles</i> , &c. of or from, &c.
Dat. <i>à quels</i> , &c.	<i>à quelles</i> , &c. to what, which.

\* When *what*, in English, signifies *How much*, it must be expressed in French by *combien*.

**Qui**, who, whom, as an interrogative pronoun, always refers to persons, and never to things; and it may be expressed by *quelle personne?* what person? **Quoi** and *que*, what, have always a reference to things and never to persons, and may be expressed by *quelle chose?* what thing? According to the French idiom, *quoi* can never be put before a verb as its accusative, it is always *que*: ex.

*Qui est-là?*

Who is there?

*De quoi parlez-vous?*

What are you speaking of?

*Que voulez-vous? or, qu'est-ce que vous voulez?*

What do you want?

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Who was the first king of France? - - Who can  
*fut, v.* give credit to a young man who does not speak  
*ajouter, v.* *foi, f.* *dit, v.*  
the truth? - - Of whom were<sup>1</sup> you<sup>2</sup> speaking<sup>1</sup>, when  
*vérité, f.* *parliez, v.*  
I came? - - To whom did you lend my  
*vins, v.* *avez, v.* *prêté, p. p.*  
alate? - - Whom do you seek? - - - Who told  
*ardoise, f.* *cherchez, v.* *a dit, v.*  
it to you? - - From whom do you know it? - - - What<sup>1</sup>  
*savez, v.*  
are<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> doing<sup>2</sup>? - - - What do you say? - - - What  
*faites, v.* *dites, v.*  
do you ask of me? - - Who is the man  
*demandez, v.*  
who can boast of being without defect? -  
*peut, v.* *se vanter, v.* *de être, v.* *sans, p.* *défaut, m.*  
What is the name of your father? - - - What is his  
*nom, m.*  
occupation? - - What are his amusements? - - What  
*occupation, f.* *sont, v.* *plaisir, m.*  
is his business? - - In what city does he<sup>2</sup> live<sup>1</sup>? - - -  
*sont, v.* *affaires, f. pl.* *ville, f.* *demeure, v.*

What is the country in which he was born ?

*pays, m.*

*a pris naissance.*

In the last instances it may easily be seen, that *quel*, or *quelle*, what, is always joined to some substantive with which it must agree in gender and number.

In order to avoid repetition, *lequel*, *laquelle*, which are elegantly used as substantives for *quel*, or *quelle*, and the substantive to which it is joined ; and then *lequel* must always be followed by a genitive, either expressed or understood : ex.

<i>Une de mes sœurs est</i>	One of my sisters is mar-
<i> mariée,</i>	ried.
<i>Laquelle est-ce ?</i>	that is, Which is it ? <i>that is,</i>
<i>laquelle de vos sœurs</i>	which of your sisters
<i>est-ce ?</i>	is it ?

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

One of your cousins is arrived from the  
*cousin, m. arrivé, p. p.*  
continent ; which is it ? - - An aunt of yours was  
*continent, m. étoit, v.*  
ill last week ; which was  
*malade, adj. dernière, adj. semaine, f.*  
it ? - - I have heard that two horses of yours  
*ouï dire, v.*  
were lost : tell me which. - My brother  
*étoient, v. perdu, p. p. dites, v.*  
wrote to me, that two of your sisters (are going)  
*écrivit, v. vont, v.*  
to learn French ; which are they ? - -  
*apprendre, v. François, m. sont, v.*  
They (were speaking) of a relation of 'his, and  
*parloient, v. parent, m.*  
of one of my friends ; which were they ?  
*amie, f.*

## OF PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

These pronouns are called *indefinite* or *indeterminate*, because they generally are substituted for the name of a vague and indeterminate object. Among them some are used as nouns adjective, being always joined to a noun substantive; others are sometimes used as pronouns without a substantive, and sometimes as adjectives with a substantive.

*Aucun, aucune,*  
*Autre,*  
*Autrui,*  
*Chacun, chacune,*

*Chaque,*  
*L'un l'autre,*  
*Les uns—les autres,*

*L'un et l'autre,*  
*L'un ou l'autre,*  
*Ni l'un ni l'autre,*  
*Nul, nulle,*  
*Pas un, pas une,*  
*Personne,*

*La plupart de, des,*  
*Plusieurs,*  
*Quelconque,*  
*Quelque,*  
*Quelque chose,*  
*Quelque—que,*  
*Quel—que,*  
*Quelle—que,*  
*Quelque chose qui or que,*  
*Quoi que,*  
*Quoi que ce soit que,*  
*Tout ce qui, or que,*  
*Quelqu'un, quelqu'une,*

None, any, any one.  
 Other, any other.  
 Others, other people.  
 Each, every one, every body.

Every, each.  
 One another, each other.  
 Some—others.  
 Some—some.

Both.  
 Either.  
 Neither.  
 No one.  
 Not one.

Nobody, none, no one, any one, any body.

Most.

Many, several.

Whatever.

Some, any.

Something, any thing.

Whosoever, whatsoever,  
 whatever, however,  
 howsoever, though, &c.

Whatever, whatsoever.

Some, some one, somebody, any body.

*Quiconque,*  
*Qui que ce soit, or fût,*

*Quoi que ce soit, or fût,*

*Rien,*  
*Tel, telle, tels, telles,*  
*Tel qui, tels qui,*  
*Telle qui, telles qui,*  
*Tout,*  
*Tout le monde,*  
*Tout—que,*

Whoever, any body.  
Whoever, nobody in the world, nobody at all, any body whatever, no man living, let him be who he will, or be who he may, &c.

Whatever, nothing in the world, nothing whatever.

Nothing, any thing.  
Such a one, such.  
Such as he, she, they, who, that, &c.  
Every, every thing.  
Every body, any body.  
As—as, for all, although, however, &c.

#### OBSERVATIONS on some of the above PRONOUNS.

*Aucun, aucune*, is never used but in the singular, and always negatively; it relates to a person or thing mentioned before; but in some sentences, and when it expresses a doubt, it is used without a negation: ex.

*Aucun ne s'est encore avisé de vous contredire,* None has yet thought of contradicting you.  
*Y a-t-il aucun (ou aucune) de vous qui le souffrit?* Is there any of you who would suffer it?

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

None of the books which you saw me  
buying, pleases me. - - - Of all the apples  
*acheter, v.* *plait, v.* *avez vu, v.*  
which you gave me, none is yet  
*avez donné, p.p.* *encore, adv.*  
fit to eat. - - - Is there any of you who  
*bon, adj.* *à manger, v.* *Y a-t-il,*

applies to study as much as he can? - - Among  
*s'applique, v. étude, f. peut, v.*  
 all the ladies you know, is there any one who  
*dame, f. connaissez, v.*  
 would have married him? - - Philip is cer-  
*eût voulu, v. épouser, v. Philippe, m. cer-*  
 tainly a very wicked man, for none  
*tainement, adv. méchant, adj. car, c.*  
 of his friends speak well of him. - - - - Do you  
*parle, v.*  
 know any news? No, sir, I know  
*savez, v. nouvelle, f. sing. monsieur, sais, v.*  
 none. - - I was in trouble, and none of  
*étois, v. dans, p. embarras, m.*  
 my friends have relieved me.  
*a secouru, p.p.*

*Nul, pas un*, are always accompanied by a negation,  
 and can only be used as a nominative to the verb: *Per-*  
*sonne* is likewise attended with a negation, except in  
 sentences of doubt, admiration, or interrogation: ex.

<i>Nul ne peut se flatter d'être</i>	No one can flatter himself
<i>agréable à dieu,</i>	to be agreeable to God.
<i>Pas un ne le croit,</i>	Not one believes it.
<i>Personne s'est-il jamais ex-</i>	Did ever any body express
<i>primé avec plus de grâce</i>	himself with more grace
<i>que Sheridan?</i>	than Sheridan?

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

No one in this world is free from  
*en, p. monde, m. exempt, adj.*  
 fault. - - - No one can pretend to be per-  
*défaut, m. prétendre, v. être, v. par-*  
 fectly happy in this land of mi-  
*faitement, adv. dans, p. terre, f.*  
 sery. - - All the sailors perished at sea,  
*matelot, m. ont péri, v. sur, p. mer,*

not one escaped. - - - The soldiers are all re-  
*a échappé, v. soldat, m. re-*  
 turned, not one has remained behind. - - -  
*venu, p.p. est, v. resté, p.p. derrière, adv.*  
 Nobody can boast of being without im-  
*se vanter, v. être, v. sans, p.*  
 perfections. - - As nobody speaks to you,  
*Comme, adv. parle, v.*  
 you ought not to speak to any body. - - Did  
*devez, v. en parler, v. A-t-il*  
 ever any body know in what happiness  
*jamais connu, p.p. en, p. bonheur, m.*  
 consists?  
*consiste, v.*

*Autre* refers to persons and things, but *autrui* refers to persons only; the latter has neither gender nor number, and can only be used in the genitive or dative case: ex.

*Cette plume n'est pas bonne, This pen is not good, give*  
*donnez-lui en une autre, him another.*  
*Ne prenez pas le bien d'au- Do not take other people's*  
*trui, goods.*

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Your brother has lost his books, shall I  
*perdu, p.p.*  
 give him others? - - As you broke my  
*donnerai, v. avez cassé, v.*  
 penknife, you will give me another. - - Other peo-  
*canif, m. donnerez, v.*  
 ple's opinions are not the rule of mine. - - -  
*sentiment, m. règle, f.*  
 Do not speak ill of other people, if you  
*parlez, v. mal, adv.*  
 will have nobody speak ill of you. - - -  
*voulez, v. que parle, v.*  
 Always remember that principle of na-  
*souvenez-vous de ce principe, m. na-*



tural law, do not to others what you  
*turel*, adj. *loi*, f. *faites*, v.

would not wish that (they should do) to you. - -  
*voudriez*, v. *on fit*, v.

What are other people's troubles, if (they be com-  
*peine*, f. *si*, c. *on les com-*

pared) with ours.

*pare*, v. *aux*

*Chaque* and *chacun* are used indifferently; *chaque* always requires a substantive after it, and *chacun* is used substantively in a general or limited sense, both mentioning persons or things.

*Chaque langue a ses idiomes* Each language has its pec-  
*particuliers*, *culiar idioms.*

*Chacun à son tour*, Every one in his turn.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Every thing in its time. - - Every virtue has  
*chose*, f. *dans*, p. *tems*, m.

its reward, and each vice has its punishment. - -  
*récompense*, f. *châtiment*, m.

Let every soldier keep his post to  
*Que se tiens*, v. *à poste*, m. *pour*, p.

avoid any surprise from the enemy. - -  
*éviter*, v. *tout*, adj. *surprise*, f. *de la part de l'ennemi*, m.

Every one thinks and acts for himself. - - Do not  
*pense*, v. *agit*, c. *soi*,

speak all at once, but each in your turn. - -  
*à la fois*, adv. *à*

England expects every man will do his duty  
*attend*, v. *fera*, v. *devoir*, m.

in case of danger. - - Trees bear their fruits  
*en Arbre*, m. *portent*, v.

each in their season. - - Let us give to every  
*dans*, p. *rendons*, v.

one what belongs to him. - - Let every one  
*appartient*, v. *Que*

meddle with his own business.

*se mêle*, v. *de propre*, adj. *affaires*, pl.

*L'un l'autre* are susceptible of gender and number, and express a reciprocity in the action, and may be applied to persons or things; and if there be a preposition in English, it must be placed between them: ex.

*Ils se haïssent l'un l'autre,* They hate each other.  
*Ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre,* They speak ill of one another.

### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Fire and water destroy one another. - - My  
*se détruisent, v.*  
 sisters can not bear each other. - -  
*peuvent, v. se souffrir, v.*  
 Love one another, said our Lord  
*Aimez-vous, v. dit, v. Seigneur, m.*  
 to his disciples. - - - The seasons follow each  
*disciple, m. saison, f. se suivent, v.*  
 other without interruption. - - - 'Thieves always<sup>s</sup>  
*sans, p. Voleur, m.*  
 mistrust<sup>t</sup> one another. - - 'They do jus-  
*se défient de, v. se rendent, v.*  
 tice to one another. - - It is rare to hear  
*rare, adj. de entendre, v.*  
 two authors speak well of one another. - - -  
*auteur, m. dire, v. du bien, m.*  
 Multiplication teaches to multiply two  
*Multiplication, f. enseigne, v. à multiplier, v.*  
 numbers by each other. - - - The columns  
*nombre, m. par, p. colonne, f.*  
 were close against one another.  
*étoient, v. serré, adj. contre, p.*

*L'un et l'autre* always require the verb in the plural, and may likewise be applied to persons or things; *ni l'un ni l'autre* require the verb to be put in the singular, if that pronoun be placed before the verb, and in the plural, if it come after it; but in both cases the verb must be preceded by the negation *ne*: ex.

*L'un et l'autre ont raison,* Both are in the right.  
*Ni l'un ni l'autre ne répond,* Neither of them answer.  
*or ils ne répondent ni l'un*  
*ni l'autre,*

N. B. The preposition must be placed between them, and *both* is not expressed in French when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and*: ex.

*Son frère et sa sœur sont* Both his brother and sister  
*morts,* are dead.

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Both serve to the same purpose. - - - I  
*servent, v. même, adj. usage, m.*  
called on your cousins, and I heard  
*ai passé, v. chez cousine, f. ai appris, v.*  
that both had been married a week be-  
*que avoient, v. marié, p.p. semaine, f. au-*  
fore. - - - Honour your father and mother  
*paravant, adv. Respectez, v.*  
and endeavour to please both. - Do you speak  
*tâchez, v. de plaire, v. à parlez, v.*  
of my brother or sister? I speak of both. - Apples  
*parle, v. Pomme, f.*  
and pears are good fruits, but peaches are pre-  
*poire, f. pêche, f. pré-*  
ferable to both. - I wrote to both, but neither of  
*férable, adj. ai écrit, v.*  
them answered my letters. - Yesterday I expected  
*a répondu, v. à attendois, v.*  
my two best friends, but neither of them came. - - I  
*vint, v.*  
will give it to neither of them. - - Do you prefer  
*donnerai, v.*  
currants to cherries? - - I like neither (of them.)  
*groseille, f. cerise, f. aime, v. pl.*  
Both religion and virtue are the bonds of civil  
*lien, m.*  
society.

**Quelque—que.** *Quelque* immediately joined to a noun followed by *que*, expresses an indeterminate quality or quantity ; it is declinable before a substantive and indeclinable before an adjective, and requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood : ex.

*Quelques fautes que vous ayez faites, on vous pardonnera,* Whatever faults you may have committed, they will forgive you.

*Quelque grandes que soient vos fautes, on vous pardonnera,* However great your faults be, they will forgive you.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whatever efforts people make to hide  
*effort, m. on, pro. fasse, v. pour, p. voiler, v.*  
 truth, it (is discovered) sooner or later. - What-  
*se découvre, v. tôt, adv. tard, adv.*  
 ever services you may have done. to your  
*service, m. ayez, v. rendus, p.p.*  
 country, it will reward you for them. - - What-  
*patrie, f. récompensera, v.*  
 ever capacity a man may have, he ought not to  
*puisse, v. doit, v. se*  
 boast. - - However equitable your<sup>a</sup> offers<sup>s</sup> be<sup>t</sup>,  
*vanter, v. offre, f. soient, v.*  
 I do not believe they will be accepted. - - 'Though<sup>a</sup>  
*crois, v. soient, v. acceptée, p.p.*  
 kings<sup>s</sup> be<sup>t</sup> ever so powerful<sup>a</sup> they die  
*soient, v. puissant, adj. meurent, v.*  
 as well as the meanest of their subjects. - - However  
*vil, adj. sujet, m.*  
 learned those ladies may be, they sometimes<sup>a</sup>  
*savant, adj. quelquefois, adv.*  
 mistake<sup>t</sup>.  
*se trompent, v.*

*Quel que, quelle que* must be thus divided, when it is immediately followed by a verb or a personal pronoun, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates ; it likewise requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood : ex.

*Quelle que soit votre faute,* Whatever your fault may  
*on vous pardonnera,* be, they will forgive you.

Whatever the enemy be, whose malice<sup>s</sup> you<sup>t</sup>  
*ennemi, m.* *malice, f.*  
 dread,<sup>2</sup> you ought to rely on your  
*appréhendez, v.* *devez, v.* *vous reposer, v.* *sur, p.*  
 innocence. - - Laws condemn all criminals,  
*condamnent, v.* *criminel, m.*  
 whoever they may be. - Whatever your inten-  
*puissent, v.* *intention, f.*  
 tions may be, I think that you (are in the wrong).  
*avez tort.*  
 Whatever the reasons be which you may allege,  
*raison, f.* *alléguez, v.*  
 they are not sufficient. - - Whatever these books  
*suffisant, adj.* *livre, m.*  
 be, send them to me. - Whatever her fortune be,  
*fortune, f.*  
 he says he never will marry her.  
*dit, v.* *épousera, v.*

*Quelque chose qui or que, quoi que, quoi que ce soit*  
*que, tout ce qui or que,* always relate to things, and  
 never to persons; with this difference, that, in  
 French, we generally begin the sentence with either  
*quelque chose que or qui, quoi que,* or *quoi que ce soit*  
*que,* with the following verb in the subjunctive mood:  
 ex.

*Quelque chose qu'on vous* Whatever may be said to  
*dise, ne le croyez pas,* you, do not believe it.  
*Quoi que ce soit qu'on vous* Whatever they may say to  
*dise, ne le croyez pas,* you, do not believe it.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Whatever may happen to you in this world,  
*puisse, v.* *arriver, v.* *monde, m.*  
 never murmur against divine providence, for  
*murmurez, v.* *contre, p.* *car, c.*

whatever we may suffer, we deserve it. - - What-  
*souffrions, v. méritons, v.*  
 ever I may do, you always blame me. - - Who is  
*fasse, v. blâmez, v.*  
 the man who has stolen his money? I know not;  
*volé, p.p. sais, v.*  
 but whoever he may be, and whatever he may say,  
*dise, v.*  
 if my father catch him, he shall be punished. - -  
*attrappe, v.*  
 In whatever your master employs you, do it  
*à emploie, v. faites, v.*  
 heartily. - - - - Whatever you may say, your  
*de bon cœur, adv. disiez, v.*  
 brothers shall be punished, if they deserve it.  
*seront, v. méritent, v.*

On the contrary, we always make use of *tout ce qui* or *que*, when *whatever* can be turned into *all that which*, or *every thing which*; and may be placed either at the beginning or in the middle of a sentence, according to its situation in English, with the following verb in the indicative mood: ex.

*Il fera toujours tout ce qu'il vous plaira,* He will always do what-  
 ever, or every thing, you  
 please.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

In whatever you do, be guided by ho-  
*faites, v. guidé, p.p. hon-*  
 nesty and probity; and in whatever you say,  
*vérité, f. dites, v.*  
 never deviate from the path of truth. - -  
*vous écarter, v. sentier, m.*  
 Whatever is pleasing is not always useful. - - -  
*agréable, adj. utile, adj.*  
 Tell me whatever you think of me, and I will  
*Dites, v. pensez, v. di-*  
 tell you whatever I think of you. - Never speak  
*raï, v.*

of whatever has passed between us both. -- She is  
*s'est passé, v. entre, p. deux.*  
 so curious, that she will know whatever I  
*curieux, adj. veut, v. savoir, v. tout ce que*  
 do. -- Whatever glitters is not gold. -- I will pay  
*fais, v. luit, v. paierai, v.*  
 you to-morrow whatever I owe you.  
*dois, v.*

*Quelque* always expresses an indeterminate signification, and is generally joined to a substantive with which it agrees in number; and *quelqu'un, quelqu'une*, make *quelques-uns, quelques-unes*, in the plural.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

When he comes to see us, he has  
*Quand, adv. vient, v. voir, v.*  
 always some tale to tell us. -- He promised  
*conte, m. à faire, v. a promis, v.*  
 to bring me some filberts and chesnuts. --- Have  
*de aveline, f. châtaigne, f.*  
 you heard any news? -- Somebody knocks  
*appris, p. p. nouvelle, f. frappe, v.*  
 at the door, go and open it. -- Is there  
*allez, v. ouvrir, v. Y a-t-il, v.*  
 any of these ladies who has found my colour-box?  
*dame, f. ait, v. couleur, f.*  
 - Have you any (raspberry trees) in your garden? I have  
*framboisier, m.*  
 some. -- Has he any vines? Yes, he has some.  
*A-t-il, vigne, f. Oui, adv.*

*Qui que ce soit*, speaking of persons only, may be Englished different ways; but when by *whoever, what person soever*, it must always be followed by the pronouns *il, elle* or *qui*, and sometimes by both, unless it be governed by a verb or preposition: ex.

*Qui que ce soit qui me trompe, Whoever deceives me,*  
*il sera puni, shall be punished.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whoever despises the poor, is himself des-  
*méprise, v.* *lui-même mé-*  
 picable. - - Whoever speaks to you, do not answer. - -  
*prisable, adj.* *répondez, v.*  
 Whoever (may presume to) ask you any question  
*osera, v.* *question, f.*  
 concerning that affair, pretend not to know any  
*touchant, p.* *feignez de, v.* *savoir, v.*  
 thing about it. - - Of whomsoever you speak,  
*parliez, v.*  
 always speak the truth. - - - To whomsoever you  
*dites, v.* *vous*  
 apply every body will tell you the  
*vous adressiez, v.* *tout le monde, m.* *dira, v.*  
 same thing. - - - With whomsoever you be  
*chose, f.* *Avec, p.* *soyez, v.*  
 always behave well.  
*comportez-vous, v.*

When the above pronoun is Englished by *nobody* in  
*the world, no man living, &c.*; it must be attended with  
 the negation *ne* before the verb; and when speaking  
 in the past tense, *qui que ce fût* must be used: ex.

*Je n'en ai parlé à qui que ce soit,* I mentioned it to no man  
 living, to no one.  
*César ne vouloit se fier à qui que ce fût,* Cæsar would trust to no-  
 body whatever.

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I spoke to nobody whatever; for I saw  
*ai parlé, v.* *ai vu, v.*  
 neither father, mother, nor children. - Charity bids  
*ordonne, v.*  
 us to (speak ill) of nobody whatever, and to do  
*de médire, v.* *de faire, v.*  
 harm to no man living. - - Never speak to any  
*du mal, m.* *parlez, v.*



body whatever of what I told you. -- He acquainted  
 nobody in the world with his projects. -- My brother  
 was so honest, that he mistrusted nobody at  
 all. -- Cromwell would trust his life to nobody  
 whatever.

The above observation is to be made with respect to  
*quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût*, only used in speaking  
 of inanimate objects. *Quiconque* is indeclinable, and  
 always used in the singular.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brother enjoys so<sup>d</sup> good<sup>s</sup> a<sup>l</sup> health<sup>t</sup>, that  
 (for these) three years he never complained  
 of any thing whatever. --- He is so lazy, that  
 he applies to nothing whatever. --- You  
 may go and take a walk in the garden,  
 but do not touch any thing whatever. -- Who-  
 ever believes every thing which (he is told,) is  
 often deceived. --- He (is ordered) to stop  
 every one that shall go that way.

It must be observed, that the numeral adjective *one*,  
 used as a pronoun indefinite, and admitting of a plural  
 termination, is not to be expressed in French, when it  
 immediately follows an adjective of colour, or any other  
 expressing the shape or size of the object which it im-  
 plies ; but the adjective must be put in the same number

and gender as the substantive which is understood in English: ex.

*Quel habit achetez-vous ?* What coat shall you buy ?  
*un bleu ou un vert ?* a blue one or a green one ?

*J'ai trouvé deux nids d'oiseaux ; dans l'un il y avait des œufs, et des petits dans l'autre,* I have found two birds' nests; there were eggs in one, and young ones in the other.

# EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

What kind of a hat will you have? a black  
*espèce, f.* *noir, adj.*  
 one, or a white one? a round one, or a  
*blanc, adj.* *rond, adj.*  
 cocked one? --- My father has sold  
*retroussé, adj.* *vendu, p. p.*  
 one of his horses; which is it? the black one or  
*ce*  
 the grey one? -- Were there many flowers in  
*gris, adj.* *Y avait-il*  
 his garden? Yes, there were very fine ones,  
*très, adv.*  
 which my father had sent him from Hol-  
*envoyé, p. p.*  
 land. -- (Here are) several pair of shoes, which  
*Voici, adv.* *soulier, m.*  
 will you have? the red ones, or the white  
*rouge, adj.*  
 ones? I prefer the black ones.  
*préfère, v.*

*Tout—que.* *Tout*, preceding a noun immediately followed by *que*, is indeclinable in the masculine and declinable in the feminine, before nouns beginning with a consonant, and must be repeated before every noun in the sentence: ex.

*Tout savant qu'il est, il se trompe quelquefois,* As learned as he is, he sometimes mistakes.

*Toute savante qu'elle est,* For all she is learned, she  
*elle se trompe quelquefois,* sometimes mistakes.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

For all my sister is ugly, she gets friends  
*laid, adj. se fait, v.*  
 every-where. - - As amiable as she is, she  
*par-tout, adv. aimable, adj.*  
 does not please me at all. - - - For all they are  
*on plait, v. du tout, adv.*  
 rich, they give nothing to the poor. - - -  
*donnent, v. pauvre, adj.*  
 Your mother, although she is young, appears  
*paroit, v.*  
 old. - - - As generous as he is, he has not given  
*âgé, adj. a, v. donné, p.p.*  
 me one farthing. - - His aunt, for all she is angry  
*liard, m. tante, f. fâché, adj.*  
 with him, will forgive him his faults, as great  
*contre, p. pardonnera, v. faute, f. quelque*  
 as they are. - - - As young, amiable, handsome,  
*soient, subj.pr. beau, adj.*  
 and rich, as my friend's sisters are, they were  
*étoient, v.*  
 not yet married the last time I saw  
*encore, adv. fois, f. vis, v.*  
 them.

N. B. This will be seen again among the conjunctions.

To the above pronouns may be added the three following expressions, which are generally used in an indefinite or indeterminate manner :

<i>Je ne sais qui,</i>	I know not who, whom.
<i>Je ne sais quoi,</i>	I know not what.
<i>Je ne sais quel, quelle, &amp;c.</i>	I know not which or what.

*Je ne sais qui* is only said of persons, and signifies a person we do not know. *Je ne sais quoi* is only said of

things, and signifies an object which cannot precisely be named or defined : *Je ne sais quel* is said speaking of both persons and things ; lastly, we sometimes put *un* before *Je ne sais qui*, and indifferently *un* or *le* before *Je ne sais quoi* : ex.

<i>Je ne sais qui me parle,</i>	I know not who speaks to me.
<i>Il parle de je ne sais quoi,</i>	He speaks of I know not what.
<i>Je vis je ne sais quel homme,</i>	I saw I know not what man.
<i>Il parle d'un je ne sais qui,</i>	He speaks of I know not whom.
<i>J'ai lu une comédie intitulée, le je ne sais quoi,</i>	I have read a play which has for its title, I know not what.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

When I paid a visit to my friend, I addressed  
*rendis, v. ∞* *m'adressai, v.*  
 myself to I know not whom. - - He (keeps company  
*∞* *fréquente, v.*  
 with) I know not whom, and that displeases her. - -  
*déplait, v.*  
 Whilst she (was speaking) to him, she was  
*Pendant que, c.* *parloit, v.* *fut*  
 accosted by I know not whom. - - There is  
*abordé, p.p.* *par, p.* *Il y a, v.*  
 I know not what mean in that behaviour. - -  
*de bas, adj.* *conduite, f.*  
 He complains of I know not what. - - When I  
*se plaint, v.*  
 went in, I saw I know not what man, what wo-  
*entr'ai, v.*  
 man, what pictures, what figures. - - She speaks  
*portrait, m.* *figure, f.*  
 to I know not whom. - - There is in that I  
*là-dedans, adv.*  
 know not what that pleases me.  
*plaît, v.*

**RECAPITULATORY, or promiscuous EXERCISES**  
*upon all the PRONOUNS.*

I speak French. - - You speak English. - -  
*parle*, v. *parlez*, v.  
We do not understand what they say to us. - -  
*comprendons*, v. *disent*, v.  
She speaks to you, and robs you (at the same)  
*parle*, v. *vole*, v. *en même*  
time. - - We have not seen them. - - Your  
*tens*, m. *avons*, v. *vus*, p.p.  
mother came to see me yesterday, and I  
*vint*, v. *voir*, v. *hier*, adv.  
will go to see her to-morrow. - - Is there any body  
*irai*, v. *demain*, adv. *Est-il*, v.  
that esteems her more than I do? - - Attention,  
*estime*, v.  
cares, credit, money, I have put<sup>a</sup> (every<sup>i</sup> thing)  
*soin*, m. *mis*, p.p. *tout*  
in use. - - They are happy, but we are  
*en*, p. *usage*, m. *heureux*, adj.  
not so. - - Every body thinks I am the mother of  
*croit*, v.  
that child; I assure you I am not. - - Ladies,  
*Mesdames*, pl.  
are you the companions of Miss le Noir? Yes,  
*êtes*, v. *compagne*, f.  
we are. - - That dictionary costs me three guineas,  
*coûte*, v.  
but I owe much to it. - - Whatever may be  
*dois*, v. *beaucoup*, adv. *soient*, v.  
your troubles, you ought to write to me more  
*peine*, f. *devriez*, v. *écrire*, v.  
frequently. - - I will lend you the book which she  
*souvent*, adv. *prêterai*, v.  
has sent me. - - Believe me, he is very  
*envoyé*, p.p. *Croyez*, v.  
ill. - - I shall be very glad to go  
*malade*, adj. *serai*, v. *aïse*, adj. *à aller*, v.

there with you; for I have something to tell  
*avec, p. car, c. à dire, v.*  
 him. - - I love your sister, and I owe her re-  
*aime, v. res-*  
 spect. - - Give me my hat and cloak. - -  
*pect, m. chapeau, m. mantelet, m.*  
 I have dined with your father and mother. - -  
*diné, p.p.*  
 They<sup>1</sup> often<sup>2</sup> procure<sup>3</sup> me<sup>2</sup> that plea-  
*souvent, adv. procurent, v.*  
 sure. - - If it be not an indiscretion on my part,  
*ce est, v. de*  
 pray tell me what passed between you  
*de grâce, s'est passé, v. entre, p.*  
 and them. - - They have sent you good apples :  
*pomme, f.*  
 Yes, there were some good ones and some bad  
*Il y avoit, v. mauvais, adj.*  
 ones. - - Write to me, do not write to her. - -  
*Ecrivez, v. en*  
 Carry some to your sister. - - I will do whatever  
*Portez, v. ferai, v.*  
 you please. - - - The Thames is a very fine  
*plaira, v. Tamise, f.*  
 river; it divides London into two parts. - -  
*rivière, f. divise, v. en, p. partie, f.*  
 London is the capital of England, as Paris is that  
*capitale, f.*  
 of France; it is a fine city, but some of its streets  
*rue, f.*  
 are very inconvenient and narrow. - - Brest  
*incommode, adj. étroit, adj.*  
 is a fine sea - port, in France, but its entrance  
*mer, f. port, m. entrée, f.*  
 is difficult and dangerous. - - Brother, these  
*difficile, adj.*  
 books are mine, and not yours. - - Your  
*non pas, adv.*  
 exercise is better than mine, but it is not so  
*léme, m.*

good as your sister's. - - Do you think of  
*bien, adv.* *pensez, v. à*

me? Yes, I do. - - You do not know what vexes

me. - - I will not accept of any of the  
*pense, v.* *fâche, v.*

terms which they offer me. - - Whom ought  
*veux, v.* *accepter, v.*  
*condition, f.* *offrent, v.* *devons, v.*

we to worship? God, who is the father of  
*adorer, v.* *Dieu, m.*

them that love him, and the protector of those  
*aiment, v.*

that fear him. - - Of all those who contend  
*craignent, v.* *disputent, v.*

against religion, some do it because it per-  
*contre, p.* *font, v.* *parceque, c.* *em-*

plexes them; others, because they wish to  
*burrasse, v.* *veulent, v.*

have the glory of perplexing its defenders. - -  
*embarrasser, v.* *défenseur, m.*

Those trees are well exposed to the sun,  
*arbre, m.* *exposé, p.p.* *soleil, m.*

nevertheless their fruits are not good. - - I believe  
*cependant, adv.* *crois, v.*

your uncle is arrived. - - His ability is not so  
*oncle, m.* *arrivé, p.p.* *habileté, f.*

great as yours. - - Two rivals are generally  
*grand, adj.* *rival, m.*

enemies of one another. - - Sister, who gave you  
*a donné, v.*

that letter? Our uncle's servant. - - - What does  
*lettre, f.* *domestique, m.*

he write to you? That his library is at our  
*écrit, v.* *bibliothèque, f.*

service; and I assure you that he has a very good  
*très, adv.*

one. - - His letters please me so much, that I  
*plaisent, v.*

wish to increase their number. - - Both my  
*veux, v.* *augmenter, v.*

father and aunt are now at Rome; the former  
*à présent*  
 writes once a week, the latter scarcely writes  
*écrit, v. une fois, f. à peine*  
 to me twice a year. - - - He that wants  
*deux fois* *manque de, v.*  
 virtue, wants (all things). - - - That lady pleases  
*tout, m. dame, f. plait, v.*  
 you, for you<sup>1</sup> are<sup>2</sup> always<sup>4</sup> speaking<sup>3</sup> of her<sup>2</sup>. - - -  
*car, c. parlez, v.*  
 The beauty of the mind creates admira-  
*beauté, f. esprit, m. donne, v.*  
 tion; that of the soul gains esteem, and that  
*âme, f. donne, v. estime, f.*  
 of the body love. - - - Most friends are more  
*corps, m. amour, m.*  
 attached to our fortune, 'than<sup>2</sup> 'they are  
*attaché, p.p. que ne, c.*  
 to our person. - - - Whoever is without virtue,  
*sans, p.*  
 seldom<sup>2</sup> values<sup>1</sup> men; and whoever is  
*rarement, adv. estime, v.*  
 too good, values them (too much). - - - It  
*trop, adv. trop, adv. Ce*  
 is she who told me that this house is not  
*a dit, v. maison, f.*  
 yours. - - You believe that Mrs. D. is in your interests,  
*croyez, v. intérêt, m.*  
 and I believe nothing of it. - - - Ambition  
*crois, v. ne rien, adv.*  
 (tramples upon) wisdom, honour, probity, and on  
*foule aux pieds* *sur, p.*  
 their ruins, it lays the foundation of its great-  
*ruine, f. élève, v. fondement, m. gran-*  
 ness. - - Whatever her intention may be, I<sup>1</sup> do  
*deur, f. soit, v. en*  
 'not<sup>6</sup> love<sup>5</sup> her<sup>3</sup> the less<sup>7</sup> for it<sup>4</sup>. - - I assure you that  
*aime, v. en*  
 I have answered both her letter and her brother's. - - -  
 Nobody in the world has complained of your con-  
*s'est, v. plaint, p.p.*



duct. - - When you read the history of the Roman  
*Quand, c. lirez, v. histoire, f. Romain, adj.*  
 emperors, you will find one (of them) whose name  
*empereur, m. trouverez, v.*

was Nero. - - - The study of geography is absolute-  
*Néron. géographie, f. absolu-*  
 ly necessary to him who has a taste for his-  
*ment, adv. du goût, m.*

tory. - - He that sold us this clock did not  
*a vendu, v. pendule, f. a*  
 cheat us. - - What do you think of it? - - -  
*trompé, p.p. pensez, v.*

Whoever cheats me shall repent (of it). - - -  
*trompe, v. se repentira, v. en*

Every body thinks we shall have peace. - - When I  
*croit, v. aurons, v. paix, f.*

went in, the members of the assembly were  
*entrai, v. étoient, v.*

seated every one in his place. - - - I, who did not  
*assis, p.p. à*

know that they were reconciled, was much  
*savois, v. que, c. réconciliés, p.p. fus, v. fort, adv.*

surprised to see them together. - - - England owes  
*de voir, v. ensemble, adv. doit, v.*

her riches to her naval strength and the encourage-  
*forces, f. pl.*

ment she gives to her commerce. - - We speak  
*donne, v. parlons, v.*

of what has happened to him. - - Well! if he  
*est, v. arrivé, p.p. Eh bien, int.*

spend other people's money, he does not spend  
*dépense, v.*

yours. - - - My house is like others, it has its  
*maison, f. a, v.*

beauties as well as its inconveniences. - - She who  
*beauté, f. incommodité, f.*

(was speaking) to you is not yet mar-  
*parloit, v. encore, adv.*

ried. - - Her father, mother, brothers, sisters, uncles,  
*oncle, m.*

and aunts, in short, all her relations, are dead,  
*tante, f. enfin, c. parent, m. & f.*

and have left her a considerable fortune. - -  
*ont, v. laissé, p. p.*

Those gentlemen have fine horses, but mine are  
*cheval, m.*

finer than theirs. - - Do you know any of  
*connoissez, v.*

those ladies? Yes, I know some of them. - - - -  
*connois, v.*

For all they are young and handsome, they have a  
*ont, v.*

great deal of modesty and virtue. - - Yes, niece, but  
*nièce, f.*

they are both rich and proud. - - - - - Desire  
*orgueilleux, adj. Priez, v.*

him to bring them here. - - Is that the gown  
*de amener, v. Est-ce robe, f.*

for which you gave five guineas? - - If I  
*pour, p. avez donné, v.*

had been in your place, I (would have)  
*eusse, v. été, p. p. à aurois, v.*

preferred the white one to the black one. - - - -  
*préféré, p. p.*

How many books are there in that library? There  
*y a-t-il bibliothèque, f.*

are three thousand seven hundred and twenty-seven  
 in the library, fifty-two upon the table, and nineteen  
 in my room. - - Whose house is this? It belongs

*appartient, v.*  
 to I know not whom. - - There is I know not what

*Il y a, v.*  
 in the colour, which pleases much. - - To what

*dans, p. plait, v.*  
 (does he apply himself)? - - This apple, and that he

*s'applique-t-il, v.*  
 gave you, are very good. - - Give me either

*donna, v. Donnez, v.*  
 of them. - - I will send you some thither. - - -

*enverrai, v.*

I cannot sell it to you for so<sup>2</sup> small<sup>3</sup> a<sup>4</sup>  
*ne peux pas, v. vendre, v. pour, p.*  
 sum<sup>4</sup>. - - I prefer the beauty of the mind to that  
*somme, f. préfère, v.*  
 of the body. - - - Some love one thing, some another.  
*aiment, v.*  
 - - She says she hates that man; many think she  
*dit, v. hait, v.*  
 loves him. - - He whom nobody pleases, is more  
*aime, v. à plait, v.*  
 unhappy than he who pleases nobody. - - I  
*malheureux, adj. à*  
 was near your sister when that happened  
*étais, v. auprès de, p. quand, c. arriva, v.*  
 to her. - - Both his father and mother died  
*moururent, v.*  
 on the same day. - - - - - As covetous as he is, he  
*avare, adj.*  
 gave me a guinea. - - - There are many people  
*a donné, v. Il y a*  
 whom we esteem, because we do not know them. - -  
*parceque, c.*  
 Whatever has happened to you, I am very sorry  
*soit, v. fâché, adj.*  
 for it. - - He would do it in spite of any  
*voulut, v. faire, v. en, p. dépit, m.*  
 body whatever. - - Learning is preferable to riches  
*Science, f.*  
 and virtue to both. - - - Some philosophers have  
*philosophe, m. ont, v.*  
 thought that the fixed stars were so many  
*étoiles, f. étoient, v.*  
 cru, p.p. *fixe, adj.*  
 suns. - - See with what care, attention, and per-  
*Voyez, v.*  
 severance, every animal (rears up) its (young ones.)  
*élève, v. petit, adj.*  
 - - Here are two grammars, which do you pre-  
*Voici, adv.*  
 fer? I prefer this to that. - - - Both are ver-  
 good. - - - He believes nothing of what y'  
*croit, v. ne rien, adv.*

told him. - - - You blame him who does  
*avez dit, v. blâmez, v.*  
 not deserve it. - - - Friend, to whom did you  
*mérite, v. avez, v.*  
 speak? I spoke to nobody; for I saw  
*parlé, p.p. ai parlé, v. car, c. ai vu, v.*  
 neither of them. - - Each country has its peculiar  
*particulier, adj.*  
 customs; in France, they eat with the fork, in England,  
*coutume, f. on, pro.*  
 we eat with the knife; in France, they eat the meat  
*on, pro.*  
 well done; in England, we eat it half raw.  
*cuit, p.p. à moitié cru, adj.*

#### SECT. IV.

#### OF VERBS AND THEIR DIFFERENT SORTS.

Verbs are usually divided into seven sorts, viz.

1. *Les verbes auxiliaires,* auxiliary.
2. *Les verbes actifs,* active.
3. *Les verbes passifs,* passive.
4. *Les verbes neutres,* neuter.
5. *Les verbes réfléchis,* reflective.
6. *Les verbes personnels,* personal.
7. *Les verbes impersonnels,* impersonal.

Some of them are regular, that is to say, they follow the general rule of the conjugation to which they belong; others do not, and are called *irregular*.

The *auxiliary verbs* are, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be. These two auxiliaries are used to conjugate all the compound tenses of the other verbs.

The *active verbs*.—In this class, the action is transitive, that is, it passes from the subject to the object: *ex.*

*Le maître punit les écoliers paresseux.* The master *punishes* the lazy scholars.

The active verb sometimes governs two cases: one

to which the action directly refers, or which is the direct object of the action, and is therefore called the *direct* or *absolute case*; the other, to which the action refers but indirectly, and it is called the *indirect* or *relative case*: ex.

*Votre sœur a écrit une longue lettre à mon frère,*      Your sister wrote a long letter to my brother.

A long letter is the direct or absolute case, and *to my brother*, the indirect or relative case, of the verb *wrote*. The direct case can be no other but the *accusative* of a noun or pronoun, but the indirect is either the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative*.

In the *passive verbs*, the action is received or suffered by the subject: ex.

*Les écoliers paresseux seront punis,*      Lazy scholars shall be punished.

In the *neuter verbs*, the action is intransitive, that is, it remains in the agent: ex.

<i>Je dors,</i>	I sleep.		<i>Vous voyagez,</i>	You travel.
<i>Nous étudions,</i>	We study.		<i>Elle soupire,</i>	She sighs.

In the *reflected verbs*, the action returns upon the agent that produces it: ex.

<i>Il se repent,</i>	He repents himself.
<i>Elle se loue,</i>	She praises herself.

These verbs have always *se* before their infinitive, and are conjugated with a double pronoun.

The *personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons, in the singular and plural, throughout all their tenses.

The *impersonal verbs* have but the third person of the singular number.

*N. B.* There is a kind of verbs which may be distinguished by the name of *reduplicative*, always expressing a repetition of the action: ex.

<i>Recommencer,</i>	To begin again.
<i>Refaire,</i>	To do again, &c.

• In these verbs, the English word *again* is to be

rendered in French by the syllable *re* prefixed to the radix of the verb, and not by *encore*.

All the above verbs may be *simple* or *compound*.

A verb is *simple* which cannot be divided without losing its meaning: as,

<i>Appeler,</i>	To call;	<i>Voir,</i>	To see;
<i>Bâtir,</i>	To build;	<i>Prendre,</i>	To take;
<i>Mentir,</i>	To lie;	<i>Vivre,</i>	To live;

which would mean nothing, if they were divided.

A verb is *compound* when it is preceded by one or more syllables: as,

<i>Rappeler,</i>	To recall.	<i>Prévoir,</i>	To foresee.
<i>Rebâtir,</i>	To rebuild.	<i>Entreprendre,</i>	To undertake.
<i>Démentir,</i>	To belie.	<i>Survivre,</i>	To outlive, &c.

These last verbs are generally formed by prefixing to them part or the whole of a preposition.

## CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

To conjugate verbs is to give them different inflections or terminations, according to their *moods*, *tenses*, *persons*, and *numbers*.

### MOODS.

*Mood* or *mode*, in the sense it is taken here, is a grammatical term, which means the *manner* of affirming, or denoting, in the verbs, by different inflections.

There are, in the French language, four moods, absolutely distinct from each other, by the several inflections, or by some other difference. They are:

<i>L'infinitif,</i>	The infinitive.
<i>L'indicatif,</i>	The indicative.
<i>L'impératif,</i>	The imperative.
<i>Le subjonctif, ou</i> <i>conjonctif,</i>	The subjunctive, or con- junctive.

### Of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood is so called, because it only expresses the action or signification of the verb in an *indefinite* and *indeterminate* manner, that is, without affirmation,

and without any relation as to time, number, or person :  
ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chanter,</i>	To sing.
<i>Danser,</i>	To dance.

### Of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

This mood is thus called, because it not only *indicates* the affirmation in the different tenses of the verbs, but likewise the time, number, and person; without being preceded or governed by either conjunction or verb :

<i>J'écris une lettre,</i>	I write a letter.
<i>Il chante une chanson,</i>	He sings a song.

*Ecris* and *chante* are two verbs in the indicative mood, because they do not require to be preceded by a conjunction\* or another verb to make a complete sense. The definition of this mood will be better understood, by comparing the little that has been said with what is going to be said with respect to the subjunctive mood.

### Of the IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The name which has been given to this mood, is derived from a Latin word which signifies to *command*; and the imperative is in fact but a manner of denoting in the verbs the action of *commanding, entreating, praying, exhorting*, and sometimes *forbidding* : ex.

<i>Ne méprisez pas les avis</i>	Do not despise the advice
<i>que je vous donne,</i>	which I give you.

It is easy to perceive that this manner of speaking is but an exhortation, as if I had said,

<i>Je vous exhorte, je vous prie,</i>	I exhort, I entreat you, not
<i>de ne pas mépriser mes</i>	to despise my advice.
<i>avis,</i>	

This mood has no first person in the singular, because

\* Among the conjunctions, some govern the indicative, others the subjunctive: this will be explained hereafter.

it is impossible for a man to command himself; and if it have the first person plural, it is because we speak as much to others as to ourselves; as when we say,

*Evitons tout ce qui pourroit*    *Let us avoid every thing*  
*offenser les autres,*                *that might offend others.*

The second person singular and the first and second plural admit of no pronouns before them; as to the third, in both numbers, it is always preceded by the pronoun *il* or *elle*, &c. and the conjunction *que*.

### *Of the SUBJUNCTIVE, or CONJUNCTIVE.*

The name of subjunctive, or conjunctive, sufficiently conveys what its use is in a sentence. It may be defined thus; a manner of expressing the different tenses of the verbs without any affirmation. In fact, the subjunctive never affirms; it is always preceded by, or subject to some conjunction; and if it should be met with in a sentence containing an affirmation, that affirmation can only be expressed by the verb that precedes the subjunctive, which is used but to modify that affirmation. In the subsequent sentence,

*Je travaille afin que vous*    *I work that you may rest*  
*vous reposiez,*                        *yourself.*

the affirmation is only expressed by *je travaille*, I work, and what follows only expresses the end which I propose by working, viz. to procure you some rest. Again,

*Je désire que vous fassiez*    *I wish that you may do*  
*votre devoir,*                        *your duty;*

I affirm that I wish; but it is clear there is no affirmation in these words, *that you may do your duty*, since I do not say that you do, that you have done, that you will do your duty; but only that I wish you may do it. My wish is not doubtful; but it is very doubtful whether you will or may do your duty.



## TENSES.

There are, strictly speaking, but three natural and proper *tenses* in the verbs : viz.

<i>Le passé,</i>	The past.
<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.

In the French language, the tenses are divided in the following manner, viz. five in the infinitive mood ; three of them are simple, the two others compound.

In the simple tenses, the verb is expressed in one word : ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chantant,</i>	Singing.
<i>Dansé,</i>	Danced.

The compound tenses are conjugated with some one of the auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, joined to a participle passive : ex.

<i>Avoir parlé,</i>	To have spoken.
<i>Ayant chanté,</i>	Having sung.
<i>Etre aimé,</i>	To be loved.
<i>Etant aimé,</i>	Being loved.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le participe actif,</i>	The participle active.
<i>Le participe passif,</i>	The participle passive.

## COMPOUND.

<i>Le prétérit,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le participe passé ou composé,</i>	The participle past or compound.

There are ten tenses in the indicative mood, viz. five simple and five compound : they are,

## SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le prétérit,</i>	The preterite.

*Le futur,*  
*Le conditionnel,*

The future.  
The conditional.

### COMPOUND.

*Le présent,*  
*L'imparfait,*  
*Le prétérít,*  
*Le futur,*  
*Le conditionnel,*

The present.  
The imperfect.  
The preterite.  
The future.  
The conditional.

*N. B.* The imperative admits of no tense but the present.

The subjunctive mood has four tenses ; two simple and two compound.

### SIMPLE.

*Le présent,*  
*Le prétérít,*

The present.  
The preterite.

### COMPOUND.

*Le présent,*  
*Le prétérít,*

The present.  
The preterite.

Before we proceed any further on the conjugations, it has been thought proper to explain the different uses of the above tenses, as one of the most important articles in a language, the precision of which partly depends on the difference which custom sets between one tense and another with regard to the sense of the sentence. We shall endeavour to be short and concise, and say nothing but what is useful, in hopes that the following explanation will be sufficient to remove a difficulty which constantly puzzles the learner.

## TENSES of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

### SIMPLE.

#### PRESENT.

This tense is used when the state, action, or im-

pression, mentioned by the verb, *is existing, doing, or happening*, at the very time we are speaking: ex.

<i>Je me porte bien,</i>	<i>I am well.</i>
<i>Votre sœur est malade,</i>	<i>Your sister is ill.</i>
<i>Nous nous promenons,</i>	<i>We are walking.</i>
<i>Vous écrivez,</i>	<i>You are writing.</i>
<i>Ils jouent,</i>	<i>They are playing, &amp;c.</i>

The present is also used,

1. When speaking of actions or things which we *habitually do, are accustomed to do, or can do*: ex.

<i>Nous dinons toujours à deux heures,</i>	<i>We always dine at two o'clock.</i>
<i>Elle étudie l'histoire,</i>	<i>She studies history.</i>
<i>Vous parlez François,</i>	<i>You speak French.</i>
<i>Lit-il l'Anglois ?</i>	<i>Does he read English ?</i>

2. When speaking of actions which are to be done in a very short time, we generally use this tense instead of the future: ex.

<i>Je pars ce soir pour la campagne,</i>	<i>I set out this evening for the country.</i>
<i>Que faites-vous demain ?</i>	<i>What do you do to-morrow ?</i>
Instead of	
<i>Je partirai ce soir pour la campagne,</i>	<i>I shall set out this evening for the country.</i>
<i>Que ferez-vous demain ?</i>	<i>What will you do to-morrow ?</i>

3. This tense is also constantly used in French instead of the preterite and compound of the *preterite*, especially in *orations* or *set discourses*, and in *poetry*, in order to represent a past action or event as present to the mind of the hearers or readers.

#### IMPERFECT.

This tense has two uses; *in the first*, which probably is the origin of its name, it expresses an action *present or doing* at the time of an action *that is past*: as when I say,

*Mon frère apprenoit sa leçon quand vous arrivâtes,*      *My brother was learning his lesson when you arrived.*

In the above sentence, the act of learning, though past with respect to my narration, was present at the moment your arrival took place ; therefore this tense is but imperfectly preterite and imperfectly present.

*In the second*, the imperfect is employed every time we speak of *actions of habit*, or *actions reiterated at a time which is not defined*: ex.

*Quand j'étois à Londres, j'allois souvent voir mes amis,*      *When I was in London, I often went to see my friends ;*

that is, I often used to go, or I frequently went, &c.

The imperfect is likewise used when we speak of the *character*, or some *inherent and distinctive quality*, of persons or things no longer existing ; and after the English conjunction *if*, though the verb be preceded by *should*, *could*, *would*: ex.

*Philippe, père d'Alexandre le Grand, étoit le plus fin politique de son temps,*      *Philip, the father of Alexander the Great was the deepest politician of his time.*

*César avoit je ne sais quoi de grand dans la physionomie,*      *Cæsar had I know not what of great in his physiognomy.*

*Carthage fesoit un prodigieux commerce par le moyen de ses vaisseaux, qui alloient jusqu'aux Indes,*      *Carthage carried on a prodigious trade by the means of her ships, which went as far as the Indies.*

*Palmire et Persépolis étoient de grandes et belles villes, il venoit, je le paierois,*      *Palmyra and Persepolis were large and fine cities. If he would come, or came, I would pay him.*

*George II. étoit d'une taille plutôt petite que moyenne ; il avoit les yeux très-saillans, le nez grand, et une belle complexion ; il étoit doux, modéré et humain ; sobre et régulier dans sa manière de vivre : il se plaisoit dans la pompe et dans l'appareil militaire, et étoit naturellement brave ; il aimoit la guerre comme soldat, l'étudioit comme une science, et avoit, sur ce sujet, une correspondance établie avec quelques-uns des plus grands généraux que l'Allemagne ait produit.*

*George II. was, in his person, rather lower than the middle size ; he had remarkable prominent eyes, a high nose, and a fair complexion ; he was mild, moderate and humane ; in his way of living, sober and regular : he delighted in military pomp and parade, and was naturally brave : he loved war as a soldier, studied it as a science, and had, on this account, a settled correspondence with some of the greatest generals that Germany has produced.*

From the above instances it might confidently be believed, that every difficulty attending the use of this tense will be entirely removed ; I shall however add, as a farther illustration, that whenever the verb, which in English is in the preterite, can be rendered by the past tense of the verb *to be*, and that preterite changed into the participle active, or when that preterite can be turned into the verb in the infinitive mood preceded by *used*, that past tense must be made in French by the imperfect : ex.

*Je lisais,*

*I used to read ; or I was reading.*

#### PRETERITE.

This tense is so called because it always expresses an action done at a time *determined* or *specified* by an adverb, or some circumstance in the speech, and so entirely elapsed, that nothing more remains of the time when that action was doing : ex.

*Je fus malade hier pendant deux heures,*

*I was ill yesterday for two hours.*

<i>La dernière fois que nous al-</i>	<i>The last time we went to</i>
<i>lâmes le voir, nous eûmes</i>	<i>see him, we had a kind</i>
<i>un accueil favorable,</i>	<i>reception.</i>
<i>Vous écrivîtes à votre frère</i>	<i>You wrote to your bro-</i>
<i>il y a huit jours,</i>	<i>ther eight days ago.</i>
<i>Ils essayèrent de grandes</i>	<i>They underwent great</i>
<i>pertes l'année passée,</i>	<i>losses last year.</i>

## FUTURE.

This tense simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come: ex.

<i>Je vous verrai demain à</i>	<i>I will see you to-morrow in</i>
<i>Londres,</i>	<i>London.</i>
<i>Mon frère vous écrira la</i>	<i>My brother will write to you</i>
<i>semaine prochaine,</i>	<i>next week.</i>

In French, as well as in English, we sometimes express an action that is to be done instantly, by the verb *aller*, or *s'en aller*, to go, immediately followed by an infinitive: ex.

<i>Je vais, or je m'en vais</i>	<i>I am going to write to my</i>
<i>écrire à ma tante,</i>	<i>aunt.</i>
<i>Je vais, or je m'en vais</i>	<i>I am going to set out.</i>
<i>partir,</i>	

Which signify,

<i>Je lui écrirai tout présen-</i>	<i>I will write to her immedi-</i>
<i>tement,</i>	<i>ately.</i>
<i>Je partirai dans l'instant,</i>	<i>I will set out instantly.</i>

To express an uncertainty in a future tense, that is, to express that it is not decided that such a thing will be done, we make use of the verb *devoir* immediately followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, and that is the only instance wherein *devoir* does not imply obligation, necessity, &c.: ex.

<i>Le roi doit partir pour</i>	<i>The king is to set out for</i>
<i>Cheltenham vers le mi-</i>	<i>Cheltenham about the</i>
<i>lieu du mois de Juillet,</i>	<i>middle of July, and is</i>
<i>et ne doit revenir qu'à</i>	<i>not to return till the lat-</i>
<i>la fin du mois d'Août,</i>	<i>ter end of August.</i>

That is,  
*On suppose que le roi par-* It is supposed that the king  
*tira, &c. et qu'il ne re-* *will set out, &c. and will*  
*viendra, &c.* *not return till, &c.*

### CONDITIONAL.

The name of this tense is a true definition of it: in fact, it is always used to express some *condition* or *supposition*, and has always a reference to the *present*, because, by supposing the condition effected, the action, mentioned by the conditional, becomes present: ex.

*Je lirois, si j'avois des livres,* I would read, if I had books.

*Vous auriez la fièvre, si vous mangiez de ce fruit,* You would have a fever, if you ate of that fruit.

*Je serois mortifié, s'il perdoit son procès,* I should be mortified, if he should lose his law-suit.

It is sometimes used, instead of the future, after the conjunction *que*: ex.

*Il a promis qu'il viendrait,* He has promised to come, or that he will come.

This tense is often called the *uncertain tense*, because it expresses an action made uncertain by the conditional that follows it; and some grammarians place it among the tenses of the subjunctive mood, though it is very certain that it never is governed by any of the conjunctions which require a subjunctive mood after them.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

#### COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

The compound of the present is employed in two different manners,

1. It expresses an action past in an indeterminate

time but not very far distant from the time we speak : thus we must say,

<i>J'ai vu mademoiselle votre</i>	<i>I have seen your sister, and</i>
<i>sœur et lui ai parlé,</i>	<i>spoken to her.</i>
<i>Le roi de Prusse a conquis</i>	<i>The king of Prussia has</i>
<i>la Silésie,</i>	<i>conquered Silesia,</i>
<i>Cela s'est passé avanta-</i>	<i>That has passed advanta-</i>
<i>geusement pour votre</i>	<i>geously for your cousin.</i>
<i>cousin,</i>	

In the above sentence, the action is certainly past, but the time when it passed is neither determined nor specified.

2. It expresses a time definite and determinate, but of which there yet remains some part to elapse: ex.

<i>Les fruits ont très-bien</i>	<i>Fruits have very well suc-</i>
<i>réussi cette année,</i>	<i>ceeded this year.</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas eu beau-</i>	<i>We have not had much</i>
<i>coup de neige cet hiver,</i>	<i>snow this winter.</i>
<i>Il a plu toute cette semaine,</i>	<i>It has rained all this week,</i>
<i>tout ce mois,</i>	<i>all this month.</i>
<i>Nous avons vu d'étranges</i>	<i>We have seen strange</i>
<i>choses dans ce siècle,</i>	<i>things in this century.</i>

In the above sentences, *this year, this week, this winter, &c.* are times which still last, and are not yet elapsed.

To express an action recently past, we sometimes make use of the verb *venir* immediately followed by *de*, and the verb in the infinitive mood: ex.

<i>Je viens de le voir passer,</i>	<i>I have just seen him go by.</i>
<i>Le roi vient d'arriver,</i>	<i>The king is but just arrived.</i>
<i>Elle vient d'expirer,</i>	<i>She is but just dead.</i>

The same tense may be expressed by the verb *faire*, preceded by the negation *ne* and followed by the conjunction *que*, with an infinitive preceded by *de*: ex.

<i>Il ne fait que d'arriver,</i>	<i>He is but just arrived.</i>
<i>Je ne fais que de sortir,</i>	<i>I have but just gone out.</i>



N. B. This particle *de* is here indispensable, because, without it, the expression would have quite another sense, and would express a continuation or a frequent reiteration in the action: ex.

*Vous ne faites que sortir,* You do nothing but go out.  
*Elle ne fait que jouer et* She does nothing but play  
*danser,* and dance.

### COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.

This tense expresses an action past before another which is past also, but with this difference, that the action expressed by this tense is the principal object of the person who speaks, and the following sentence is subordinate to that expressed by the compound of the imperfect. So that, though the time of that subordinate sentence be defined, that of the principal sentence is not the less indeterminate, because the former has no influence on the latter. As when we say,

*Nous avions dîné lorsqu'il* We had dined when he  
*arriva,* arrived,

our principal object is to express the action of dining as past, without determining at what time, but only before an action which is past also, without, however, the latter being a consequence of the former; for, we do not mean to say, that he stayed, or waited, till we had dined, to arrive.

### COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

This tense also expresses an action past or done before another which is likewise past; and it is determined by the following sentence, which is the principal object of the attention. Thus when we say,

*Quand ils eurent achevé* When they had done play-  
*de jouer, ils se mirent à* ing, they began singing  
*chanter,*

We mean at first to convey that they *began singing*, and that it was not till they *had done playing*: in which case, the action of having done playing is subordinate to this, *they began singing*, and consequently the latter determines the time of the other.

The following observation is very plain, and will in some manner fix the use of the above tense, viz. that it is hardly ever used except after the conjunctions.

<i>Aussitôt que,</i>	} As soon as ;	<i>Après que,</i>	After ;
<i>D'abord que,</i>		<i>Lorsque,</i>	} When ;
<i>Dès que,</i>		<i>Quand,</i>	

which never precede a compound of the imperfect, unless the verb express a custom or habit.

Lastly, we must use the compound of the preterite when the adverb *bientôt* soon, precedes or follows the verb *was* or *had*, to express an action or thing as done and accomplished : ex.

<i>L'affaire fut bientôt faite,</i>	The business was <i>soon</i> over.
<i>J'eus bientôt fini de manger,</i>	I had <i>soon</i> done eating.

#### COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE.

The name of this tense seems at first to convey a contradiction : what is meant by it is, not that an action can be future and past at the same time, but only that the action, which is to come, will be past when another action happens, or even before it happens : ex.

<i>Je serai parti quand vous reviendrez,</i>	I shall be gone when you come back.
<i>Quand vous aurez fini vos affaires, vous viendrez me trouver,</i>	When you have done your business, you shall come to me.

In the first sentence, *I shall be gone* which is a future time with respect to the present we speak

in, will be a past time by the time you will or purpose to arrive, &c.

### COMPOUND of the CONDITIONAL.

This tense generally supposes a condition, as the conditional present, with this difference, that the condition taking place, the action expressed by the verb in the conditional is accomplished and consequently in a past time: ex.

*Je vous aurois écrit il y a un mois, si j'eusse su votre adresse,* I would have written to you a month ago, if I had known your direction.

The indicative mood has another tense, formed by the compound of the present of the verb *avoir*, joined to a participle passive, which has not been inserted in the preceding tenses, on account of its being seldom used: ex.

*Quand j'ai eu dîné, je suis parti,* When I had dined, I set out.

But it is more elegant and natural to say,

*Après avoir dîné, je suis parti,* After I had dined, I set out.

### TENSES of the SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive or conjunctive has no future distinguished from the *present*, because the present of the subjunctive likewise expresses a future tense: ex.

*Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,* I do not think he will come.

Add the following observations to the latter:

1. When the verb which precedes the conjunction is in the present or future of the indicative, and when we do not mean to express an action passed in the second verb, we must put this last verb in the present of the subjunctive mood: ex.

*Je souhaite que vous réussissiez dans votre entreprise,* I wish you may succeed in your undertaking.  
*J'attendrai qu'il vienne,* I will wait till he come.

2. When the verb which is before the conjunction is in some of the past tenses, or conditional, and we wish not to designate by the second verb a past time more distant than that of the first verb, we must put this second verb in the preterite of the subjunctive:

*Alexandre ordonna que tous  
ses sujets l'adorassent  
comme un dieu,*

*Je voulois que vous écrivis-  
siez à votre sœur,*

*Il souhaiteroit que vous  
prissiez des mesures plus  
convenables,*

Alexander ordered, that all  
his subjects *should wor-*  
*ship* him like a god.

I wished you to *write* to  
your sister.

He would wish you to *take*  
more becoming meas-  
ures.

3. The compound of the present of the subjunctive mood is used when we speak of an action past and accomplished, with regard to the tense of the verb which precedes the conjunction; and this tense is generally the present, compound of the present, or future of the indicative: ex.

*Je doute qu'aucun philo-  
sophe ait jamais bien  
connu l'union de l'âme  
avec le corps,*

*Il a fallu que j'aie consul-  
té tous les médecins,*

*Je n'aurai garde d'y aller,  
que je n'aie reçu quel-  
que assurance d'être bien  
accueilli,*

I doubt whether any philo-  
sopher *have* ever well un-  
derstood the union of the  
soul with the body.

I was obliged to *consult* all  
the physicians.

I shall by no means go thi-  
ther, till I *have received*  
some assurance of being  
welcome.

4. After the imperfect, preterite, compound of the imperfect, of the indicative, or one of the two conditionals, we use the compound of the preterite of the subjunctive mood; likewise after the conjunction *if*, when preceding a compound tense: ex.

*J'ignorois que vous eussiez  
embrassé cette profes-  
sion-là,*

I did not know you *had*  
*embraced* that profes-  
sion.

<i>Vous n'avez pas cru que je fusse arrivée avant vous,</i>	You did not believe I should have arrived before you.
<i>Nous aurions été fâchés que vous vous fussiez adressé à d'autres qu'à nous,</i>	We should have been sorry if you had applied to any others but us.

## NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

A tense is composed of numbers; that is, the singular and the plural.

That there are three persons, has already been observed under the personal pronouns; we have only to remark, that some of these three persons are always joined to the verb as its nominative case, therefore the verb must agree with that nominative in number and person: ex.

<i>Je fais,</i> I do.	<i>Nous faisons,</i> We do.
<i>Tu fais,</i> Thou dost.	<i>Vous faites,</i> You or ye do.
<i>Il fait,</i> He does.	<i>Ils font,</i> They do.

The pronoun *vous*, you, denotes the second person singular and plural, with this difference, that when we speak to a person only, the attribute, or qualifying noun, must be put in the singular: ex.

<i>Vous êtes marié,</i> and not <i>mariés,</i>	You are married.
<i>Vous étiez général de l'armée</i> and not <i>généraux,</i>	You were general of the army.

But we must say *mariés* and *généraux*, if we speak to many.

When the verb has two or three nouns or pronouns as its nominatives, it must be put in the plural, though all these nominatives be in the singular; because two or more nouns in the singular are equivalent to a plural, with regard to verbs as well as to adjectives: ex.

<i>Mon frère et ma sœur sont partis,</i>	My brother and sister are gone.
--	---------------------------------

This has already been mentioned in the adjectives.

If, among these nominatives, one is of the first person and the other of the second, or one is of the second and the other of the third, the verb must agree with the first in preference to the second, and with the second in preference to the third; observing that, in French, the person spoken to, must be named first; and the person speaking is to be mentioned the last: we must therefore say,

<i>C'est vous et moi qui avons découvert tout ce complot,</i>	It is you and I who <i>have</i> discovered all that plot.
<i>Ce n'est ni vous ni ma sœur qui avez ouvert la porte,</i>	It is neither you nor my sister who <i>have</i> opened the door, &c.
<i>Vous, mon père, et moi, partirons demain,</i>	You, my father, and I, <i>will</i> set out to-morrow.

The pronoun relative *qui*, in these and the like sentences, always takes place of the first or second person, and only agrees with the others in number; it is for this reason we must say,

<i>C'est moi qui suis cause de ce malheur,</i>	It is I who <i>am</i> the cause of that misfortune.
<i>C'est vous qui avez révélé ce secret,</i>	It is you who <i>have</i> revealed that secret.
<i>Ce n'est ni lui ni moi qui l'avons fait,</i>	It is neither he nor I who <i>have</i> done it.

There are four conjugations in the French language. Each is distinguished by the termination of the verb in the infinitive mood.

The first makes	<i>er</i> ,	as <i>donner</i> , to give.
The second	<i>ir</i> ,	as <i>punir</i> , to punish.
The third	<i>avoir</i> ,	as <i>recevoir</i> , to receive.
The fourth	<i>re</i> ,	as <i>rendre</i> , to render.

N. B. It is necessary that the learner should be well acquainted with the manner of conjugating the two following verbs, because of the frequency of their occurrence in sentences, and in forming the compound tenses of all other verbs.

# CONJUGATION of the AUXILIARY VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Compound of the present.
<i>Avoir</i> , to have.	<i>Avoir eu</i> , to have had.
Participle active.	Compound of the past.
<i>Ayant</i> , having.	<i>Ayant eu</i> , having had.
Participle passive.	
<i>Eu</i> , had.	

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'ai</i> , I have.	<i>Nous avons</i> , we have.
<i>Tu as</i> , thou hast.	<i>Vous avez</i> , you or ye have.
<i>Il a</i> , he has.	<i>Ils ont</i> ,
<i>Elle a</i> , she has.	<i>Elles ont</i> , } they have.
Imperfect. Sing.	Plural.
<i>J'avois</i> , I had.	<i>Nous avions</i> , we had.
<i>Tu avois</i> , thou hadst.	<i>Vous aviez</i> , you had.
<i>Il avoit</i> , he had.	<i>Ils avoient</i> , they had.
Preterite. Sing.	Plural.
<i>J'eus</i> , I had.	<i>Nous eûmes</i> , we had.
<i>Tu eus</i> , thou hadst.	<i>Vous eûtes</i> , you had.
<i>Il eut</i> , he had.	<i>Ils eurent</i> , they had.

## Future. Singular.

*J'aurai*, I shall or will have.  
*Tu auras*, thou wilt, &c. have.  
*Il aura*, he will, &c. have.

## Plural.

*Nous aurons*, we shall, &c. have.  
*Vous aurez*, you will, &c. have.  
*Ils auront*, they will, &c. have.

## Conditional. Singular.

*J'aurais*, I should, could, would, or might have.  
*Tu aurais*, thou wouldst, &c. have.  
*Il auroit*, he would, &c. have.

## Plural.

*Nous aurions*, we should, &c. have.

*Vous auriez*, you would, &c. have.

*Ils auroient*, they would, &c. have.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive, *eu*, had, to the preceding: ex.

Compound of the Present.

*J'ai eu*, &c. I have had, &c.

Compound of the Imperfect.

*J'avois eu*, &c. I had had, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

*J'eus eu*, &c. I had had, &c.

Compound of the Future.

*J'aurai eu*, &c. I will or shall have had, &c.

Compound of the Conditional.

*J'aurais eu*, &c. I would, should, could, or might have had, &c.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Aie*, have thou.

*Qu'il ait*, let him have.

*Qu'elle ait*, let her have.

Plural.

*Ayons*, let us have.

*Ayez*, have ye or you.

*Qu'ils or elles aient*, let them have.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que j'aie*, that I have, or may have.

*tu aies*, thou mayest have.

*il ait*, he may have.



## Plural.

*Que nous ayons*, that we may have.  
*vous ayez*, you may have.  
*ils aient*, they may have.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Que j'eusse*, that I might have or had.  
*tu eusses*, thou mightest have.  
*il eût*, he might have.

## Plural.

*Que nous eussions*, that we might have.  
*vous eussiez*, you might have.  
*ils eussent*, they might have.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive *eu*, had, to the two preceding: ex.

## Compound of the Present.

*Que j'aie eu*, &c. that I may have had.

## Compound of the Preterite.

*Que j'eusse eu*, &c. that I might have had.

The learner ought to conjugate the preceding verb with a negation: ex.

*Je n'ai pas*, I have not;  
*Nous n'avons pas*, We have not;  
 always placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after it.

## CONJUGATION of the AUXILIARY VERB *ETRE*, TO BE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Compound of the Present.
<i>Etre</i> , to be.	<i>Avoir été</i> , to have been.
Participle active.	Compound of the past.
<i>Etant</i> , being.	<i>Ayant été</i> , having been.
Participle passive.	
<i>Été</i> , been.	

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Je suis*, I am.*Tu es*, thou art.*Il est*, he is.

## Plural.

*Nous sommes*, we are.*Vous êtes*, you are.*Ils sont*, they are.

## Imperfect. Sing.

*J'étois*, I was.*Tu étois*, thou wast.*Il étoit*, he was,

## Plural.

*Nous étions*, we were.*Vous étiez*, you were.*Ils étoient*, they were.

## Pret. Sing.

*Je fus*, I was.*Tu fus*, thou wast.*Il fut*, he was.

## Plural.

*Nous fûmes*, we were.*Vous fûtes*, you were.*Ils furent*, they were.

## Future. Singular.

*Je serai*, I shall or will be.*Tu seras*, thou wilt, &c. be.*Il sera*, he will, &c. be.

## Plural.

*Nous serons*, we shall, &c. be.*Vous serez*, you will, &c. be.*Ils seront*, they will, &c. be.

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je serois*, I would, could, should, or might be.*Tu serois*, thou wouldst, &c. be.*Il seroit*, he would, &c. be.

## Plural.

*Nous serions*, we should, &c. be.*Vous seriez*, you would, &c. be.*Ils seroient*, they would, &c. be.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive of this verb, *été*, been, to the simple tenses of the indicative mood of the verb *avoir*: ex.

## Compound of the Present.

*J'ai été*, &c. I have been, &c.

## Compound of the Imperfect.

*J'avois été*, &c. I had been, &c.

## Compound of the Preterite.

*J'eus été, &c.* I had been, &c.

## Compound of the Future.

*J'aurai été, &c.* I shall or will have been, &c.

## Compound of the Conditional.

*J'aurais été, &c.* I should; could, would, or might have been, &c.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Sois*, be thou.

*Qu'il soit*, let him be.

Plural.

*Soyons*, let us be.

*Soyez*, be ye.

*Qu'ils soient*, let them be.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je sois*, that I be, or may be.

*tu sois*, thou mayest be.

*il soit*, he may be.

Plural.

*Que nous soyons*, that we may be.

*vous soyez*, you may be.

*ils soient*, they may be.

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je fusse*, that I might be, or were.

*tu fusses*, thou mightest be.

*il fût*, he might be.

Plural.

*Que nous fussions*, that we might be.

*vous fussiez*, you might be.

*ils fussent*, they might be.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle past of this verb, *été*, been, to the two simple tenses of the subjunctive mood of the verb *avoir*: ex.

Compound of the Present.

*Que j'aie été*, that I may have been, &c.

## Compound of the Preterite.

*Que j'eusse été, &c.* that I might have been, &c.

This verb, as well as the preceding, is to be conjugated with the negation : ex.

*Je ne suis pas,*

*I am not.*

*Nous ne sommes pas,*

*We are not.*

*N. B.* Here it is peculiarly necessary to observe, that the two above verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, are only auxiliaries when they are joined with some participle passive of another verb ; otherwise, *être* may properly be called a *substantive verb* ; that is, a verb which only expresses the affirmation, without any inherent quality ; and the verb *avoir* is an *active one*, which signifies *to possess*.

## EXERCISES on the two AUXILIARY VERBS. .

## GENERAL OBSERVATION.

Every verb must agree with its nominative case in *person* and *number* ; but after collective nouns, such as *amas, foule, infinité, nombre, la plupart, &c.* followed by a genitive, the verb must agree with that genitive in number : ex.

*La plupart de ses amis l'ont abandonné,* Most of his friends have forsaken him.

In order to ease the learner, the different simple tenses are marked in the following exercises as far as the irregular verbs, when it is hoped every difficulty will be removed by practice and attention. The second person singular, being seldom or never used in conversation, has been omitted throughout the exercises on the verbs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** I have a book. -- I am happy. --- He has  
*heureux, adj.*

a hat which is too big. ---- We have no  
*trop, adv. grand, adj.*

money. --- We are not ambitious. ---- You have  
*argent, m. ambitieux, adj.*

a sword. -- You are very proud. . . . . Those girls  
*orgueilleux*, adj.

have modesty ; they are virtuous.

*modestie*, f.

*vertueux*, adj.

IMP. I had a friend. -- I was grateful. . . . . My  
*reconnoissant*, adj.

sister had no work, she was lazy. . . . We had  
*ouvrage*, m.  *paresseux*, adj.

a holiday, we were very glad of it. -- You had  
*congé*, m. *aise*, adj.

company, but you were not ready. -- Your brothers  
*compagnie*, f. *mais*, c. *prêt*, adj.

had learning, they were loved by every body.  
*savoir*, m. *aimé*, p.p. *de*

PRET. (As soon as) I had a fine horse, I was  
*Dès que*, c.

merry. . . . . My cousin had a little garden, he  
*de bonne humeur*. *cousin*, m.

was ingenious. -- As soon as we had bread we  
*étoit adroit*, adj. *pain*, m.

were satisfied. -- You had fine weather, you were  
*rassasié*, p.p. *temps*, m.

pleased. . . . . Your friends had beautiful flowers ;  
*content*, adj.

they were very careful of them.  
*soigneux*, adj.

FUT. I shall have discretion ; I shall be prudent.  
*discretion*, f.

-- Miss White shall have a bird that will be very  
*oiseau*, m.

tame. . . . . We shall have no books, we shall not  
*apprivoisé*, adj.

be learned. -- You shall have pens and paper ; you  
*savant*, adj.

will be busy. . . . . The English will have a good  
*occupé*, adj.

admiral ; they will be victorious.

*amiral*, m.

*victorieux*, adj.

COND. I could have a pretty dog. -- I would  
*joli*, adj. *chien*, m.

not be troublesome. - - - Mr. Thomas would have  
*importun*, adj.

good wine: it would be a delicious thing. - - We  
*ce* *délicieux*, adj. *chose*, f.

would have a dictionary: we would not be negligent.

- - - You would have good officers; you would be  
invincible. - - - These ladies would have a better  
*invincible*, adj.

reception; they would be thankful.

*accueil*, m.

*reconnoissant*, adj.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have patience and be indulgent. - - Let her have a  
gown; let her be happy. - - Let us have at least

some gratitude; let us be diligent. - - Let them  
*au moins*, adv.  
*reconnoissance*, f.

have partridges; let them be merry.

*perdrix*, f.

*joyeux*, adj.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may have riches. - - That I may  
be charitable. - - - That he may have scholars. - - -  
That he may be attentive. - - - That we may have a  
*attentif*, adj.

good house. - - - That we may be well lodged. - - -  
*bien*, adv. *logé*, p.p.

That you may have your money; that you may  
*argent*, m.

be paid. - - - That they may have apples: that  
*payé*, p.p.

they may be ripe.

*mûr*, adj.

PRET. That I might have generosity. - - - That I  
*générosité*, f.

might not be poor. - - - That he might have no  
*pauvre*, adj.

pleasure. - - - That he might be uneasy. - - - That  
*plaisir*, m. *inquiet*, adj.

we might have our share. - - - That we might not  
*part*, f.

be deceived. - - - That you might have a couple  
*trompé, p.p.* *couple, f.*  
 of fowls. - - - That you might be pleased. - - - That  
*content, adj.*  
 they might have no pension. - - - That they might  
 not be rewarded.  
*récompensé, p.p.*

### Promiscuous EXERCISES upon the COMPOUND TENSES.

I have had (a great deal) of trouble ; I have not  
*peine, f.*  
 been rewarded. - - - Your brother would have had  
 leave, if he had been diligent. - - - If you had  
*permission, f.*  
 married him, you would have had a tyrant  
*épousé, p.p.* *tyran, m.*  
 instead of a husband ; you never could have been  
*au lieu, p.* *mari, m.* *ne jamais*  
 happy. - - - - If we had fought, we could no  
*combattu, p.p.*  
 have been conquered. - - - Thomas has had two  
*vaincu, p.p.*  
 holidays, because he has been very active. - - -  
*congé, m.* *parceque, c.* *actif, adj.*  
 Your friend could have had a better watch, he  
*montre, f.*  
 would not have been cheated. - - - Your uncle and  
*trompé, p.p.*  
 my brother have been wet. - - - You could have  
*mouillé, p.p.*  
 killed a hare, if you had had a gun.  
*tué, p.p.* *lièvre, m.* *fusil, m.*

After these exercises, the learner ought to conjugate the two foregoing verbs, throughout the several tenses of the indicative mood only, first with an interrogation affirmative, and then with an interrogation negative :  
 ex.

## SINGULAR.

## Affirmatively.

<i>Ai-je ?</i>	have I ?	<i>Suis-je ?</i>	am I ?
<i>A-t-il ?</i>	has he ?	<i>Est-il ?</i>	is he ?
<i>Mon frère a-t-il ?</i>		has my brother ?	
<i>Sa fille est-elle ?</i>		is her daughter ?	

## Negatively.

<i>N'ai-je pas ?</i>	have I not ?	<i>Ne suis-je pas ?</i>	am I not ?
<i>N'a-t-il pas ?</i>	has he not ?	<i>N'est-il pas ?</i>	is he not ?
<i>Ma sœur n'a-t-elle pas ?</i>		has not my sister ?	
<i>Votre cousin n'est-il pas ?</i>		is not your cousin ?	

## PLURAL.

## Affirmatively.

<i>Avons-nous ?</i>	have we ?	<i>Sommes-nous ?</i>	are we ?
<i>Avez-vous ?</i>	have you ?	<i>Etes-vous ?</i>	are you ?
<i>Ont-ils ?</i>	have they ?	<i>Sont-ils ?</i>	are they ?
<i>Vos frères ont-ils ?</i>		have your brothers ?	&c.
<i>Ses filles sont-elles ?</i>		are his daughters ?	&c.

## Negatively.

<i>N'avons-nous pas ?</i>	have we not ?
<i>N'avez-vous pas ?</i>	have you not ?
<i>N'ont-ils pas ?</i>	have they not ?
<i>Ses enfans n'ont-ils pas ?</i>	have not his children ?
<i>Ne sommes-nous pas ?</i>	are we not ?
<i>N'êtes-vous pas ?</i>	are you not ?
<i>Ne sont-ils pas ?</i>	are they not ?
<i>Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas ?</i>	are not my sisters ? &c.

N. B. In the interrogations, it must be observed, that when there is a noun standing as a nominative to the verb, the pronouns *il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, though not expressed in English, must be expressed in French immediately after the verb, according to the person and number; and when the verb terminates with a vowel, a *-t-* is to be added in the third person



singular between the verb and the pronoun, the noun beginning the phrase: ex.

*Votre oncle a-t-il des enfants ?* Has your uncle any children?

that is, Your uncle, has *he* any children?

*Mon cousin aura-t-il congé ?* Will my cousin have a holiday?

that is, My cousin, will *he* have a holiday?

The same rule must be observed in the conjugation of the other verbs: ex.

*Votre frère joue-t-il du violon ?* Does your brother play on the violin?

*Sa sœur dinera-t-elle ici aujourd'hui ?* Will her sister dine here to-day?

But if the sentence begin with *que* interrogative, or an *adverb* followed by a noun, the pronoun is not to be expressed, and that *noun* is to be put after the verb: ex.

*Que fait votre sœur ?* What is your sister doing?

*Comment se porte votre frère ?* How does your brother?

When, in French, we make a general interrogation concerning a sudden pain, misfortune, accident, &c. we say,

*Qu'est-ce que c'est ?* What is the matter?

But if speaking *to* or *of* a person, we must use the verb *avoir*, and follow the above rule: ex.

*Qu'avez-vous ?* What is the matter with you?

*Qu'a-t-il ?* What is the matter with him?

*Qu'aviez-vous ?* What was the matter with you?

*Qu'avoit votre sœur ce matin ?* What was the matter with your sister this morning?

The learner will have no trouble in going through the other simple tenses of the indicative mood; and as

for the compounds, it needs only to be remarked, that *eu*, had, or *été*, been, is to be added to the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have: ex.

*Ai-je eu ?* have I had ?

*N'ai-je pas eu ?* have I not had ? &c.

*Ai-je été ?* have I been ?

*N'ai-je pas été ?* have I not been ? &c.

### *Promiscuous* EXERCISES on the preceding RULES.

Have I my books ? - - Am I not unhappy to  
 have lost his friendship ? - - Has he no money ?  
*perdu, p.p. amitié, f. malheureux, adj. de*  
 Is my sister arrived ? - - Has not your father a great  
*arrivé, p.p.*  
 deal of friendship for you ? - - - What is the matter  
 with you ? - - Have not your parents sent you  
*envoyé, p.p.*  
 all the money which you wanted ? - - - Have we  
*dont aviez, v. besoin*  
 not a garden ? - - - Are we not very happy ? - -  
 Have you a good gun ? - - - Are you dexterous ? -  
*adroit, adj.*  
 Have not my brother and sister a beautiful coach ? - -  
 Are not Paul and Thomas two pretty children ? - -  
*joli, adj.*  
 Are your brothers arrived ? - - - Are you not glad  
 to see them ? - - What is the matter with him ?  
*de voir, v.*  
 Have they not spoken to him ? - - Had you not a  
*parlé, p.p.*  
 little dog ? - - Was not your paper very good ? - - Are not  
 the English ladies generally handsomer than  
*généralement, adv.*  
 the French ? - - Shall you have occasion for your dic-  
*besoin, m. de*  
 tionary ? - - - Shall I not have the pleasure to see  
*de*

you to-morrow? - - - Were you not in the room? - - -  
*demain, adv. chambre, f.*

Shall we not have leave? - - - Will they not be  
 angry? - - - Could you not have had a better watch?  
*fâché, adj.*

- - - If France were as rich as England, would  
*Si, c. étoit*

it not be the best\* country in the world? - - -  
*ce, pro.*

Will you not be ashamed? - - - Has not your  
*honteux, adj.*

friend had bad weather? - - - What was the  
*mauvais, adj. tems, m.*

matter with him this morning? - - - Had not our  
 admiral better seamen than yours? - - Has he been  
*matelot, m.*

victorious? - - Would not your hat be too big? - - -  
*victorieux, adj. grand, adj.*

Is not your sister older than mine? - - Are you  
*âgé, adj.*

not happier than if you were married? - - - Shall  
*marié, p.p.*

not John have a holiday, if he be diligent? - - Has not  
*Jean est*

your cousin more money than you? - - - Was not your  
 wine very dear?

The learner will soon be convinced how necessary it  
 is to know these two verbs perfectly well; because, in-  
 dependently of being constantly used, the compound  
 tenses of all the others are formed with them. When  
 he is well acquainted with their usage, he will only have  
 to add the participle passive to any of their tenses:  
 ex.

*J'ai aimé*, I have loved, or did love.

*Je n'ai pas chanté*, I have not sung, or did not sing.

*Ai-je parlé*? have I spoken? or did I speak?

\* See the Degrees of Comparison, page 60.

*N'ai-je pas étudié ?* have I not studied ? or did I not study.

*Avez-vous dansé ?* have you danced ? or did you dance ?

*N'avez-vous pas écrit ?* have you not written ? or did you not write ?

*Je suis puni,* I am punished.

*Je ne suis pas attendu,* I am not expected.

*Suis-je aimé ?* am I loved ?

*Ne suis-je pas perdu ?* am I not undone ?

*Êtes-vous marié ?* are you married ?

*N'êtes-vous pas convaincu ?* are you not convinced ?

### REMARK on the Verb ETRE, TO BE.

In English, when this verb immediately precedes any noun, signifying *old, hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, or afraid*, it should be rendered in French by *avoir*, to have, and the adjective must be changed into its substantive : ex.

*Quel âge avez-vous ?*

How *old* are you ?

*J'ai sept ans,*

I *am* seven years *old*.

*Avez-vous faim ?*

*Are you hungry ?*

*Non, mais j'ai soif,*

No, but I *am* *thirsty*, &c.

### EXERCISES.

How old is your daughter ? She is seven

*Quel. pro.* *fille, f.*

years old. - - - My son will be eleven years old

*an, m.* *fil, m.*

(in the) month of April. - - - - I was very

*au mois, m.* *Avril, m.* *grand, adj.*

hungry when I arrived. - - - - Were you not

*quand, c.* *suis arrivé, v.*

very thirsty ? - - He is not afraid. - - You will

*grand, adj.* *peur, f.*

soon be warm. - - - Are you not cold ? - - -

*bientôt, adv.* *chaud, m.* *froid, m.*

How old are these two young children ? The

*enfant, m.*

one is three years old, and the other is not yet  
*encore, adv.*  
 four. - - - Was not my sister more than ten years old  
 when she died?  
*quand, adv. mourut, v.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Parl-er, to speak.
Participle active.	*ant, speaking.
Participle passive.	é, m. ée, f. spoken.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	<i>Avoir parlé</i> , to have spoken.
Past.	<i>Ayant parlé</i> , having spoken.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present. Singular.

*Je parl-e*, I speak, or I do speak, or, I am speaking.  
*Tu es*, thou speakest.  
*Il e*, he speaks.

#### Plural.

*Nous \*ons*, we speak.  
*Vous ez*, you speak.  
*Ils ent*, they speak.

\* Verbs in this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *e* or *g*, immediately succeeded by *A* or *O*, require, for the softening of their sound, that an *e* be added to the *g*, and a cedilla to the *c*. Stars are placed where these alterations are required.

† When in English, a participle active is joined to any of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be*, to express the continuation of the action, the auxiliary must be left out in French, and the participle put in the same tense, &c. with the auxiliary that is suppressed:

<i>Je parle</i> , I am speaking;	<i>Je prieis</i> , I was desiring;
<i>Vous parlez</i> , you are speaking;	<i>Nous chantions</i> , we were singing;
<i>Nous danserons</i> , we shall be dancing;	<i>Ils écriraient</i> , they would be writing;

and not *Je suis parlant*, *vous êtes parlant*, *j'étois priant*, &c. *nous serons dansant*, *ils seroient écrivant*, &c.

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je parl-\**ois, I was speaking, spoke, or did speak.*Tu* *\*ois*, thou wast speaking, &c.*Il* *\*oit*, he was speaking, &c.

## Plural.

*Nous* *ions*, we were speaking, &c.*Vous* *iez*, you were speaking, &c.*Ils* *\*oient*, they were speaking, &c.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je parl-\**ai, I spoke, or did speak.*Tu* *\*as*, thou spokedst.*Il* *\*a*, he spoke.

## Plural.

*Nous* *\*âmes*, we spoke.*Vous* *\*âtes*, you spoke.*Ils* *èrent*, they spoke.

## Future. Singular.

*Je parl-erai*, I shall or will speak.*Tu* *eras*, thou shalt or wilt speak.*Il* *era*, he shall or will speak.

## Plural.

*Nous* *erons*, we shall or will speak.*Vous* *erez*, you shall or will speak.*Ils* *eront*, they shall or will speak.

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je parl-erois*, I should, would, or might speak.*Tu* *erois*, thou shouldst, &c. speak.*Il* *eroit*, he should, &c. speak.

## Plural.

*Nous* *erions*, we should, &c. speak.*Vous* *eriez*, you should, &c. speak.*Ils* *eroient*, they should, &c. speak.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai parlé*, I have spoken.Imperfect. *J'avois parlé*, I had spoken.Preterite. *J'eus parlé*, I had spoken.

**Future.** *J'aurai parlé*, I shall or will have spoken.  
**Conditional.** *J'aurais parlé*, I should, would, could, have spoken.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

**Present. Singular.**

*Parl-e*, speak thou.

*Qu'il e*, let him speak.

**Plural.**

*\*ons*, let us speak.

*ez*, speak ye.

*Qu'ils ent*, let them speak.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**Present. Singular.**

*Que je parl-e*, that I may speak, or I speak.

*tu es*, thou mayest speak.

*il e*, he may speak.

**Plural.**

*nous ions*, that we may speak.

*vous iez*, you may speak.

*ils ent*, they may speak.

**Preterite. Singular.**

*Que je parl-\*asse*, that I might speak, or I spoke.

*tu \*asses*, thou mightest speak.

*il \*ât*, he might speak.

**Plural.**

*nous \*assions*, that we might speak.

*vous \*assiez*, you might speak.

*ils, \*assent*, they might speak.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

**Present.** *Que j'aie parlé*, that I may have spoken.

**Preterite.** *Que j'eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken.

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 regular verbs. The following are excepted: viz.

*Aller*, being very irregular, will be seen among the irregular verbs.

*Envoyer* is only irregular in the future and conditional present ; as, instead of saying, *j'envoyerais*, I will send, &c. *j'envoyerois*, I would send, &c. according to this conjugation, we say,

## Future.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'enverrai</i> , I will send.	<i>Nous enverrons</i> .
<i>Tu enverras</i> ,	<i>Vous enverrerez</i> .
<i>Il enverra</i> ,	<i>Ils enverront</i> .

## Conditional.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'enverrois</i> , I would send.	<i>Nous enverrions</i> .
<i>Tu enverrois</i> ,	<i>Vous enverriez</i> .
<i>Il enverroit</i> ,	<i>Ils enverraient</i> .

**PUER** (*sentir mauvais*). This verb is only used in the infinitive mood, present tense, imperfect, future of the indicative, and conditional. Formerly this verb was irregular in the three persons of the present tense of the indicative mood ; as *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put* ; custom has, however, reformed the abuse, and will have it, *Je pue*, *tu pues*, *il pue*.

Verbs ending in **AYER** and **OYER**, as *essayer*, to try, *envoyer*, to send, change the *y* into *i* wherever the letter *y* is immediately followed by an *e* mute : ex. *j'essaie*, *tu essaies*, *il essaie*, *j'envoie*, *tu envoies*, *il envoie*, &c.

The learner, having conjugated a verb *affirmatively* and *negatively*, ought to conjugate two others, with an *interrogation affirmative* and *negative*, in the indicative mood only, and so on through the other conjugations, before he attempts the exercises : ex.

## Affirmatively.

*Manges-tu ?* 'dost thou eat ?

*Mange-t-il ?* does he eat ?

*Parlons-nous ?* do we speak, &c.

## Negatively.

*Ne parlé-je pas ?* do I not speak ?

*Ma sœur ne chante-t-elle pas ?* does not my sister sing.

**N. B.** In many verbs, common usage does not admit an *interrogation* in the first person singular, present, of



the indicative mood.—Instead of saying, *Mangé-je ? Do I eat ? Punis-je ? Do I punish ? &c.* we say,

*Est-ce que je mange ? Est-ce que je punis ? &c.*

Some verbs, ending in *e* mute; in the first person singular, present of the indicative mood, change the *e* mute into *é* with an acute accent, and *je* after it; as *parlé-je*.

It has before been observed, that the compound tenses are easily formed, by adding the participle passive of the verb to any of the tenses of the auxiliaries *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, as they have been conjugated, either affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively: ex.

Affirmatively.

*J'ai dansé*, I have danced, or I did dance.

Negatively.

*Je n'ai pas parlé*, I have not spoken, or I did not speak.

Interrogatively-affirmatively.

*Avez-vous chanté ?* Have you sung, or did you sing ?

Interrogatively-negatively.

*N'a-t-il pas mangé ?* Has he not eaten, or did he not eat?

Observe, that we make use of

*Mener*,

To take, to carry,

*Amener*,

To bring,

*Emmener*,

To carry, or take away,

and all the compound verbs of *mener*, whenever we speak of rational or irrational beings to which nature has given the faculty of walking, if they be not deprived of it through illness or accident: in all other cases we make use of

*Porter*,

To carry, to take,

*Apporter*,

To bring,

*Emporter*,

To carry, or take away,

and all the compounds of *porter*.

N. B. It must be necessarily observed here, previously to the learner's translating the following exercises, that the *English auxiliary verbs*, *have*, *am*, *do*, *did*, *will*, *shall*, *can*, *let*, *may*, *would*, *could*, *should*, *might*, and often *ought*, are most commonly used, in that language, to

avoid that repetition of a preceding verb, or in answer to a question or foregoing sentence; to avoid the repetition of that verb, and often of one or more pronouns; but in French, the verb, expressed in the first member, or part of the sentence, must always be repeated, as well as the pronouns which it may govern: ex.

*Je vous prie de porter demain cette lettre à Monsieur D.*

I beg of you to carry that letter to-morrow to Mr. D.

*Je la lui porterai avec plaisir,*

I will, with pleasure, (carry it to him,) understood.

*Vous ne pourriez pas apprendre cette leçon en dix jours,*

You could not learn that lesson in ten days.

*Il me semble que je pourrois l'apprendre,*

It seems to me as if I could, (learn it,) understood.

*Attendez-vous vos sœurs aujourd'hui?*

Do you expect your sisters to-day?

*Oui, nous les attendons,*

Yes, we do, (expect them,) understood.

*Votre frère écrit-il à M. votre père?*

Is your brother writing to your father?

*Oui, il lui écrit à présent,*

Yes, he is now, (writing to him,) understood.

*Apprenez-vous le François?*

Are you learning French?

*Oui, je l'apprends,*

Yes, I am, (learning it,) understood.

*Avez-vous acheté les livres dont vous m'avez parlé?*

Have you bought the books which you mentioned to me?

*Non, je ne les ai pas encore achetés,*

No, I have not yet, (bought them,) understood.

*Ne devoient-ils pas faire savoir à leur père que leur frère est dans la détresse?*

Ought they not to let their father know that their brother is in distress?

*Certainement, ils devoient le lui faire savoir,*

Certainly, they ought, (to let him know it,) understood.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PRÉS.** I play sometimes, but I never  
*jou-er, v. quelquefois, adv. mais, c. ne ja-*  
 ver win. - - - How much does your brother  
*mais, adv. gagn-er, v. Combien, adv. ∞*  
 give for his board? - - We do not command;  
*donn-er, v. pension, f. ∞ command-er, v.*  
 we entreat. - - You always borrow; you  
*pri-er, v. toujours, adv. emprunt-er, v.*  
 never lend. - - - You are always speaking when  
*prêt-er, v. quand, adv.*  
 I write. - - - Why do you not grant  
*écris, v. Pourquoi, adv. ∞ accord-er, v.*  
 him that favour? - - - What do they ask  
*grâce, f. demander, v.*  
 you?

**IMP.** I was desiring them to sing a song. - -  
*pri-er, v. de chant-er, v. chanson, f.*  
 She was not speaking to you. - - Were we not jok-  
*badin-*  
 ing? - - Were you not scolding them when I came?  
*er, v. grond-er, v. vins, v.*  
 Yes, I was. - - - They were eating fish.  
*mang-er, v. poisson, m.*

**PRÉT.** I spoke to them (a long while). - - - Did  
*long-tems, adv.*  
 not the king forgive them? - - No, he did not.  
*roi, m. pardonn-er, v.*  
 We wept for joy when we found her. - - -  
*pleur-er, v. de joie, f. trouv-er, v.*  
 Why did you not play on Friday last? - - They  
*∞ Vendredi, m. dernier, adj.*  
 fastened the man to a tree, and then  
*li-er, v. arbre, m. ensuite, adv.*  
 robbed him of his watch, gold ring, and all the  
*vol-er, v. ∞ montre, f. bague, f.*  
 money he had in his pocket. - - - The soldiers first  
*poche, f.*

pillaged the town, and then slaughtered without  
*pill-er, v.* *égorg-er, v.*

pity the old men, women, and children.

*pitié, f.* *vicillard, m.*

Fut. I will buy a watch the first time I  
*achet-er, v.* *fois, f.*

go to London. - - Will not your father send  
*irai, v.* *envoy-er, v.*

you to school this winter? - - - What shall we give  
*école, f.* *hiver, m.*

him? - - - Will you not carry the children to the  
*men-er, v.* *enfant, m.*

play? - - - They will empty the bottle if you  
*comédie, f.* *vid-er, v.* *bouteille, f.*

do not take it away.

*emport-er, v.*

Comp. I would lend them money if  
*prêt-er, v.* *leur*

they were not so idle. - - - Would not your  
*paresseux, adj.*

mother despise such a conduct? - - Why should  
*mépris-er, v.* *tel, adj.* *conduite, f.*

we send them thither? - - - I am sure you would  
*sûr, adj.*

marry her, if she were rich. - - - Would they  
*épous-er, v.* *étoit riche, adj.*

not pay us, if they had money?

*pay-er, v.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Bridle my horse, and bring him to  
*Brid-er, v.* *cheval, m.* *amen-er, v.*

me. - - - Give a chair to that lady. - - Let her not  
*chaise, f.* *dame, f.*

(come up,) for I am engaged. - - - Let us carry those  
*mont-er, v.* *engagé, p.p.*

peaches to Mrs. D\*\*\*. - - - Do not neglect your  
*pêche, f.* *néglig-er, v.*

affairs. - - I promise that I will not. - Let them hunt.  
*affaire, f. promets, v. chasser, v.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may help you. - - Though\* he  
*aid-er, v. Quoique, c.*  
do not approve of my plan. - - - - Provided\*  
*approuv-er, v. plan, m. Pourvu que, c.*  
we avoid their company. - - - That you may  
*évit-er, v. compagnie, f.*  
try that gun. - - - That they may not com-  
*éprouv-er, v.*  
mand.

PRET. That I might change my opinion. - - -  
*chang-er, d' opinion, f.*  
That he might eat an apple. - - - That we might not  
*pomme, f.*  
fall into their hands. - - - That you might  
*tomb-er, v. dans, p. main, f.*  
encourage the industrious. - - - That they might  
*encourag-er, v. industrieux, adj.*  
exercise their talents.  
*exerc-er, v. talent, m.*

## Promiscuous EXERCISES on the COMPOUND TENSES.

I have forgotten to bring your penknife. - - -  
*oubl-er, v. de canif, m.*  
He has not yet spoken to us. - - Has she brought  
*encore, adv. son*  
her work with her? Yes, she has. - - Have we not gain-  
*gagn-*  
ed our cause? - - Why have you not yet begun  
*er, v. commenc-er, v.*  
your exercise? - - - You had taken the mustard  
*thème, m. emporté moutarde, f.*

\* Conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood, as will be seen hereafter.

away. . . . You would have judged more favour-  
 ably of him. . . . Stay here till\*  
 ablement, adv. Rester, v. ici, adv. jusqu' à ce que, c.  
 we have dined. . . . Could we not have assisted  
 din-er, v. subj. aid-er, v.  
 that family? . . . They have broken all the panes  
 famille, f. cass-er, v. carreau, m.  
 of glass in their windows, because they had  
 vitre, f. de, p. fenêtre, f. parceque, c.  
 not illuminated as it had been ordered. . . .  
 illumin-er, v. comme, adv. ordonn-er, v.  
 I shall have 'dined 'soon. . . . We would have  
 bientôt, adv.  
 sent them to prison, if they had resisted. . . .  
 envoy-er, v. en prison, f. résist-er, v.  
 'That we may have denied the fact. . . . Had you  
 ni-er, v. fail, m.  
 not imitated their manners? . . . They had not ex-  
 imit-er, v. manière, f. éxé-  
 cuted his commands. . . . Had I not light-  
 cut-er, v. commandement, m. allu-  
 ed the fire? . . . 'They would have carried him to  
 mer, v. feu, m.  
 the concert if I had not hindered them  
 empêch-er, v.  
 (from it). . . . We might have accepted of his  
 en accept-er, v.  
 offers. . . . Why did you not?  
 offre, f.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Pun-ir, to punish.
Participle active.	issant, punishing.
Participle passive.	i, m. ie, f. punished.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	Avoir puni, to have punished.
Past.	Ayant puni, having punished.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Je* pun-is, I punish, I do punish, or I am punishing.

*Tu* is,

*Il* it,

## Plural.

*Nous* *issons*, we punish, &c.

*Vous* *issez*,

*Ils* *issent*,

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je* pun-*issois*, I did punish, or I was punishing, &c.

*Tu* *issois*,

*Il* *issoit*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *issions*, we did punish, &c.

*Vous* *issiez*,

*Ils* *issoient*,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je* pun-is, I punished, or I did punish.

*Tu* is,

*Il* it,

## Plural.

*Nous* *îmes*, we punished, &c.

*Vous* *îtes*,

*Ils* *irent*,

## Future. Singular.

*Je* pun-*irai*, I shall or will punish.

*Tu* *iras*,

*Il* *ira*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *irons*, we shall or will punish.

*Vous* *irez*,

*Ils* *iront*,

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je pun-irois*, I should, would, could, or might punish.

*Tu irois*,

*Il iroit*,

## Plural.

*Nous irions*, we should, &c. punish.

*Vous iriez*,

*Ils iroient*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai puni*, I have punished.

Imperfect. *J'avois puni*, I had punished.

Preterite. *J'eus puni*, I had punished.

Future. *J'aurai puni*, I shall, &c. have punished.

Conditional. *J'aurois puni*, I should, &c. have punished.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Pun-is*, punish thou.

*Qu'il isse*, let him punish.

Plural.

*issons*, let us punish.

*issez*, punish ye.

*Qu'ils issent*, let them punish.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je pun-isse*, that I may punish, or I punish.

*tu isses*,

*il isse*,

Plural.

*nous issions*, that we may punish.

*vous issiez*,

*ils issent*,



## Preterite. Singular.

*Que je pun-isse*, that I might punish, or I punished.

*tu isses,*  
*il fit,*

## Plural.

*nous issions*, that we might punish.  
*vous issiez,*  
*ils issent,*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie puni*, that I may have punished.

Preterite. *Que j'eusse puni*, that I might have punished.

After the same manner are conjugated about two hundred regular verbs; the following are excepted, as being irregular :

*Acquérir*, to acquire.

*Assaillir*, to assault.

*Bouillir*, to boil.

*Courir*, to run.

*Cueillir*, to gather.

*Dormir*, to sleep.

*Faillir*, to fail.

*Fuir*, to flee, to avoid.

*Mentir*, to lie.

*Mourir*, to die.

*Offrir*, to offer.

*Ouvrir*, to open.

*Partir*, to set out.

*Se repentir*, to repent.

*Sentir*, to smell.

*Servir*, to serve.

*Sortir*, to go out.

*Souffrir*, to suffer.

*Tenir*, to hold.

*Venir*, to come.

*Vêtir*, to clothe.

And their compounds.

## EXERCISES UPON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	I always	finish	my work
	<i>toujours</i> , adv.	<i>fin-ir</i> , v.	<i>ouvrage</i> , m.
before the others. - -	Your friend	does not succeed	
<i>avant</i> , p.	<i>ami</i> , m.	<i>réuss-ir</i> , v.	
in his undertaking. - -	Do we not furnish	arms	
<i>dans</i> , p.	<i>entreprise</i> , f.	<i>fourn-ir</i> , v.	<i>arme</i> , f.
against ourselves? - -	Why do you hate	him? - -	
<i>contre</i> , p.		<i>ha-ir</i> , v.	

They cure the diseases of the body, and  
*guér-ir, v. maladie, f. corps, m.*  
 not those of the mind.

IMP. I was building my house when  
*bât-ir, v. maison, f. quand, adv.*  
 you demolished yours. -- Was he not enjoying  
*démol-ir, v. jou-ir de, v.*  
 a good estate? -- We hated him, because he did  
*bien, m. parceque, c.*  
 not act kindly towards us. -- On  
*ag-ir, v. honnêtement, adv. envers, p. Sur, p.*  
 what were you reflecting? -- The mountains were  
*réfléch-ir, v. montagne, f.*  
 resounding with their cries.  
*retent-ir, v. de cri, m.*

PRET. I warranted them very good. -- Did not  
*garant-ir, v.*  
 your master accomplish his promise? -- We (leap-  
*accompl-ir, v. promesse, f. fran-*  
 ed over) the ditch, and seized the guilty. --  
*chir, v. fossé, m. sais-ir, v. coupable, adj.*  
 Why did you not applaud that pretty act-  
*applaud-ir, v. à joli, adj. act-*  
 ress? I did, with all my might. -- Did not the sol-  
*rice, f. de, p. forces, f. pl. sol-*  
 diers obey the commands of their gene-  
*ral, m. obé-ir, v. aux commandement, m.*  
 ral?

FUT. When shall I banish all these  
*bann-ir, v. tout, adj.*  
 thoughts from my mind? -- This plant will soon  
*pensée, f. plante, f.*  
 blossom, if you water it often. -- We shall  
*fleur-ir, v. arroser, v. souvent, adv.*  
 warn your relations of it. -- Shall you not  
*avert-ir, v. parent, m.*  
 enjoy, as we do, the pure plea-  
*uir comme, adv. des pur, adj.*

spres of the country? -- Her children will bless  
*bén-ir, v.*  
 her for it.

COND. I would choose this cloth, if I  
*chois-ir, v. drap, m.*  
 were in your place. --- Would he not blush, if he  
*roug-ir, v.*  
 acted so? ---- We would not punish them, if they  
*ainsi, adv.*  
 were diligent. -- Would you not act with less  
*avec, p. moins, adv.*  
 severity? --- They could furnish us with arms and  
*sévérité, f. en*  
 troops, if we wanted any.  
*troupe, f. avoir besoin, v.*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Do not fill the glasses. --- Let him enjoy  
*rempl-ir, v. verre, m.*  
 the fruit of his labours. -- Well! let him, I do not  
*du travail, m. Eh bien, int.*  
 hinder him from it. --- Let us reflect on what we  
*empêch-er, v. à*  
 have to do. -- Let them define the question.  
*à faire, v. défin-ir, v.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may not perish. --- I wish  
*pér-ir, v. souhait-er, v.*  
 he may succeed. --- That we may not (bear hard-  
*réuss-ir, v. pât-ir, v.*  
 ships). - That you may not hate us. -- Provided they  
 do not (grow tall.)  
*grand-ir, v.*

PRÆT. That I might refresh my memory. ---  
*rafraîch-ir, v. mémoire, f.*

That she might not roast the meat. -- That we might  
*rôt-ir, v.*  
 (become younger). -- That you might punish the  
*rajeun-ir, v.*  
 idle. -- That they might not (grow old).  
*vieill-ir, v.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

I have filled my cellar with good wine. ---  
*rempl-ir, v. cave, f. de*  
 Has he not leaped over the ditch? -- We had finished  
 our work. ---- They would have seized him. ----  
*outrage, m.*  
 We should have perished without any assistance. ---  
*sans, p. aucun secours, m.*  
 When shall I have built my house? --- I have  
*bât-ir, v.*  
 (very much) weakened his courage. -- Though  
*beaucoup, adv. affoibl-ir, v. Quoique, c.*  
 they have adorned their gardens to dazzle  
*embell-ir, v. jardin, m. pour éblou-ir, v.*  
 the vulgar, they have not succeeded, because  
*vulgaire, m. parceque, c.*  
 they have disobeyed their father and mother.  
*désobé-ir, v. à.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Rec-evoir, to receive.  
 Part. active. *evant*, receiving.  
 Part. pass. \**u, m. ue, f.* received.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Avoir reçu*, to have received.  
 Past. *Ayant reçu*, having received.

\* Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in c, require for the softening of their sound, that a cedilla be added to the (ç), whenever it is followed by o or v.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Je* reç-*ois*, I receive, I do receive, or I am receiving.

*Tu* *ois*,

*Il* *oit*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *evons*, we receive, &c.

*Vous* *eviez*,

*Ils* *oivent*,

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je* rec-*evois*, I did receive, or I was receiving.

*Tu* *evois*,

*Il* *evoit*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *evions*, we did receive, &c.

*Vous* *eviez*,

*Ils* *evoient*,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je* reç-*us*, I received, or I did receive.

*Tu* *us*,

*Il* *ut*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *ûmes*, we received, &c.

*Vous* *ûtes*,

*Ils* *urent*,

## Future. Singular.

*Je* rec-*evrai*, I shall or will receive.

*Tu* *evras*,

*Il* *evra*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *evrons*, we shall or will receive.

*Vous* *evrez*,

*Ils* *evront*,

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je rec-eurois*, I should, would, could, or might receive.

*Tu eurois*,

*Il euroit*,

## Plural.

*Nous eurons*, we should, &c. receive.

*Vous eussiez*,

*Ils eussent*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai reçu*, I have received.

Imperfect. *J'avois reçu*, I had received.

Preterite. *J'eus reçu*, I had received.

Future. *J'aurai reçu*, I shall, &c. have received.

Conditional. *J'aurois reçu*, I should, &c. have received.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Reçois*, receive thou.

*Qu'il oive*, let him receive.

## Plural.

*evons*, let us receive.

*eviez*, receive ye.

*Qu'ils oivent*, let them receive.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Que je reç-oive*, that I may receive or I receive.

*tu oives*,

*il oive*,

## Plural.

*nous evions*, that we may receive.

*vous eviez*,

*ils oivent*,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Que je reç-usse*, that I might receive, or I received.

*tu usses,*

*ilût,*

## Plural.

*nous ussions*, that we might receive.

*vous ussiez,*

*ils ussent,*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie reçu*, that I may have received.

Preterite. *Que j'eusse reçu*, that I might have received.

*Recevoir des nouvelles de* To hear from somebody.  
*quelqu'un,*

After the same manner are conjugated seven verbs only : the following are excepted, being irregulars :

*Asseoir*, to sit down.

*Déchoir*, to decay.

*Falloir*, (verb impersonal,) to be needful.

*Mouvoir*, to move.

*Pleuvoir*, (v. imp.) to rain.

*Pouvoir*, to be able.

*Savoir*, to know.

*Valoir*, to be worth.

*Voir*, to see.

*Vouloir*, to be willing.

And their compounds.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I entertain great hopes from his  
*conc-evoir*, v. *espérance*, f.

conduct. - - - I am to write to your brother to-  
*conduite*, f. \* *écrire*, v.

morrow, to let him know that your father is  
*pour faire*, v. *savoir*, v.

arrived. - - A commander ought to be intrepid  
*commandant*, m. *d-evoir*, v.

\* When the verb *to be* is used in the present or imperfect tenses of the indicative mood, and precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting a futurity in the action, it is to be rendered in French by the same tenses of the verb *devoir*, and not by *être* : ex.

*Je dois aller au parc,*

I am to go to the park.

*Nous devons lui écrire,*

We were to write to him.

in the midst of dangers. - - - He is to go  
*au milieu, m.* *aller, v.*  
 and breakfast at my uncle's, next Sunday,  
*déjeuner, v. chez, p.*  
 and he is to come and sup with us. - - - We  
*venir, v. souper, v.*  
 sometimes entertain a hatred for persons who  
*quelquefois, adv. de la haine, f.*  
 deserve our friendship. - - - Do you not per-  
*mériter, v. amitié, f. ap-*  
 ceive a mountain beyond that tree? - - Yes,  
*perc-evoir, v. derrière, p.*  
 I do. - - We are to remit him the value in  
*remettre, v. valeur, f. en, p.*  
 goods or in money. - - Are you not to dine  
*marchandise,*  
 with my father and mother to-morrow? - - Men com-  
*demain, adv.*  
 monly owe their virtues or their vices to edu-  
*d-evoir, v.*  
 cation (as much as) to nature. - - - Are these young  
*autant que, c.*  
 ladies to go to the ball? - - - No, they are not. - -  
*aller, v. bal, m.*  
 A young man ought to love the society of those who  
*société, f.*  
 are the most learned and modest.

Imp. I owed four guineas to your aunt when she  
*guinée, f.*  
 died. - - - Was not your brother to receive that mo-  
*mourut, v.*  
 ney last Thursday? - - We received his tiresome  
*Jeudi, m. ennuyant, adj.*  
 visits, because we were obliged to it. - - - Were you  
*obliger, v.*  
 not to let them know it sooner? - - They were  
*faire, v. savoir, v.*  
 not to stay above six weeks.  
*rester, v. plus de, adv.*



**PRÉS.** I received yesterday, with (a great deal) *bien, adv.*  
 of pleasure, the books you sent me. - - As soon  
*envoyer, v.*  
 as we perceived the danger, we warned him of it.  
*avertir, v.*  
 - - - They heard yesterday from your brother.

**FUT.** I shall entertain a bad opinion of  
*mauvais, adj.*  
 you if you do not avoid Mr. R\*\*\*\*'s company. - -  
*éviter, v.*  
 We shall owe him 'nothing 'more, after this  
*après, p.*  
 month. - - - I hope you will receive all my letters dur-  
*pen-*  
 ing my absence, and they will hear from their  
*dant, p.*  
 father (in a short time.)  
*dans peu, adv.*

**COND.** I should answer your brother's  
*\* répondre, v. à*  
 letter, but I have not time. - - - Ought not  
*le tems, m.*  
 your sister to give your mother an account  
*rendre, v.* *en compte, m.*  
 of all her actions? - - - She would soon per-  
*bientôt, adv.*

\* When the word *should* expresses a duty or necessity, or can with propriety be turned into *ought*, it is rendered in French by the conditional present of the verb *devoir* : ex.

*Je devrois aller le voir,* I should, or ought to go and see him.  
*Vous devriez le secourir dans sa misère, &c.* You should, or ought to help him in his misery, &c.

The word *should*, or *ought*, when joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

*J'aurais dû l'obliger à rester ici,* I should, or ought to have obliged him to stay here.  
*Nous aurions dû revenir plutôt,* We should, or ought to have come back sooner.

ceive the danger, if she knew the consequences  
*savoit, v.*  
 of it. - - - Children should every day learn  
*apprendre, v.*  
 something by heart. - - - You should not despise  
*cœur, m. mépriser, v.*  
 the advice that he gives you. - - - Should they,  
*avis, m.*  
 after what they have done, expect to  
*après, p. fait, p.p. s'attendre, v. à*  
 receive favours? - - - Grammar, geography, history,  
 music, are sciences and arts which ladies should never  
 neglect.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Receive this small present as a token of my  
*marque, f.*  
 friendship.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and PRET. Though I perceive ships  
*Quoique, c. vaisseau, m.*  
 (afar off,) I cannot distinguish them. - - - He  
*de loin, adv. ne saurois, v.*  
 wrote to us by the first post, that we might  
*écrivit, v. ordinaire, m.*  
 receive his orders (in proper time.)  
*à tems, adv.*

### Mind these COMPOUND TENSES well!

I have not yet received his answer. - - -  
*encore, adv. réponse, f.*  
 You should have (been making) your theme this  
*\* faire, v.*  
 morning instead of playing. - - He has entertained  
*matin, m. au lieu, p.*  
 the hope of living here all his life. - - She ought  
*vivre, v. ici, adv. vie, f.*  
 to have thanked him for the good advice he  
*remercier, v. de, p.*



## Plural.

*Nous vend-ions*, we did sell, &c.*Vous*       *iez*,*Ils*       *oient*,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je vend-is*, I sold, or did sell.*Tu*       *is*,*Il*       *it*,

## Plural.

*Nous*   *îmes*, we sold, &c.*Vous*   *îtes*,*Ils*   *irent*,

## Future. Singular.

*Je vend-rai*, I shall, or will sell.*Tu*       *ras*,*Il*       *ra*<sub>1</sub>,

## Plural.

*Nous*   *rons*, we shall, or will sell.*Vous*   *rez*,*Ils*   *ront*,

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je vend-rois*, I should, could, would, or might sell.*Tu*       *rois*,*Il*       *roit*,

## Plural.

*Nous*   *rions*, we should, &c.*Vous*   *riez*,*Ils*   *roient*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.       *J'ai vendu*, I have sold.Imperfect.   *J'avois vendu*, I had sold.Preterite.   *J'eus vendu*, I had sold.Future.       *J'aurai vendu*, I shall, &c. have sold.Conditional.   *J'au-rois vendu*, I should, &c. have sold.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

Vend-*s*, sell thou.  
*Qu'il* e, let him sell.

## Plural.

ons, let us sell.  
 ez, sell ye.  
*Qu'ils* ent, let them sell.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Que je* vend-*e*, that I may sell, or I sell.  
*tu* es,  
*il* e,

## Plural.

*nous* ions, that we may sell.  
*vous* iez,  
*ils* ent,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Que je* vend-*isse*, that I might sell, or I sold.  
*tu* isses,  
*il* it,

## Plural.

*nous* issions, that we might sell.  
*vous* issiez,  
*ils* issent,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie vendu*, that I may have sold.

Preterite. *Que j'eusse vendu*, that I might have sold.

After the same manner are conjugated about forty verbs. The following are excepted as being irregular.

*Absoudre*, to absolve.

*Battre*, to beat.

*Boire*, to drink.

*Circoncire*, to circumcise.

*Conclure*, to conclude.  
*Conduire*, to conduct.  
 And all the verbs ending  
 in *uire*.  
*Confire*, to preserve.  
*Connoître*, to know.  
 And all those ending in  
*ôître*.  
*Coudre*, to sew.  
*Craindre*, to fear.  
 And all those ending in  
*indre*.  
*Croire*, to believe.  
*Dire*, to tell.  
*Ecrire*, to write.  
*Faire*, to make, to do.  
*Frïre*, to fry.

*Lire*, to read.  
*Mettre*, to put.  
*Moudre*, to grind.  
*Naître*, to be born.  
*Paitre*, to graze, to feed.  
*Plaire*, to please.  
*Prendre*, to take.  
*Rire*, to laugh.  
*Suffire*, to suffice, to be  
 sufficient.  
*Suivre*, to follow.  
*Se taire*, to hold one's  
 tongue.  
*Traire*, to milk.  
*Vaincre*, to conquer.  
*Vivre*, to live.  
 And their compounds.

*N. B.* Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *p*, as *romp-re*, *corromp-re*, &c. take a *t* in the third person singular of the present tense indicative mood: ex. *je romps*, *tu romps*, *il rompt*: the rest are conjugated as *vendre*.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** I do not mean to wrong  
*prétend-re, v.* *faire tort, v.*  
 him. - - - Is your mother coming down? - - - We  
*lui, pro.* *descend-re, v.*  
 expect our friend, Mr. A\*\*\*. - - - Do not you  
*attend-re, v.*  
 forbid her to go there? - - - They sell  
*défend-re, v.* *de aller, v.*  
 bad fruit.  
*mauvais, adj.*

**IMP.** Did I not interrupt him, while  
*interromp-re, v.* *pendant que, c.*

he was answering them? - - - She was melting into  
*répond-re, v.* *leur* *fond-re, v. en, p.*  
 tears, when you arrived. - - Were we not losing  
*larme, f.* *arriver, v.* *perdre, v.*  
 our time? - - You were not spreading your nets. - -  
*tems, m.* *étend-re, v.* *filet, m.*  
 Did they corrupt our manners?  
*corromp-re, v.* *mœurs, f. pl.*

PRÆT. (As soon as) I had received my money, I  
*Dès que, c.*  
 returned them what they had lent me. - - - Did  
*rend-re, v.* *prêter, v.*  
 he not hear you? - - - We (waited for) them a  
*entend-re, v.* *attend-re, v.*  
 month. - - (For how much) did you sell it to them? - -  
*mois, m.* *Combien, adv.*  
 They spilled all the wine. . .  
*répand-re, v.*

FUT. I shall shear my flock (in the)  
*tond-re, v.* *troupeau, m.* *au*  
 month of May. - - - If you do not take care,  
*Mai, m.* *prenez, v.* *garde, f.*  
 the dog will bite you. - - Shall we not lose, if  
*mord-re, v.*  
 we play? - - You will melt it, if you put  
*fond-re, v.* *mettez, v.*  
 it into the fire. No, I will not. - - They<sup>1</sup> shall<sup>2</sup> not<sup>3</sup>  
*dans, p.*  
 hear<sup>3</sup> of<sup>6</sup> me<sup>7</sup> (any<sup>4</sup> more).  
*entend-re parler, v.* *plus, adv.*

COND. Should I not do him the jus-  
*rend-re, v.*  
 tice he deserves? - - Would he not interrupt you? - -  
*mériter, v.*  
 We would defend them if we could. - - Why -  
*défend-re, v.* *pouvions, v.*  
 would you not answer, if I were speaking to  
*répond-re, v.*

you? - - - Your hens would (lay eggs) every day, if  
*poule, f. pond-re, v.*  
 they were not so fat.  
*gras, adj.*

### • IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Give<sup>t</sup> God<sup>s</sup> thanks<sup>s</sup>. - - - Let her not come  
*Rend-re, v. Dieu, m. grâce, f. à*  
 down. - - Let us (give in) our accounts faithfully  
*rend-re, v. compte, m. fidèle-*  
 fully. - - - Do not lose my book. - - - Let them hear  
*ment, adv.*  
 the voice of the Lord.  
*voix, f. Seigneur, m.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

- PRES. and PART. Speak loud, that I may hear  
*haut, adv.*  
 what you say. - - She plays (upon the) harpsichord,  
*dites, v. du clavecin, m.*  
 though you forbid <sup>to</sup> her to do it. - - -  
*quoique, c. lui de faire, v.*  
 He wrote to us, that we might not expect him.  
*écrivit, v.*

### • COMPOUND TENSES.

I have lost my book; have you found  
*perd-re, v. trouver, v.*  
 it? - - - She has broken her fan. - - - Have you  
*romp-re, v. éventail, m.*  
 not interrupted me several times? - - - I had not  
 then answered his letter. - - - If they (had  
*alors, adv. à étoient*  
 gone) there, would they not have lost their time?  
*allés, v.*  
 Yes, they would. - - He says he would have sold us  
*dit, v.*  
 very good wine. - - - Had you not forbidden her to  
*de*  
 speak? - - That they might have (waited for) us.



# Recapitulatory EXERCISES on the regular verbs of the four CONJUGATIONS.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** I love attentive scholars, but I punish  
*attentif, adj. écolier, m. mais, c.*  
 severely laziness and inattention. - - Your  
*sévèrement, adv. paresse, f.*  
 brother does not receive this news with plea-  
*nouvelle, f.*  
 sure. - - Do we not expect your mother to-day? - -  
*mère, f.*  
 We hope (that) you will succeed in your un-  
*espérer, v.*  
 dertaking. - - Why do you not fulfil  
*Pourquoi, adv. accomplir, v.*  
 your promise? - - Are you to expect the least  
*promesse, f.*  
 favour from your parents and friends? - - They per-  
*grâce, f.*  
 ceive the danger, and they do not endeavour  
*percevoir, v. lâcher, v.*  
 to shun it.  
*de éviter, v.*

**IMP.** I was speaking of your aunt when you  
*tante, f.*  
 (came in), and was doing her the justice she  
*entrer, v. rendre, v. lui*  
 deserves. - - Mr. N. did not act towards your  
*mériter, v. agir, v.*  
 son with much tenderness. - - Mr. P. and I were  
 *fils, m. tendresse, f.*  
 answering your letters when you arrived. - - You  
*arriver, v.*  
 undoubtedly entertained great hopes from his  
*sans doute, adv.*  
 last voyage. - - They were spending their  
*dernier, adj. dépenser, v.*

money in trifles, instead of buying  
*en, p. bagatelle, au lieu de, adv. achetés, v.*  
 books.

PART. I built this house in one thousand seven  
*maison, f.*  
 hundred and seventy-nine. - - Your father yesterday  
*hier, adv.*  
 received agreeable news. - - She burst into tears  
*fondre, v.*  
 after your cousin was gone. - - We sent him  
*après que, c. parti, p. p.*  
 a great deal of money unknown to your mo-  
*à l'inçu, p. de*  
 ther. - - Why did you not finish your work soon-  
*ouvrage, m.*  
 er? - - (As soon as) they perceived us, they (ran  
*Dès que, c. prirent la*  
 away.)  
*fuile.*

FUT. I will (give in) my accounts (at the) be-  
*au*  
 ginning of next . . . week. - - - My friend,  
*prochain, adj. semaine, f.*  
 Mrs. R. will dine with me next Wednesday. - - We  
*Mercredi, m.*  
 shall seize the first opportunity to thank him  
*saisir, v. occasion, f. pour remercier, v.*  
 for his kindness. - - You will soon entertain  
*de bonté, f. bientôt, adv.*  
 a better opinion of him. - - Will not your sister  
*sœur, f.*  
 (come down stairs) to day?  
*descendre, v.*

COND. I would lay two guineas, your  
*gager, v.*  
 uncle is not yet arrived. - - If my father were rich, he  
*arriver, v. étoit*

would rebuild his country-house. - - Should we not  
*rebâtir, v.* *Devoir, v.*

express our gratitude toward those who  
*exprimer, v.* *reconnaissance, f.*

do us good? - - If you would, you could ren-  
*font, v.* *bien, m.* *vouliez, v.* *ren-*

der great services to your country. - - - I am cer-  
*dre, v.* *pays, m.*

tain (that) they would reward you, if you  
*récompenser, v.*

deserved it.  
*mériter, v.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Discharge with equity the duties of thy  
*Remplir, v.* *équité, f.* *devoir, m.*

office. - - - Let him receive the punishment due  
*charge, f.* *punition, f.* *dû, p.p.*

to his crime. - - Let us give 'God thanks' for the  
*rendra, v.* *grâce, f. à de*

good news we received yesterday. - - Imitate the great  
*hier, adv.*

actions of your ancestors. - - Let them enjoy the  
*ancêtres, m.* *jouir, v. de*

fruit of their labours.  
*travail, m.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Write to me by the first post,  
*Ecrivez, v.* *ordinaire, m.*

that I may receive your letter before my de-  
*afin que, c.* *avant, p.* *dé-*

parture from London. - - Though he hear  
*part, m.* *Quoique, c.* *entendre, v. subj.*

what you say, yet he does not understand you. - -  
*dites, v.* *comprendre, v.*

She is never pleased, though we obey her in  
*content, adj.* *lui en, p.*

(every thing). - - - I will tell it to you, pro-  
*out* *dirai, v.* *pour-*

vided you do not speak of it to your sister. - -  
*vû que, c.*

He will pay them, provided they wait a little  
*attendre, v.*

longer.

*plus long-tems, adv.*

PAET. I wrote to your father (some time ago),  
*écrits, v. il y a quelque tems*

that he might engage Mr. W. to come and  
*afin que, c.*

spend the holidays with us. - - - That she might  
*passer, v. vacance, f.*

reflect on her own conduct, and not on that of  
*propre, adj.*

others. - - He would not come to see us, lest  
*voulut, v. de peur que, c.*

we should perceive his bad designs. - - Your uncle  
*ne oncle, m.*

desired that you might sell his two horses to  
*ordonner, v.*

Mr. B. - I should be very sorry if they fell  
*que, c. tomber, v. subj.*

into bad hands.

*en*

### Promiscuous EXERCISES on the COMPOUND TENSES.

I have spoken to my father of it, but he has not  
yet given me any answer. - - Have I not faith-  
*encore, adv. de*

fully executed your orders? - - Has your sister suc-  
ceeded in her undertaking? - - Yes, she has, and I  
have congratulated her upon it. - - We have not yet re-

*féliciter, v. en*  
ceived any remittance from America. - - Mrs. N. told  
*remise, f.*

~~you~~ you had already sold the half of your  
*déjà, adv. moitié, f.*

goods. - - - Why did you not pay those poor  
*marchandise, f.*

people? - - - He would have been punished, if  
*gens, m. et, f. pl.*

I had not defended his right. - - - They have sold  
*droit, m.*

him four dozen of handkerchiefs at an exorbitant  
*mouchoir, m. à*

price, but they have warranted them fine and  
*prix, m. garantir, v. fin*

well worked. - - - We thought you would have  
*travailler, v.p.p. croyions, v.*

brought your brother with you. - - - Have we not  
 been obliged to (wait for) Miss A.? - - - If you had  
*de attendre, v.*

trusted them with your goods, they would have  
*confier, v. leur in marchandise*

stolen the greatest part of them. - - - It is for  
*partie, f. Ce, pro.*

that reason my father has not (thought fit)  
*juger, v. à-propos*

to send them to you. - - - Mr. D. had represented to  
 him all the danger of it. - - - Mrs. F. has gained her  
*gagner, v.*

cause, but she has lost all her wealth. - - - Had I  
*perdre, v. bien, m.*

not finished my work when she came in? - -  
*ouvrage, m. entrer, v.*

You would have received your money (a month ago),  
*il y a un mois*

if the mail had not been robbed. - - - Mrs. P. told me  
*malle, f. voler, v.*

she would have paid you some time ago, if she had  
 sold her goods.

## CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VERBS.

Verbs passive are very easily conjugated; it requires only that the participle passive of the verb, which is to be conjugated, be joined to the auxiliary verb *être*, to be, through all its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons. It is to be observed, that in French the participle passive varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun, which stands as the nominative to the verb: ex.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>être</i>	aim-é,	ée, to be loved.
<i>être</i>	pun-i,	ie, to be punished.
<i>étant</i>	aim-é,	ée, being loved.
<i>étant</i>	pun-i,	ie, being punished.
<i>avoir été</i>	aim-é,	ée, to have been loved.
<i>avoir été</i>	pun-i,	ie, to have been punished.
<i>ayant été</i>	aim-é,	ée, having been loved.
<i>ayant été</i>	pun-i,	ie, having been punished.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular. M. F.

<i>Je suis</i>	aim-é, ée, &c. I am loved.
<i>Je suis</i>	pun-i, ie, &c. I am punished.

Plural.

<i>Nous sommes</i>	aim-és, ées, &c. we are loved.
<i>Nous sommes</i>	pun-is, ies, &c. we are punished.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

<i>J'ai été</i>	pardonn-é,	ée, I have been forgiven.
<i>J'ai été</i>	pun-i,	ie, I have been punished.
<i>Nous avons été</i>	aim-és, ées,	We have been loved, &c.

## OF NEUTER VERBS.

The conjugations of the above verbs are, like all others, distinguished by their terminations, and conjugated in the same manner.

Learners may easily know a neuter verb from an active one; because the latter generally has, or can always have, a direct case after it; whereas the neuter verb never has, nor can have, but an indirect case: for instance,

*Dormir*, to sleep,  
*Venir*, to come,  
*Voyager*, to travel,

are neuter verbs; because we cannot say,

*Dormir une maison*, to sleep a house.  
*Venir un livre*, to come a book.  
*Voyager la chambre*, to travel the room, &c.

In the same manner,

*Jouir*, to enjoy,  
*Profiter*, to profit by, to take advantage of,  
*Parvenir*, to attain, to reach,

are neuter verbs, because they can only govern an indirect case: ex.

*Jouir d'une grande réputation*, To enjoy a great reputation.  
*Profiter du tems*, To take advantage of the weather.  
*Parvenir à son but*, To attain one's end.

As it is impossible for the neuter verbs to govern an absolute case, it follows that every verb of this kind, which governs an absolute case, can no longer be looked upon as a neuter: ex.

*Pleurer*, to weep, to bewail,  
*Sortir*, to go out,  
*Monter*, to go up, or come up,  
*Plaider*, &c. to plead,

are neuter verbs, but become active when they govern any object in the absolute case, or accusative: ex.

*Elle pleure ses péchés*, She bewails her sins.  
*Sortez ce cheval*, Bring out that horse.  
*Il plaida sa cause lui-même*, He himself pleaded his cause.

But there are some neuter verbs which can never have an active signification, and which we are obliged to conjugate with the verb *faire*, when we wish to express an action passing from the subject who acts : ex.

*Ferai-je bouillir ou rôtir* Shall I boil or roast that  
*cette viande ?* meat ?  
*Faites-la bouillir,* Boil it.

Some of the neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses by the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have ; others by the verb *être*, to be.

The general rule to know what neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*, and which are the others that are conjugated with the verb *être*, is to pay attention to the participle passive of the neuter verb which is conjugated.

If this participle be declinable, that is, if it can be applied to a man or a woman, or any other animated object, the compounds of its verbs are conjugated with the verb *être* : ex.

<i>Arriver</i> , to arrive,	<i>Tomber</i> , to fall,
<i>Mourir</i> , to die,	<i>Venir</i> , to come, &c.
<i>Naître</i> , to be born,	

take the auxiliary verb *être* ; because we can say,

<i>Un homme arrivé</i> ,	a man arrived.
<i>Une femme morte</i> ,	a woman dead.
<i>Un enfant né</i> ,	a child born.
<i>Un cheval tombé</i> , &c.	a horse fallen.

If, on the contrary, the participle be indeclinable, that is, if it cannot be said of any animate object, the compound tenses of that verb must be conjugated with the verb *avoir* : ex.

<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep,	<i>Régner</i> , to reign,
<i>Languir</i> , to languish, to linger,	<i>Vivre</i> , to live, &c.

take the auxiliary verb *avoir* ; because we cannot say,



*Un homme dormi,* a man slept, (part. pass.)  
*Une femme languie,* a woman languished, or lingered.  
*Un enfant régné,* a child reigned.  
*Un cheval vécu, &c.* a horse lived.

The verb *courir* is in the last class, when it signifies the rapid motion of the body, moving in a certain direction with all the swiftness of its legs; as we cannot, in this sense, say,

*Un homme couru,* a man run, (part. pass.)  
*Une femme courue,* a woman run,

nor *je suis couru, j'étois couru, &c.* but *j'ai couru, j'avois couru, &c.*

When we say in French, *un homme couru, une femme courue*, we mean a man or woman much sought after, a person or thing we are very eager to see or hear: ex.

*Ce prédicateur est fort couru;*  
*Cette danseuse est fort courue;*

that is, people are very eager to hear that preacher, to see that dancer.

In the above general rule are not included some neuter verbs, which sometimes take the auxiliary *avoir*, and sometimes the auxiliary *être*; these are,

<i>Monter</i> , to go or come up.	<i>Demeurer</i> , to live, to remain.
<i>Descendre</i> , to go or come down.	<i>Périr</i> , to perish.
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass, to go by.
<i>Rester</i> , to stay, to remain.	<i>Echapper</i> , to escape.

*Monter* and *descendre* often govern an absolute regimen; in which case they are considered as active verbs, and conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*: ex.

*J'ai monté les degrés,* I have ascended the stairs,  
or gone up the stairs.  
*Nous avons descendu la montagne,* We have come down the mountain.

When the above verbs are employed without regimen, their compounds are conjugated with *être*: ex.

*Je suis descendu,*

*I am down.*

*Elle est déjà montée,*

*She is up already.*

*Sortir*, is conjugated with the verb *être*, when it signifies to quit, to leave the place wherein one was dwelling, or living; but it is conjugated with the verb *avoir*, when we wish to convey that we have been from home, and that we are come back again: ex.

*Il est sorti de prison,*

*He is out of prison.*

*J'ai sorti ce matin à dix heures,*

*I went out this morning at ten o'clock.*

*Avez-vous sorti ce matin ?*

*Did you go out this morning ?*

*Nous n'avons pas sorti de tout le jour,*

*We have not been out all day.*

*Le roi n'a pas sorti de sa chambre,*

*The king has not been out of his room.*

*Demeurer* and *rester* take the auxiliary *avoir*, when we mean that we were, but are no longer, in a place: ex.

*J'ai demeuré deux ans à la campagne,*

*I lived two years in the country.*

*Il a resté vingt ans à Rome,*

*He resided twenty years at Rome.*

On the contrary, they take the auxiliary *être*, while the person or persons are still in a place: ex.

*Il est demeuré à Londres pour y solliciter un évêché,*

*He has remained in London to solicit a bishopric.*

*Nous sommes restés à York pour y finir nos affaires,*

*We have tarried at York to conclude our affairs.*

*Périr* indifferently takes either the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*: ex.

<i>Il est péri deux vaisseaux sur mer,</i>	Two ships <i>have</i> been lost at sea.
<i>Trois hommes ont péri par cette tempête,</i>	Three men <i>have</i> perished by this storm.
<i>La plupart des équipages sont périés dans les ondes, le reste est péri de mi- sère,</i>	Most of the crew perished in the waves, the rest perished through mis- ery.

It seems, however, that the auxiliary *avoir* is more generally used.

*Passer* sometimes governs an indirect case, or is immediately followed by the preposition *par*, or some other, attended by a noun or pronoun; in which case its compounds are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, whether it be used in its proper signification or in a figurative sense: *ex.*

<i>Le roi a passé par Ken- sington pour aller à Windsor,</i>	The king went through Kensington to go to Windsor.
<i>Nous avons passé devant l'église,</i>	We went by the church.
<i>Elle a passé près du parc de St. Jâques,</i>	She went by St. James' Park.
<i>La couronne de Naples a passé dans la maison de Bourbon,</i>	The crown of Naples passed to the house of Bourbon.

In all other cases, *passer* takes the auxiliary *être* :  
*ex.*

<i>Le roi est passé, vous ne sauriez le voir,</i>	The king is gone by, you cannot see him.
<i>Le beau tems est passé,</i>	The fine weather is over.
<i>Vos chagrins sont passés,</i>	Your sorrows are over.

We sometimes say, *ce mot est passé*, when we mean that it is no longer in use; but when we say, *ce mot a passé*, we understand in the language, which signifies that it has been received or adopted.

*Passer* is often a reflected passive verb, when its compound tenses follow the rule of the reflective verbs.

*Passer*, in several cases, becomes an active verb, and governs an absolute case: ex.

<i>Passer cela sur le feu,</i>	Pass that over the fire.
<i>Les ennemis ont passé la</i>	The enemies have crossed
<i>rivière,</i>	the river.
<i>Passer l'épée au travers du</i>	To run one through the
<i>corps,</i>	body.

*Echapper* has two significations: sometimes it is used in the sense of *éviter*, to avoid, when it is conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, and governs the dative case; sometimes it signifies to come or go out by force or stratagem from a place in which one was confined or shut up; in this case it takes the verb *être* for auxiliary: ex.

<i>Vous avez échappé-là à un</i>	You have escaped a great
<i>grand danger,</i>	danger.
<i>Il a échappé à la mort,</i>	He has escaped death.
<i>Ils sont échappés de leur</i>	They have escaped from
<i>prison, or,</i>	their prison, or, made
<i>Ils se sont échappés de leur</i>	their escape.
<i>prison,</i>	
<i>On la tenoit depuis quel-</i>	They had her for some
<i>ques jours, mais elle est</i>	days, but she has es-
<i>échappée, or, elle s'est</i>	caped, or, made her
<i>échappée,</i>	escape.

N. B. Exercises on the neuter verbs will be found among the irregular, whenever they occur.

## REFLECTED VERBS.

We call *reflected*, or *reflective*, a verb whose subject and object are the same person or thing; so that the subject that acts, acts upon itself, and is at the same time the agent and the object of the action: ex.

*Je me connois,  
Tu te loues,  
Il se blesse,  
Nous nous chauffons,*

*I know myself,  
Thou praisest thyself,  
He wounds himself,  
We warm ourselves,*

are reflected verbs, because it is I who know, and who am known; thou who praisest and who art praised; he who wounds and who is wounded, &c.

In order to express the relation of the nominative to the verb with its regimen or object, we always make use of the conjunctive pronouns, *me, te, se, myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself*, for the singular; *nous, vous, se, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*, for the plural. But it frequently happens, that in English, the second pronoun is implied, though it must be expressed in French: ex.

<i>Je me soutiens,</i>	<i>I remember.</i>
<i>Elle ne veut pas se marier,</i>	<i>She will not marry.</i>
<i>Nous nous plaignons, &amp;c.</i>	<i>We complain, &amp;c.</i>

The reflected verbs may be divided in the following manner, viz.

<i>Verbes réfléchis par la signification,</i>	Verbs reflective by signification.
<i>Verbes réfléchis par l'expression,</i>	Verbs reflective by expression.
<i>Verbes réfléchis directs,</i>	Verbs reflective direct.
<i>Verbes réfléchis indirects,</i>	Verbs reflective indirect.
<i>Verbes réfléchis passifs,</i>	Verbs reflective passive.

A verb reflected by signification is properly a verb wherein the person or thing that acts is at the same time the object of the action: ex.

<i>Je me chauffe,</i>	<i>I warm myself.</i>
<i>Elle se blesse,</i>	<i>She wounds herself, &amp;c.</i>

A verb is reflective by expression when we add to it the double pronoun, without the person or thing that acts being the object of the action: such as,

<i>Je me repens,</i>	I repent,
<i>Il s'en va,</i>	He is going away,
<i>Elle se meurt,</i>	She is dying,
<i>Nous nous appercevons de</i>	We perceive our error,
<i>notre erreur,</i>	

which merely signify *Je suis repentant, il va, elle meurt, nous appercevons notre erreur.*

When the conjunctive pronoun is the objective case of the verb reflective by expression, we say it is a *verb reflective direct*; when the same conjunctive pronoun is the indirect regimen, (that is, governed in the dative case), we call it *reflective indirect*: thus,

<i>Je me flatte,</i>	I flatter myself,
<i>Tu te vantes,</i>	Thou boastest,
<i>Il se félicite,</i>	He congratulates himself,
	&c.

are verbs *reflective direct*.—On the contrary,

<i>Il se donne des louanges,</i>	He gives himself praise,
<i>Nous nous promettons un</i>	We promise ourselves good
<i>bon succès,</i>	success,
<i>Vous vous arrachez une</i>	You draw one of your
<i>dent,</i>	teeth,

are verbs *reflective indirect*, because it is as if we said, *Il donne des louanges à soi, nous promettons un bon succès à nous, vous arrachez une dent à vous, &c.*

*Verb reflective passive.* This verb is so called, because it not only expresses a passive sense but that sense can only be rendered by a passive verb: ex.

<i>Cela se voit tous les jours,</i>	That is seen every day.
<i>Cela ne se dit point,</i>	That is not said.
<i>Ce livre se vend bien,</i>	That book sells well.
<i>Ce bruit se répand,</i>	That rumour is spread.
<i>Ces fruits se mangent en</i>	These fruits are eaten in
<i>hiver,</i>	winter.

*Cet homme s'est trouvé innocent du crime dont on l'accusait,*      That man has been found innocent of the crime with which he was accused.

It is as if there were *cela est vu tous les jours, cela n'est point dit, &c.* which exactly correspond with the idiom of the English language.

This last verb is of great use in the French language, because, as it has been observed before, there are properly no passive verbs in that language, and we are often obliged to supply the want of them by the above verb, or by the pronoun general *on*, to avoid ambiguity or false sense: if, for instance, instead of saying, *ces fruits se mangent en hiver*, ou, *on mange ces fruits en hiver*, I said, *ces fruits sont mangés en hiver*, one might understand that those fruits are already eaten; whereas, I only wish to express the proper season for eating those fruits.

Some authors call *réci-proque*, reciprocal, all those reflected verbs; but this denomination to me has appeared insufficient to determine accurately the nature and use of these verbs. Others limit the reciprocal verb to signify what two persons or two things reciprocally do to each other: thus,

<i>Pierre et Jean se battent,</i>	Peter and John are fighting, or beating each other,
<i>Paul et Robert s'aiment,</i>	Paul and Robert love each other,
<i>Le feu et l'eau se détruisent,</i>	Fire and water destroy each other,

are reciprocal verbs, because it is as if we said, *Pierre et Jean se battent réciproquement l'un l'autre, Paul et Robert s'aiment réciproquement, &c.*

This distinction of the reciprocal verbs may be adopted, observing at the same time, that we often

prefix the preposition *entre* to the verb, the better to express the reciprocity : ex.

<i>Pierre et Jean s'entr'aiment,</i>	Peter and John love each other.
<i>Ils s'entrelouent,</i>	They praise each other.
<i>Elles s'entrehaïssent,</i>	They hate each other.
<i>Le feu et l'eau s'entredétruisent, &amp;c.</i>	Fire and water destroy each other.

All the reflected and reciprocal verbs, without exception, are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être*; hence it may be supposed how much French people are shocked to hear any one, who has learned that language, say,

<i>Je m'ai acheté un cheval,</i>	I bought myself a horse;
<i>Je m'avois blessé,</i>	I had hurt myself;
<i>Il s'a fait mal,</i>	He has hurt himself;
<i>Elle s'avoit moqué de moi, &amp;c.</i>	She had laughed at me;

expressions too commonly made use of by many English people, who speak without knowledge of the principles of the language; whereas we must say,

<i>Je me suis acheté un cheval,</i>	We have inquired.
<i>Je m'étois blessé,</i>	They have walked.
<i>Il s'est fait mal,</i>	Strange things have happened since your departure.
<i>Elle s'étoit moquée de moi,</i>	
<i>Nous nous sommes informés,</i>	
<i>Ils se sont promenés,</i>	
<i>Il s'est passé d'étranges choses depuis votre départ,</i>	
<i>Il s'est passé bien des années depuis que j'ai ouï parler de cette affaire,</i>	Many years have elapsed since I heard of that affair.

It must be owned, that in the compounds of most part of these verbs, the verb *être* is but the substitute of the verb *avoir*; but it is impossible to use *avoir* as auxiliary to a verb which has for its objective case a conjunctive pronoun that relates to the principle of the



action of that verb, and which precedes the auxiliary ; for, though we say,

*Il a voulu se tuer,*                      He would kill himself ;

yet, if we change the place of the pronoun, we must say, *Il s'est voulu tuer*, which is the idiom of the language.

## CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected or reciprocal verbs, of the four conjugations.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.        *Se promener*, to walk.

Part. act.      *Se promenant*, walking.

M. Sing. F.

Part. pass.   *promen-é, ée*, walked.

M. Plural. F.

Part. pass.   *promen-és, ées*, walked.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Pres.          *S'être promené*, to have walked.

Past.          *S'étant promené*, having walked.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Je me promène*, I walk, or do walk, or am walking.

*Tu te promènes*,

*Il se promène*,

Plural.

*Nous nous promenons*, we walk, &c.

*Vous vous promenez*,

*Ils se promènent*,

Imperfect. Singular.

*Je me promenais*, I did walk, or walked, or was walking.

*Tu te promenais*,

*Il se promenoit*,

## Plural.

*Nous nous promenions*, we did walk, &c.  
*Vous vous promeniez*,  
*Ils se promenoient*,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je me promenai*, I did walk, or walked.  
*Tu te promenâs*,  
*Il se promena*,

## Plural.

*Nous nous promenâmes*, we did walk, &c.  
*Vous vous promenâtes*,  
*Ils se promenèrent*,

## Future. Singular.

*Je me promènerai*, I shall, or will walk.  
*Tu te promèneras*,  
*Il se promènera*,

## Plural.

*Nous nous promènerons*, we shall, or will walk.  
*Vous vous promènerez*,  
*Ils se promèneront*,

## Conditional. Singular:

*Je me promènerois*, I would, should, or could walk.  
*Tu te promènerois*,  
*Il se promèneroit*,

## Plural.

*Nous nous promènerions*, we would, &c. walk.  
*Vous vous promèneriez*,  
*Ils se promèneraient*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Je me suis promen-é, ée*, I have walked,  
 Imperfect. *Je m'étois promen-é, ée*, I had walked.  
 Preterite. *Je me fus promen-é, ée*, I had walked.  
 Future. *Je me serai promen-é, ée*, I shall or will have walked.  
 Conditional. *Je me serois promen-é, ée*, I should, &c. have walked.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Promène-toi\**, walk thou.*Qu'il se promène*, let him walk.

Plural.

*Promenons-nous\**, let us walk.*Promenez-vous\**, walk ye.*Qu'ils se promènent*, let them walk.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je me promène*, that I may walk.*tu te promènes*,*il se promène*,

Plural.

*nous nous promenions*, that we may walk.*vous vous promeniez*,*ils se promènent*,

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je me promenasse*, that I might walk.*tu te promenasses*,*il se promenât*,

Plural.

*nous nous promenassions*, that we might walk.*vous vous promenassiez*,*ils se promenassent*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

Present.

*Que je me sois promen-é ée*, that I  
may have walked.

Preterite.

*Que je me fusse promen-é ée*, that I  
might have walked.

The learner may here be again reminded, that it is

\* When the verb is conjugated with a negation, these three pronouns are put before the verb; ex. *ne vous promenez pas*, do not walk; and *toi* is changed into *te*: *ne te promène pas*.

necessary to conjugate this verb with a negation and interrogation: ex.

<i>Je ne me promène pas,</i>	I do not walk.
<i>Vous promenez-vous,</i>	Do you walk?
<i>Ne se promène-t-il pas?</i>	Does he not walk?

### COMPOUND TENSES.

<i>Me suis-je promené?</i>	Have I walked? or did I walk?
<i>Ne vous êtes-vous pas chauffé?</i>	Have you not warmed yourself? or did you not warm yourself?
<i>Mon cousin s'est-il informé?</i>	Has my cousin inquired? or did my cousin inquire?
<i>Votre frère ne s'est-il pas repenti?</i>	Has not your brother repented? or did not your brother repent?

We say in French,	
<i>Se promener à cheval, en carrosse,</i>	To take a ride, an airing on horseback, in a coach.
<i>Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière,</i>	To go upon the water, on the river.

### EXERCISES UPON THE REFLECTED VERBS.

*N. B.* Verbs marked thus \* are irregular: see the irregular verbs alphabetically arranged under each conjugation.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	I rise	(early)	every
	<i>Se lever, v.</i>	<i>de bonne heure, adv.</i>	
morning. - -	Does not your brother remember		
<i>matin, m.</i>			<i>se souvenir, v.*</i>
to have seen	me? - -	My sister	is not well, she
<i>de vu, p. p.</i>		<i>sœur, f. †</i>	<i>se porter,</i>

† When we mean to express the state of a person's health, instead of the verb *être*, we must use the reflected one *se porter*:

<i>Ma sœur ne se porte pas bien,</i>	My sister is not well.
--------------------------------------	------------------------

applies herself (too much) to study. - - - We  
*s'appliquer, v. trop, adv.*  
 rejoice at the good news he has brought  
*se réjouir, v. de nouvelle, f. apporté, p. p.*  
 us. - - When do you intend to go and see  
*se proposer, v. de aller, v. voir, v.*  
 Mrs. H.? - - Do you not repent what you  
*se repentir, v.\* de*  
 have done to her? - - I believe your brothers  
*fait, p. p. croire, v.\**  
 are not well; for I have not seen them this  
 † *car, c. vu, p. p.*  
 week.  
*semaine, f.*

IMP. I was riding on horseback in the park,  
*parc, v.*  
 when I met him. - - Was he not warm-  
*quand, c. recontrer, v. se chauff-*  
 ing himself when you (came in)? - - We did not  
*fer, v. entrer, v.*  
 imagine he would succeed so well. - - You were  
*s'imaginer, v. réussir, v.*  
 boasting too much of what you have done for  
*se vanter, v. fait, p. p.*  
 him. - - They did not expect that they should  
*s'attendre, v.*  
 meet us.

PART. I inquired after you yesterday. - - -  
*s'informer, v. de hier, adv.*  
 Did not my son behave well in the last  
*se comporter, v. dernier, adj.*  
 war? - - Corn was sold yesterday for twelve shil-  
*guerre, f. se vendre, v.*  
 lings a bushel. - - We saw ourselves surrounded by  
*se voir, v.\* entouré, p. p.*  
 more than twenty persons in an instant. - - Did you  
*en, p.*

not find yourselves obliged to go  
*se trouver, v.* *obligé, p.p.* *de aller, v.*  
 there? - - They did not stop one minute.  
*s'arrêter, v.*

FUT. I will not complain of you, if you  
*se plaindre, v.\**  
 promise me to behave better. - - Will your  
*promettre, v.\** *de* *mieux, adv.*  
 bird (grow tame)? - - Shall we submit our-  
*oiseau, m.* *s'apprivoiser, v.* *se soumettre, v.\**  
 selves to his judgment. - - You will ruin your-  
*jugement, m.* *se ruiner, v.*  
 selves if you continue (gaming). - - Will they not  
*continuer, v. de jouer, v.*  
 perceive it (as soon as) they come into the  
*s'appercevoir, v.* *en dès que, c.* *entrer, v. fut.*  
 room?

COND. If I were in your place, I would  
*étois à*  
 not vex myself. - - - - Would she not (make her  
*se chagriner, v.* *s'échapper*  
 escape)? - - We would embark (this day)  
*per, v.* *s'embarquer, v.* *aujourd'hui, adv.*  
 if the weather (would permit). - - Would you so  
*tems, m.* *le permettoit, v.*  
 soon? - - Why would you expose yourselves to their  
*tôt, adv.* *s'exposer, v.*  
 fury? - - They would agree *very well,*  
*fureur, f.* *s'accorder, v.* *bien, adv.*  
 if they were not so proud.  
*orgueilleux, adj.*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I give you leave to go out, but  
*donner, v.* *permission, f.* *de sortir, v. mais, c.*  
 do not overheat yourself. - - Let him amuse him-  
*s'échauffer, v.* *s'amuser, v.*

self a little in my garden. - - Let us remem-  
*un peu, adv. jardin, m. se ressou-*  
 ber what we are to do. - - Endeavour to  
*venir de, v.\* † faire, v. S'efforcer, v. de*  
 please your master, and do not so often mis-  
*plaître, v. à maître, m. se trom-*  
 take in the tenses, numbers, and persons of the  
*per, v.*  
 verb. - - Let them (fall asleep).  
*s'endormir, v.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**PRÉS.** I must apply myself to the  
*Il faut que s'appliquer, v.*  
 French language. - - I will hide it, lest  
*langue, f. cacher, v. de pour que, c.*  
 she should perceive it. - - Provided  
*ne s'apercevoir, v. en, pro. Pourvu que, c.*  
 we remember to ask him how his  
*de demander, v. comment, adv.*  
 mother does. - - (In order that) you may not  
*se porter, v. Afin que, c.*  
 boast (so much). - - I have told them who you  
*se vanter, v. tant, adv. dit, p.p.*  
 are, that they may behave better another time.  
*afin que, c. fois, f.*

**PART.** That I might not ruin myself. - -  
*se ruiner, v.*  
 That he might not meddle with my affairs. - -  
*se mêler, v. de*  
 That we might excuse ourselves. - - That you  
*s'excuser, v.*  
 might not go away. - - That they might not  
*s'en aller, v.\**  
 repent too late.  
*se-repentir, v.\* trop tard, adv.*

† See the reference \* in the exercises upon the third conjugation, page 193.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

I have inquired after you and your sister. - - -  
*s'informer, v. de*

He says you have not been well while you  
*dit, v. pendant que, c.*

were in the country. - - - Has not your cousin  
*à campagne, f. cousin, m.*

laughed at me? - - Did we not get up at six  
*se moquer, v. de se lever, v. à*

(o'clock)? - - They have perceived the trick, but  
*heure, f. du détour, m.*

it was too late. - - Did you remember me?  
*se ressouvenir, v. de*

I had not applied myself enough. - - - Had  
*s'appliquer, v. assez, adv.*

not your sister imagined, that they would have  
*s'imaginer, v.*

found themselves obliged to go to France? - -  
*se trouver, v. obligé, p.p. de †*

Many things (have been said) of them which  
*se dire, v.*

are not true. - - - We had thought ourselves  
*se croire, v.\**

able to resist them, but we have  
*capable, adj. de résister, v. leur mais, c.*

(been deceived). - - - Did you not hide your-  
*se tromper, v. se cacher, v.*

selves in order to surprise them? - - When  
*afin de surprendre, v. Quand, adv.*

I (shall) have walked five or six minutes in the gar-  
*jar-*

den, I will rest myself. - - - Why did you  
*din, m. se reposer, v.*

exhaust yourself as you have done? - - - Our  
*s'épuiser, v. fait, p.p.*

sailors would have behaved with more reso-  
*matelot, m.*

† See the indefinite article, p. 41.



lution. - - - Would you not have excused yourself. - -

*s'excuser, v.*

When they have repented their faults, I

*se repentir, v. de*

will forgive them. - - If I had been in your place, I

*à*

would not have meddled with their affairs. - - -

*se mêler, v. de*

Your friend would not have complained of you,

*se plaindre, v.\**

and you never would have (fallen out) for so small

*se brouiller, v.*

a matter.

*chose, f.*

## CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

These are called *irregulars* because their conjugation deviates from the general rule, either by their terminations, or the want of some of their moods, tenses, persons, or numbers.

### VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

**ALLER, TO GO.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Aller, to go.</i>
Part. act.	<i>Allant, going.</i>
Part. pass.	<i>Allé, ée, gone.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Vais, vas, va, I go, do go, or am going.</i>
Plur.	<i>Allons, allez, vont,</i>

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Allois, allois, alloit, I did go, or was going.</i>
Plur.	<i>Allions, alliez, alloient,</i>

Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Allai, allas, alla, I went, or did go.</i>
Plur.	<i>Allâmes, allâtes, allèrent; or,</i>

Sing. *Fus, fus, fut*, I went, or did go.  
 Plur. *Fûmes, fûtes, furent*,

Future.

Sing. *Irai, iras, ira*, I shall, or will go.  
 Plur. *Irons, irez, iront*,

Conditional.

Sing. *Irois, irois, iroit*, I should, could, would, or  
 Plur. *Irions, iriez, iroient*, might go.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Va*, go thou ;  
*qu'il aille*, let him go.  
 Plur. *Allons, allez, qu'ils aillent*.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Que, que, que*,  
*Aille, ailles, aille*, that I may go.  
 Plur. *Allions, alliez, aillent*,

Preterite.

Sing. *Allasse, allasses, allât*, that I might go.  
 Plur. *Allassions, allassiez, allassent*,

Among the compound tenses of this verb, it is to be remarked, that those which are formed by the participle *allé*, signify that we are or were yet in the place mentioned at the time we are or were speaking. Whence it follows, that the first person of the compound of the present,

*Je suis allé,* I have gone, &c.  
*Tu es allé, &c.*

can seldom be used in discourse ; for we cannot naturally say that we are still in a place which can only be mentioned in a past time, after we have left it ; therefore we make use of the compound tenses of the verb *être*, as *j'ai été, tu as été, j'eus été, j'avois été, j'aurais été, &c.* for when we say,

*Il est allé à Londres,* He is gone to London.

we give to understand, that he is still in London, or is on his way, going to London : on the contrary,

*Il a été à Londres,*                      *He has been at London,*  
means, that he has gone to London, but is returned.

The above verb is also conjugated as a reflected one, with the particle *en* : ex.

*S'en aller*, to go away.

*Je m'en vais*, I go or am going away.

*Tu t'en vas*, thou goest or art going away.

*Il s'en va*, he goes or is going away.

*Nous nous en allons*, we go or are going away.

*Vous vous en allez*, you go or are going away.

*Ils s'en vont*, they go or are going away.

Negatively.

*Je ne m'en vais pas*, I am not going away.

*Il ne s'en va pas*, he is not going away.

*Nous ne nous en allons pas*, we are not going away.

*Vous ne vous en allez pas*, &c. you are not going away, &c.

Interrogatively.

*S'en va-t-il ?* Is he going away ?

*Vous en allez-vous ?* &c. are you going away ? &c.

*Ne s'en vont-ils pas ?* &c. are they not going away ? &c.

The imperative mood is thus conjugated :

Singular.

*Va-t'en*, go thou away.

*Qu'il s'en aille*, let him go away.

Plural.

*Allons-nous en*, let us go away.

*Allez-vous en*, go away.

*Qu'ils s'en aillent*, let them go away.

Its compound tenses are,

*Je m'en suis allé*, I have gone away.

*Je m'en étois allé*, I had gone away.

*Je m'en fus allé*, I had gone away.

*Je m'en serai allé*, I shall have gone away, &c.

*Je m'en serois allé*, I should have gone away.

## VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACQUERIR, TO ACQUIRE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Acquérir</i> , to acquire.
Part. act.	<i>Acquérant</i> , acquiring.
Part. pass.	<i>Acquis</i> , acquired.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Acquiers</i> , <i>acquiers</i> , <i>acquiert</i> , I acquire, or am ac-	
Plur.	<i>Acquérons</i> , <i>acquérez</i> , <i>acquièrent</i> ,	quiring.

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Acquérois</i> , <i>acquérois</i> , <i>acqueroit</i> , I did acquire, or was	
Plur.	<i>Acquérons</i> , <i>acquériez</i> , <i>acquéroient</i> ,	acquiring.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Acquis</i> , <i>acquis</i> , <i>acquit</i> , I acquired, or did ac-	
Plur.	<i>Acquîmes</i> , <i>acquîtes</i> , <i>acquirent</i> ,	quire.

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Acquerrai</i> , <i>acquerras</i> , <i>acquerra</i> , I shall, or will ac-	
Plur.	<i>Acquerrons</i> , <i>acquertez</i> , <i>acquerront</i> ,	quire.

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Acquerrois</i> , <i>acquerrois</i> , <i>acquerroit</i> , I should, would,	
		or could acquire.
Plur.	<i>Acquerriens</i> , <i>acquerriez</i> , <i>acquerroient</i> ,	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Acquiers</i> , <i>acquière</i> , acquire thou.
Plur.	<i>Acquérons</i> , <i>acquérez</i> , <i>acquièrent</i> ,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Acquière</i> , <i>acquières</i> , <i>acquière</i> ,	that I may acquire.		
Plur.	<i>Acquérons</i> , <i>acquériez</i> , <i>acquièrent</i> ,			

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Acquîsse</i> , <i>acquîsses</i> , <i>acquît</i> , that I might ac-	
Plur.	<i>Acquîssions</i> , <i>acquîssiez</i> , <i>acquîssent</i> ,	quire.

**QUERIR, TO FETCH.**

The primitive of the above verb is never used but in the present of the infinitive mood: *ex.*

*Envoyez-moi quérir, Send for me.*

**CONQUERIR, TO CONQUER ; REQUERIR, TO REQUIRE ;**  
are conjugated like **ACQUERIR.**

**BOUILLIR, TO BOIL.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Bouillir, to boil.</i>
Part. act.	<i>Bouillant, boiling.</i>
Part. pass.	<i>Bouilli, is, boiled.</i>

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Bous, bous, bout, I boil, or am boiling.</i>
Plur.	<i>Bouillons, bouillez, bouillent,</i>

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Bouillois, bouillois, bouilloit, I did boil, or was</i>
Plur.	<i>Bouillions, bouilliez, bouilloient, boiling.</i>

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Bouillis, bouillis, bouillit, I boiled, or did</i>
Plur.	<i>Bouillîmes, bouillîtes, bouillirent, boil.</i>

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Bouillirai, bouilliras, bouillira, I shall or will boil.</i>
Plur.	<i>Bouillirons, bouillirez, bouilliront,</i>

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Bouillirois, bouillirois, bouilliroit, I should, would,</i>
Plur.	<i>Bouillirions, bouilliriez, bouilliroient, or could boil.</i>

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Bous, bouille, boil thou.</i>
Plur.	<i>Bouillons, bouillez, bouillent,</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Que            que            que  
Sing. *Bouille*,    *bouilles*,    *bouille*, that I may boil.  
Plur. *Bouillions*, *bouilliez*, *bouillent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Bouillisse*,    *bouillisses*, *bouillît*, that I might boil.  
Plur. *Bouillissions*, *bouillissiez*, *bouillissent*,

This verb, as well as its compound *rebouillir*, to boil again, is but seldom used, except in the third person singular or plural, and its infinitive mood, which is commonly joined to the verb *Faire*: ex.

*Faites bouillir cette viande*, Boil that meat.

## COURIR, TO RUN.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.    *Courir*, to run.  
Part. act.    *Courant*, running,  
Part. pass.    *Couru*, *ue*, run.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Cours*,    *cours*,    *court*, I run, or am running.  
Plur. *Courons*, *courez*, *courent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Courois*,    *couroit*,    *couroit*, I did run, or was  
Plur. *Courions*, *couriez*,    *couroient*,                    running.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Courus*,    *courus*,    *courut*, I ran, or did run.  
Plur. *Courûmes*, *courûtes*, *coururent*,

## Future.

ing. *Courrai*,    *courras*,    *courra*, I shall or will run.  
Plur. *Courrons*, *courrez*, *courrant*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Courrois, courrois, courroit*, I should, would, or  
 Plur. *Courrions, courriez, courroient*, could run.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cours,* course, run thou.  
 Plur. *Courons, courez, courent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Coure, courres, coure*, that I may run.  
 Plur. *Courions, couriez, courent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Courusse, courusses, courût*, that I might run.  
 Plur. *Courussions, courussiez, courussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Accourir</i> , to run to.	<i>Parcourir</i> , to run over.
<i>Concourir</i> , to concur.	<i>Récourir</i> , to have recourse
<i>Discourir</i> , to discourse.	to.
<i>Encourir</i> , to incur.	<i>Secourir</i> , to succour, to
	assist.

---

COUVRIR, TO COVER.

See OUVIR, TO OPEN.

---

CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Cueillir*, to gather.  
 Part. act. *Cueillant*, gathering.  
 Part. pass. *Cueilli, ie*, gathered.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Cueille, cueilles, cueille*, I gather, or am gath-  
 Plur. *Cueillons, cueillez, cueillent*, ering.

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Cueillois, cueillois, cueilloit*, I did gather, or was  
 Plur. *Cueillions, cueilliez, cueilloient*, gathering.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Cueillis, cueillis, cueillit*, I gathered, or did  
 Plur. *Cueillîmes, cueillîtes, cueillirent*, gather.

## Future.

Sing. *Cueillerai, cueilleras, cueillera*, I shall or will  
 Plur. *Cueillerons, cueillerez, cueilleront*, gather.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Cueillerois, cueillerois, cueilleroit*, I should, would,  
 or could gather.  
 Plur. *Cueillerions, cueilleriez, cueilleroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cueille, cueille*, gather thou.  
 Plur. *Cueillons, cueillez, cueillent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Cueille, cueilles, cueille*, that I may gather.  
 Plur. *Cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Cueillisse cueillisses, cueillit*, that I might  
 Plur. *Cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent*, gather.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Accueillir*, to make wel- | *Recueillir*, to gather to-  
 come. | gether.

## DORMIR, TO SLEEP.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Dormir*, to sleep.  
 Part. act. *Dormant*, sleeping.  
 Part. pass. *Dormi*, slept.



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Dors*,        *dors*,        *dort*, I sleep, or am sleeping.Plur. *Dormons*,   *dormez*,   *dorment*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Dormois*,   *dormois*, *dormoit*, I did sleep, or wasPlur. *Dormions*, *dormiez*, *dormoient*,        sleeping.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Dormis*,   *dormis*,   *dormit*, I slept, or did sleep.Plur. *Dormîmes*, *dormîtes*, *dormirent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Dormirai*,   *dormiras*, *dormira*, I shall or willPlur. *Dormirons*, *dormirez*, *dormiront*,        sleep.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Dormirois*, *dormirois*, *dormiroit*, I would, could orPlur. *Dormirions*, *dormiriez*, *dormiroient*,   should sleep.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.        *Dors*,        *dorme*, sleep thou.Plur. *Dormons*,   *dormez*,   *dorment*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que*        *que*        *que*  
*Dorme*,        *dormes*, *dorme*, that I may sleep.Plur. *Dormions*, *dormiez*, *dorment*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Dormisse*,   *dormisses*, *dormît*, that I might sleep.Plur. *Dormissions*, *dormissiez*, *dormissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Endormir*, to make sleep.    | *Se rendormir*, to fall asleep.  
*S'endormir*, to fall asleep.    |        again.EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS  
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.Where are you going? . . . I am going to the  
*Où*, adv.

play. - - I would go with you, if I had time. - - Why  
*comédie, f.* *le*

are they going away so soon? - - Will not your father  
*tôt, adv.*

be angry, if you go there without him? - - We were  
*fâché, adj.*

going to Miss D——'s, when we met you.  
*chez, p.* *avons rencontré, v.*

- - These men went yesterday from house to house. - -  
*en, p.*

Believe me, sir, do not go to see them. - - Your fa-  
*Croire, v.* *voir, v.*

ther told me, you will go to France and Italy as soon  
*dire, v.*

as the war (is over). - - My sister and I went last  
*sera finie.* *dernier, adj.*

Wednesday to Vauxhall. - - If you had gone thither  
 an hour sooner you would have heard fine music.

*plutôt, adv.* *entendre, v.*

- - Your uncle has acquired a great name in America.  
*nom, m.*

- - My father went to pay your uncle a visit  
*rendre, v.*

last week, and he did not welcome him (as a) friend.  
*en, p.*

- - - Did he not? I am sorry for it. - - - Mr. Dubois,  
 the king's silversmith, has brought the watch: it  
*argentier, m.*

now goes very well. - - Go and fetch me  
*maintenant, adv.*

the letter I left in my room. - - Boil this chicken,  
*laisser, v.* *poulet, m.*

and roast that goose. - - At last we have conquered.  
*rôtir, v.* *oie, f.* *Enfin, adv.*

- - This water will soon boil. - - Boil that meat  
*bientôt, adv.*

again, it is not done enough. - - Do not run so  
*cuit, p.p.*

fast, you will be tired. - - - They always run  
*te, adv.* *fatigué, p.p.*

when they go to see their aunt. - - Your brother  
*tante, f.*

runs faster than I. - - When he heard that his  
*apprendre, v.*

friend was in danger, he ran instantly to him. - -  
*aussitôt, adv.*

Let us not discourse any more on that subject. - - - I  
*sujet, m.*

would assist him with all my heart, if I could. - - This  
*pouvoir,*

gentleman is a great traveller: he has run over all  
*voyageur, m.*

Europe. - - Let him go away, for I do not wish to  
*car, c.    vouloir, v.*

speak to him. - - If you do it, you will incur your  
*faire, v.*

father's displeasure. - - That would concur to the pub-  
*déplaisir, m.*

lic good. - - When children are guilty, they generally  
*bien, m.    coupable, adj.*

have recourse to some falsehood. - - For whom are you  
*mensonge, m.*

gathering those charming flowers? - - I gather them for  
*fleur, f.*

my mother. - - Why do they not gather some roses? - -  
*rose, f.*

Mrs. P. would have gathered some, but the gardener  
*jardinier, m.*

told her he would gather them himself. - - Of all na-  
tions none has welcomed the poor French clergy bet-

ter than the English. - - Do not make any noise, for my  
*clergé, m.*

sister (is asleep.) - - I hope she will sleep better to-night. - -  
*faire, v.    car, c.*

She would sleep much better, if she were in her bed. - -  
*dormir.    ce soir, m.*

- If I do not walk a little, I shall fall asleep. - - My  
*lit, m.*

mother, sister, brother, and I, went yesterday to  
*se promener, v.*

Croydon, to see Miss Keen. -- Did you go thither  
 on foot? -- No, my mother and sister went in  
 à coach, and my brother and I on horseback.  
 à cheval, m.

**FUIR**, TO RUN AWAY, TO SHUN, TO AVOID, TO FLEE.

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Fuir*, to flee.  
 Part. act. *Fuyant*, fleeing.  
 Part. pass. *Fui*, ie, fled.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**Present.**

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuis*, *fuit*, I flee.  
 Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*,

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Fuyois*, *fuyois*, *fuyoit*, I fled, or did flee.  
 Plur. *Fuyions*, *fuyiez*, *fuyoient*,

**Preterite.**

This tense is conjugated with the verb *Prendre* and the substantive *fuite* : ex.

*Je pris la fuite*, I fled, or ran away.

**Future.**

Sing. *Fuirai*, *fuiras*, *fuirai*, I shall or will flee.  
 Plur. *Fuirons*, *fuierez*, *fuiront*,

**Conditional.**

Sing. *Fuirois*, *fuirois*, *fuiroit*, I should, would, or could  
 Plur. *Fuirions*, *fuiriez*, *fuiroient*, flee.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuie*, flee thou.  
 Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Fuie,</i>	<i>fuias,</i>	<i>fuite,</i>	that I may flee.
Plur.	<i>Fuyions,</i>	<i>fugiez,</i>	<i>fuient,</i>	

## Preterite.

*Je prisse la fuite, &c. that I might flee.*

---

## MENTIR, TO LIE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Mentir,</i>	to lie.
Part. act.	<i>Mentant,</i>	lying.
Part. pass.	<i>Menti,</i>	lied.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Mens,</i>	<i>mens,</i>	<i>ment,</i>	I lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentons,</i>	<i>mentez,</i>	<i>mentent,</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Mentois,</i>	<i>mentois,</i>	<i>mentoit,</i>	I did lie, or was lying.
Plur.	<i>Mentions,</i>	<i>mentiez,</i>	<i>mentaient,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mentis,</i>	<i>mentis,</i>	<i>mentit,</i>	I lied, or did lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentîmes,</i>	<i>mentîtes,</i>	<i>mentirent,</i>	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Mentirai,</i>	<i>mentiras,</i>	<i>mentira,</i>	I shall or will lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentirons,</i>	<i>mentirez,</i>	<i>mentiront,</i>	

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Mentirois,</i>	<i>mentirois,</i>	<i>mentiroit,</i>	I would, could, or
Plur.	<i>Mentirions,</i>	<i>mentiriez,</i>	<i>mentiroient,</i>	should lie.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Mens,</i>	<i>mente,</i>	lie thou.
Plur.	<i>Mentons,</i>	<i>mentez,</i>	<i>mentent,</i>

---

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Offre,</i>	<i>offre, offer thou.</i>
Plur. <i>Offrons,</i>	<i>offrez,</i>	<i>offrent,</i>

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Offre,</i>	<i>offres,</i>	<i>offre,</i>	that I may offer.
Plur. <i>Offrions,</i>	<i>offriez,</i>	<i>offrent,</i>	

**Preterite.**

Sing. <i>Offrisse,</i>	<i>offrisses,</i>	<i>offrît,</i>	that I might offer.
Plur. <i>Offrissions,</i>	<i>offrissiez,</i>	<i>offrissent,</i>	

**OUIR, TO HEAR.**

This verb is never used but in its participle passive, joined to some of the tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have, preceding the verb *dire*, to say : ex.

*J'ai ouï dire que, I have heard, that, &c.*

In general we make use of *apprendre*.

**OUVRIER, TO OPEN.**

This verb, as well as its compounds,

*Couvrir*, to cover,      *Récouvrir*, to cover again.

*Découvrir*, { to discover, } is conjugated like *OFFRIR*.  
                   { to uncover, }

**PARTIR, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY ;**

And its compounds,

*Repartir*, to depart, to | *Repartir*, to set out again,  
   *impart*,                      |    to reply ;

*Se REPENTIR*, TO REPENT;

*SENTIR*, TO FEEL, TO SMELL,

And its compounds;

*Consentir*, to consent, to | *Ressentir*, to be sensible of,  
agree, | to resent,  
*Pressentir*, to have a foresight of,  
are conjugated like *Mentir*.

### EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

As soon as they saw us coming they ran away  
*voir, v. venir, v.*

- - - Avoid bad company. - - He does not love your  
*compagnie, f.*

sister, because she lies. - - If you forgive me this time,  
*parce que, c. fois, f.*

I never will lie any more. - - I cannot believe him;  
*pouvoir, v.*

for he contradicts himself at every instant. - - Tell  
*car, c. Dire, v.*

me what she has done to you; but above all do not lie.  
*sur, p.*

- - If you do not behave better, your mother will  
*se comporter, v.*

die with grief. - - Mrs. S. died at Paris on the seventh  
*de chagrin, m. à*

of August, one thousand seven hundred and eighty.  
*Août, m.*

- - Misfortune often seeks those who avoid it, and  
*Malheur, m. chercher, v.*

sometimes avoids those who seem to seek it. - -  
*quelquefois, adv. sembler, v.*

Were I in your place, I would not offer her any money.  
*Si j'étois à*

- - Why do you not open the door for your sister?  
*Pourquoi, adv. à*

-- Your brother ~~was~~ no sooner arrived in London, than  
*phutôt, adv. à*

I offered him my services. -- Your actions never belie  
 your words. -- Open the window. -- I had heard you  
 were going to Holland at the beginning of next  
*au commencement, m.*

month. -- I hope you will never discover what I have  
*espérer, v.*

told you. -- Cover my hat, and put it upon that  
*dire, v. mettre, v.*

chair. -- I will set out to-morrow morning at seven  
 (o'clock). -- Do not set out without me. -- Let us go and  
*heure, f.*

see Mrs. D\*\*, I have heard she is dying. -- Your sister  
 repents much of having sold her books. -- Gather that  
*d'avoir*

pink, it smells charmingly. -- Her mother says she  
*aïlet, m. bien bon, adv.*

never will consent to it. -- If you do not take  
*prendre, v.*

care, you will repent of your imprudence soon or  
*garde, f. tôt, adv.*

late. -- Let us die for our country, and our death will  
*tard, adv. patrie, f.*

be glorious. -- Every citizen ought to be disposed to  
*glorieux, adj. doit*

sacrifice himself for the public good; it is at this  
*bien ce, pro. à, p.*

price only that (a man) acquires a lawful right  
*on légitime, adj. droit, m.*

to the advantages of civil society. -- I should die  
 satisfied, if I knew you were happy. --  
*content, adj. savoir, v. (by the subj.)*

You soon felt the effect of it. -- My cousin set out  
*effet, m.*

from here yesterday morning at nine o'clock. -- I  
*ici, adv.*

offer you my house, it is at your service. -- You  
 may rely upon her, she will never discover  
*ouvoir, v. compter, v.*



your secrets. - - I will never offer you my<sup>2</sup> horse<sup>3</sup> any  
 more<sup>4</sup>. - - He will feel it in his turn, when he  
   à          tour, m.  
       is          old.  
 (by the fut.)

## SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP TO.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.      *Servir*, to serve.  
 Part. act.    *Servant*, serving.  
 Part. pass.   *Servi*, ie, served.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present.

Sing. *Sers*,      *sers*,      *sert*, I serve, or am serving.  
 Plur. *Servons*, *servez*,    *servent*,

#### Imperfect.

Sing. *Servois*,    *servois*,    *servoit*, I did serve, or was  
 Plur. *Servions*,   *serviez*,    *servoient*,            serving.

#### Preterite.

Sing. *Servis*,      *servis*,      *servit*, I did serve, or served.  
 Plur. *Servîmes*   *servîtes*,   *servirent*,

#### Future.

Sing. *Servirai*,   *serviras*,   *servira*, I shall, or will serve.  
 Plur. *Servirons*, *servirez*,   *serviront*,

#### Conditional.

Sing. *Servirois*,   *servirois*,   *serviroit*, I would, should, or  
 Plur. *Servirions*, *serviriez*,   *serviroient*,            could serve.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.                    *Sers*,      *serve*, serve thou.  
 Plur. *Servons*,   *servez*,   *servent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Serve,</i>	<i>serves,</i>	<i>serve,</i> that I may serve.
Plur.	<i>Servions</i>	<i>serviez,</i>	<i>servent,</i>

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Servisse,</i>	<i>servisses,</i>	<i>servît,</i> that I might serve.
Plur.	<i>Servissions,</i>	<i>servissiez,</i>	<i>servissent,</i>

The compounds of this verb are,

*Desservir,* to do an ill office, to clear a table.

*Se servir,* to make use, to use.

**SORTIR,** TO GO OUT,  
is conjugated like **MENTIR.**

**SOUFFRIR,** TO SUFFER,  
is conjugated like **OFFRIR.**

**TENIR,** TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Tenir,</i> to hold.
Part. act.	<i>Tenant,</i> holding.
Part. pass.	<i>Tenu, ue,</i> held.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Tiens,</i>	<i>tiens,</i>	<i>tient,</i> I hold, or am holding.
Plur.	<i>Tenons,</i>	<i>tenez,</i>	<i>tiennent,</i>

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Tenois,</i>	<i>tenois,</i>	<i>tenoit,</i> I did hold, or was holding.
Plur.	<i>Tenions,</i>	<i>teniez,</i>	<i>tenoient,</i>

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Tins,</i>	<i>tins,</i>	<i>tint,</i> I held, or did hold.
Plur.	<i>Tinmes,</i>	<i>tintes,</i>	<i>tinrent,</i>

## Future.

Sing. *Tiendrai, tiendras, tiendra*, I shall, or will hold.Plur. *Tiendrons, tiendrez, tiendront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Tiendrois, tiendrois, tiendrait*, I should, could, orPlur. *Tiendrions tiendriez, tiendraient*, would hold.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Tiens, tienne*, hold thou.Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que Tienne, que tiennes, que tienne*, that I may hold.Plur. *Tenions, teniez, tiennent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Tinsse, tinsses, tint*, that I might hold.Plur. *Tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*S'abstenir*, to abstain.*Appartenir*, to belong.*Contenir*, to contain.*Détenir*, to detain.*Entretenir*, to keep, to entertain.*Maintenir*, to maintain.*Obtenir*, to obtain.*Retenir*, to retain, to keep.*Soutenir*, to maintain, to hold, to support.**TRESSAILLIR, TO START, TO LEAP FOR.**

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Tressaillir*, to start.Part. act. *Tressaillant*, starting.Part. pass. *Tressailli, ie*, started.

# INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Tressaille, tressailles, tressaille, I start.*

Plur. *Tressaillons, tressaillez, tressailent,*

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Tressaillois, tressaillois, tressailloit, I did start.*

Plur. *Tressaillions, tressaillez, tressailloient,*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Tressaillis, tressaillis, tressaillit, I started.*

Plur. *Tressaillimes, tressaillites, tressaillirent,*

## Future.

Sing. *Tressaillirai, tressailliras, tressaillira, I shall, or  
will start.*

Plur. *Tressaillirons, tressaillirez, tressailliront,*

## Conditional.

Sing. *Tressaillirois, tressaillirois, tressailliroit, I should,  
would, &c. start.*

Plur. *Tressaillirions, tressailliriez, tressailliroient,*

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

# SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que tressaille, que tressailles, que tressaille, that I may*  
Plur. *Tressaillions, tressaillez, tressailent, start.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Tressaillisse, tressaillisses, tressaillit, that I might*

Plur. *Tressaillions, tressaillissiez, tressaillissent, start.*

*ASSAILLIR*, TO ASSAULT, is conjugated as above.

*SAILLIR*, TO JUT, OR JET OUT (term in architecture), is conjugated like *TRESSAILLIR*, but is only used in the third person of some tenses and its infinitive mood.

**N. B. SAILLIR**, TO GUSH OUT, (speaking of any liquid), is regular, and conjugated like **PUNIR**.

**VENIR, TO COME,**  
And its compounds,

<i>Convenir de</i> , à, to agree, to become, to fit, to suit,	<i>Revenir</i> , to come back, to return,
<i>Contrevenir</i> à, to infringe,	<i>Se souvenir de</i> , to remember, to remind,†
<i>Devenir</i> , to become,*	<i>Se ressouvenir de</i> , to recollect,
<i>Disconvenir de</i> , to disagree,	<i>Subvenir</i> à, to relieve, to assist,
<i>Intervenir</i> à, to intervene,	<i>Survenir</i> , to befall, to happen unexpectedly,
<i>Parvenir</i> à, to attain to,	to come to,
<i>Prévenir</i> , to prevent, to prejudice, to anticipate, to prepossess,	
<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed,	
are conjugated like <b>TENIR</b> .	

**VETIR, TO CLOTHE.**

This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive mood, and participle passive, *vêtu*, clothed; therefore the conjugation of its compound **REVETIR**, TO INVEST WITH, TO GIVE OTHER CLOTHES, will be given in lieu of it.

\* This verb in English is most generally accompanied by the preposition *of*, governing the noun or pronoun: but it must be observed, that, in French, the preposition must be suppressed, and the noun or pronoun become the nominative to the verb *devenir*: ex.

<i>Ne vous informez point de ce que je deviendrai,</i>	Do not inquire about what will become of me.
<i>Que deviendra votre cousin si son père l'abandonne?</i>	What will become of your cousin, if his father forsake him?
<i>Si cela arrivoit, je ne sais ce que nous deviendrions,</i>	Should that happen, I know not what would become of us.

† When this verb, in English, governs a noun or pronoun in the accusative case, it must be put in the infinitive mood, and preceded by the verb *faire* in the same tense, number, and person, as the verb *to remind*: ex.

<i>Faites-moi souvenir de passer chez votre tante,</i>	Remind me to call upon your aunt.
<i>Où, je vous en ferai souvenir,</i>	Yes, I will remind you of it.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Revêtir*, to invest, to give other clothes.  
 Part. act. *Revêtant*, investing.  
 Part. pass. *Revêtu*, *ue*, invested.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Revêts*, *revêts*, *revêt*, I invest.  
 Plur. *Revêtons*, *revêtez*, *revêtent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Revêtois*, *revêtois*, *revêtoit*, I did invest.  
 Plur. *Revétions*, *revétiez*, *revêtoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Revétis*, *revétis*, *revêtit*, I invested, or did in-  
 Plur. *Revétimes*, *revétîtes*, *revétirent*, vest.

## Future.

Sing. *Revêtirai*, *revêtiras*, *revêtira*, I shall, or will in-  
 Plur. *Revêtirons*, *revêtirez*, *revêtiront*, vest.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Revêtirois*, *revêtirois*, *revêtiroit*, I should, would,  
 Plur. *Revétirions*, *revétiriez*, *revêtiroient*, &c. invest.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Revêts*, *revête*, invest thou.  
 Plur. *Revêtons*, *revêtez*, *revêtent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Que *que que*  
 Sing. *Revête*, *revêtes*, *revête*, that I may invest.  
 Plur. *Revétions*, *revétiez*, *revêtent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Revétisse*, *revétisses*, *revétit*, that I might invest.  
 Plur. *Revétissions*, *revétissiez*, *revétissent*,

# EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Your friend Mr. H\*\*\*, does not serve me well. - -  
*ami, m.*

Shall I help you to a little bit *of* lamb,  
*morceau, m. agneau, m.*

or a wing of that chicken? - - ; - We would  
*aile, f. poulet, m.*

serve him with all our heart, if we could. - - - I  
*de pouvoir, v.*

shall go out in half an hour. - - If we go to-day  
*aujourd'hui, adv.*

to Richmond, we will (make use of) your coach. - - My  
*se servir de carrosse, m.*

sister went out this morning at nine o'clock, and is not  
*matin, m.*

yet returned. - - Nobody knows what we suffered in our  
*savoir, v.*

last voyage. - - If I were as ill as you, I would  
*voyage, m. malade, adj.*

not go out of my room. - - Why do not you  
*chambre, f. Pourquoi, adv.*

serve your friends, since you may do it? - - -  
*puisque, c. pouvoir, v.*

Should they forsake you, what would become of  
*abandonner, v.*

you? - - I would make use of your horse, if you were  
*cheval, m. avoir*

so kind as to lend it to me. - - - The more we are  
*la bonté de*

above others, the more it becomes us to be  
*au dessus de, p.*

modest and humble. - - My aunt and I came yester-  
*ante, f.*

day to see you, but you were not at home. - - I  
hope you will keep your word, and come  
*parole, f.*

to-morrow. - - - I assure you Mr. R\*\*'s father holds  
*demain, adv. assurer, v.*

the first rank in the town, but the son will never  
*rang, m.*

attain his father's reputation. - - Men acquire, by  
*Homme, m.*

long labours, knowledge which often becomes  
*travail, m. lumière, f.*

fatal to them. - - - I maintain, and will always  
*funeste, adj.*

maintain, that you will not be happy without  
*heureux, adj. sans, p.*

virtue. - - We were coming to see you, but you have  
anticipated all my designs. - - She leaped for joy when  
*de*

she saw her. - - At last she has agreed to pay her  
*Enfin, adv. \* de*

an annual pension of twenty pounds. - - Her mother  
started up at these words, and became furious. - - -

*à, p. parole, f. furieux, adj.*  
Come on Friday morning at nine o'clock. - - -

*Vendredi, m.*  
This house will belong to me after her death. - - -

*après, p. mort, f.*  
You will obtain leave to go out another time,

*permission, f. de fois, f.*  
if you come back soon. - - - This box contains all  
*bientôt, adv.*

my jewels. - - - I agree Miss N. is the prettiest of the  
*bijoux, m. pl.*

family; but she is so proud, that I know not what will  
become of her. - - Who knows whether they will re-  
*savoir, v. si, c.*

member it or not? - - They assaulted the town (in the)  
*au*

middle of the night, and all their officers, even  
*milieu, m. même, adv.*

the general, agree that they have acquired much  
*acquérir, p.p.*

glory. - - Remember that, if you infringe the law, you

\* See the neuter verbs for the formation of the compound tenses  
page 212.



will incur the punishments decreed by the law. - - -  
*peine, f. porté, p.p.*  
 Your illness proceeds from a great heat. - - - The  
*chaleur, f.*  
 first time you come to see me, I will keep you  
 (by the fut.)  
 two or three days. - - Mr. B. desired me to tell you,  
*prier, v. de*  
 that he will not come back to-day. - - - When the  
 surgeon had opened his vein, the blood gushed  
*chirurgien, m. sang, m.*  
 out with an extraordinary impetuosity. - - That poor  
 man will bless you, if you give him other clothes. - -  
*bénir, v.*  
 He is so prepossessed against me, that he will not  
*contre, p. vouloir, v.*  
 agree he (is in the wrong). - - We should certainly  
*avoir tort certainement, adv.*  
 have come back yesterday, had we had time. - - You will  
*hier, adv.*  
 become a great man, if you continue to study with  
*continuer, v. de*  
 the same assiduity. - - He would have come to see us  
*assiduité, f. \**  
 last week, if it had not rained. - - The first time  
*semaine, f. plu, p.p. fois, f.*  
 I go out, remind me to call on your bro-  
 (by the fut.) *de passer, v. chez, p.*  
 ther. - - - That hat would suit you very well, if you  
 were a little taller. - - - Do not go out to-day, you  
 will suffer much if you do. - - - I should not suffer  
*beaucoup, adv.*  
 (so much) if it were fine weather. - - Why do not  
*tant, adv. faisoit, v.*  
 you abstain from drinking? - - The king has invested  
*boire, v.*  
 that nobleman with all his authority. - - You may  
*seigneur, m. de Pouvoir, v.*  
 set out this morning, but remember to come back  
*de*

at night. - - Were I in your place, I would detain  
*ce soir, m.* *place, f.*  
 him here a little longer ; for he always keeps  
*long-temps, adv. car, c.*  
 himself shut up in his house. - - I do not think that  
*enfermé, p.p.* *croire, v.*  
 colour suits your sister. - - When will she return  
 (by the subj.) *Quand, adv.*  
 from the country ? - - She wrote she would come next  
 Saturday, if the weather were fine.

## VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

### ASSEOIR, TO SIT DOWN.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Asseoir*, to sit down.  
 Part. act. *Asseyant*, sitting down.  
 Part. pass. *Assis, ise*, sat down (or seated).

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. *Assieds*, *assieds*, *assied*, I sit down.  
 Plur. *Asseyons*, *asseyez*, *asseient*,

##### Imperfect.

Sing. *Asseyois*, *asseyois*, *asseyoit*, I did sit, or was sit-  
 Plur. *Asseyions*, *asseyiez*, *asseyoient*, ting down.

##### Preterite.

Sing. *Assis*, *assis*, *assit*, I sat down.  
 Plur. *Assîmes*, *assîtes*, *assirent*,

##### Future.

Sing. *Assièrai*, *assièras*, *assiéra*, I shall, or will sit  
 Plur. *Assièrons*, *assièrez*, *assièront*, down.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Assiérois, assiérois, assiéroit*, I should, would, or  
 Plur. *Assiérions, assiériez, assiéroient*, could sit down.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Assieds, asseie*, sit down.  
 Plur. *Asseyons, asseyez, asseient*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Que que que  
 Sing. *Asseie, asseies, asseie*, that I may sit down.  
 Plur. *Asseyions, asseyiez, asseient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Assisse, assisses, assit*, that I might sit down.  
 Plur. *Assissions, assissiez, assissent*,

*r* is most generally conjugated as a reflected  
 hich may easily be done, by the learner adding  
 le pronoun to the different tenses, and forming  
 mpound ones by the verb *être*, as in *se prome-*  
*ex.*

*m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied;*  
*Nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

*Je me suis assis, tu t'es assis, il s'est assis ;*  
*Nous nous sommes assis, vous vous êtes assis, &c.*

The compound of this verb is,

*Se rasseoir*, to sit down again.

**SEOIR**, TO FIT WELL, TO BECOME, TO FIT, the  
 primitive of *asseoir*, is never used in the present of its  
 infinitive mood ; and in its other tenses is conjugated as  
 follows :

Part. act. *Séant*, fitting well, fitting, or becoming.

Part. pass. *Sis*, (never used but in the sense of situate,  
 or lying.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Il sied,</i>	<i>ils sièent,</i>	it becomes, they become, &c.
Imperfect.	<i>Il s'étoit,</i>	<i>ils s'étoient,</i>	it was becoming, &c.
Preterite wanting.			
Future.	<i>Il siéra,</i>	<i>ils siéront,</i>	it or they will become.
Conditional.	<i>Il siéroit,</i>	<i>ils siéroient,</i>	it or they would become.

The other tenses are never used.

**SURSEOIR**, TO SUPERSEDE, TO PUT OFF, a compound of *seoir*, is only used in law, and is thus conjugated :

Part. act. *Sursoyant.*

Part. pass. *Sursis, isc.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

*Je sursois, &c. nous sursoyons, &c.*

Imperfect.

*Je sursoyois, &c. nous sursoyions, &c.*

Preterite.

*Je sursis, &c. nous sursîmes, &c.*

Future.

*Je surseoirai, &c. nous surseoirons, &c.*

Conditional.

*Je surseoirois, &c. nous surseoirions, &c.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sursois, &c. sursoyons, &c.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

*Que je surseöie, &c. que nous sursoyions, &c.*

Preterite.

*e je sursisse, &c. que nous sursissions, &c.*

**DECHOIR, TO DECAY, TO DECLINE.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Déchoir*, to decay.  
 Part. act. wanting.  
 Part. pass. *Déchu*, *ue*, decayed.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing. *Déchois*, *déchois*, *déchoit*, I decay.  
 Plur. *Déchoyons*, *déchoyez*, *déchoient*,

Imperfect is wanting.

**Preterite.**

Sing. *Déchus*, *déchus*, *déchut*, I decayed, or did  
 Plur. *Déchûmes*, *déchûtes*, *déchurent*, decay.

**Future.**

Sing. *Décherrai*, *décherras*, *décherra*, I shall, or will  
 Plur. *Décherrons*, *décherrez*, *décherront*, decay.

**Conditional.**

Sing. *Décherrois*, *décherrois*, *décherroit*, I should, would,  
 or could decay.  
 Plur. *Décherriions*, *décherriez*, *décherroient*,

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Déchoie*, *déchoies*, *déchoie*, that I may decay.  
 Plur. *Déchoyions*, *déchoyiez*, *déchoient*,

**Preterite.**

Sing. *Déchusse*, *déchusses*, *déchût*, that I might decay.  
 Plur. *Déchussions*, *déchussiez*, *déchussent*,

*CHOIR*, the primitive of the above verb is obsolete.

*ECHOIR*, TO FALL OUT, TO CHANCE, is conjugated  
 like *DÉCHOIR*. Its part. act. is *échéants*, *échu*, p. p.

**MOUVOIR, TO MOVE.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Mouvoir, to move.</i>
Part. act.	<i>Mouvant, moving.</i>
Part. pass.	<i>Mû, ue, moved.</i>

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Meus, meus, meut, I move.</i>
Plur.	<i>Mouvons, mouvez, meuvent,</i>

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Mouvois, mouvois, mouvoit, I did move.</i>
Plur.	<i>Mouvions, moviez, mouvoient,</i>

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Mus, mus, mut, I moved, or did move.</i>
Plur.	<i>Mêmes, mûtes, murent,</i>

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Mouvrai, movras, mouvra, I shall, or will move.</i>
Plur.	<i>Mouvrons, movrez, mouvront,</i>

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Mouvrais, movrais, mouvrait, I should, could, or</i>
Plur.	<i>Mouvriers, movriez, mouvraient, would move.</i>

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Meus, meuve, move thou.</i>
Plur.	<i>Mouvons, mouvez, meuvent,</i>

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Meuve,</i>	<i>meuves,</i>	<i>meuve,</i>	<i>that I may move.</i>
Plur.	<i>Mouvions</i>	<i>mouvriez,</i>	<i>meuvent,</i>	

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Musse, musses, mût, that I might move.</i>
Plur.	<i>Mussions, mussiez, mussent,</i>

The compound of this verb is,

*Emouvoir, to stir up, to move.*

**POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE, TO HAVE IN ONE'S POWER.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Pouvoir</i> , to be able.
Part. act.	<i>Pouvant</i> , being able.
Part. pass.	<i>Pu</i> , been able.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Puis</i> , or <i>peux</i> , <i>peux</i> , <i>peut</i> , I am able, I can or may.
Plur.	<i>Pouvons</i> , <i>pouvez</i> , <i>peuvent</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Pouvois</i> , <i>pouvais</i> , <i>pouvoit</i> , I was able, or I could.
Plur.	<i>Pouvions</i> , <i>pouviez</i> , <i>pouvoient</i> ,

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Pus</i> , <i>pus</i> , <i>put</i> , I was able, or I could.
Plur.	<i>Pûmes</i> , <i>pûtes</i> , <i>purent</i> ,

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Pourrai</i> , <i>pourras</i> , <i>pourra</i> , I shall, or will be able.
Plur.	<i>Pourrons</i> , <i>pourrez</i> , <i>pourront</i> ,

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Pourrois</i> , <i>pourrais</i> , <i>pourroit</i> , I should be able, I
Plur.	<i>Pourrions</i> , <i>pourriez</i> , <i>pourroient</i> , could, or might.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD wanting.****SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Puisse</i> ,	<i>puisses</i> ,	<i>puisse</i> ,	that I may be able, or
Plur.	<i>Puissions</i> ,	<i>puissiez</i> ,	<i>puissent</i> ,	I may.

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Pusse</i> ,	<i>pusses</i> ,	<i>pût</i> ,	that I might be able, or
Plur.	<i>Pussions</i> ,	<i>pussiez</i> ,	<i>pussent</i> ,	I might.

When the words *can*, *may*, *could*, or *might*, express an absolute or permissive power, or a possibility of doing a thing, *can* and *may* are rendered by the present tense of the indicative of this verb: ex.

*Je puis vous vendre un bon cheval, si vous en avez besoin d'un,* I can sell you a good horse, if you want one.

*Vous pouvez aller au bal, mais revenez à dix heures,* You may go to the ball, but come back at ten o'clock.

N. B. *May*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present tense of the subjunctive: ex.

*Puissiez-vous être heureux !* May you be happy !

*Could* is rendered by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite definite or indefinite, or conditional present; and *might* by the last tense: ex.

*Je ne pouvois pas mieux faire,* I could do no better.

*Il ne put pas venir avec nous la semaine passée,* He could not come with us last week.

*Vous pourriez vous tromper aussi bien que lui,* You might mistake as well as he.

*Could* or *might*, being joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle turned into the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

*J'aurois pu vous le dire hier au soir,* I could have told it to you last night.

*Vous auriez pu le faire en trois jours,* You might have done it in three days.

### SAVOIR, TO KNOW something.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Savoir</i> , to know.
Part. act.	<i>Sachant</i> , knowing
Part. pass.	<i>Su, ue</i> , known.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing.	<i>Sais</i> ,	<i>sais</i> ,	<i>sait</i> , I know.
ur.	<i>Savons</i> ,	<i>savez</i> ,	<i>savent</i> ,



## Imperfect.

Sing. *Savois, savois, savoit*, I did know, or knew.Plur. *Savions, saviez, savoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Sus, sus, sut*, I knew, or did know.Plur. *Sûmes, sûtes, surent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Saurai, sauras, saura*, I shall, or will know.Plur. *Saurons, saurez, sauront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Saurois,\* saurois, sauroit*, I should, would, orPlur. *Saurions, sauriez, sauroient*, could know.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Sache, sache*, know thou.Plur. *Sachons, sachez, sachent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que Sache,† que saches, que sache*, that I may know.Plur. *Sachions, sachiez, sachent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Susse, susses, sût*, that I might know.Plur. *Sussions, sussiez, sussent*,

---

VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Valoir*, to be worth.Part. act. *Valant*, being worth.Part. pass. *Valu*, been worth.\* This tense, conjugated negatively, is often Englished by *cannot*:

ex.

*Je ne saurois vous le dire,* I cannot tell it to you.† We sometimes employ the present of the subjunctive of this verb instead of the indicative; but it is never to be used without the negation *pas*, and most commonly in answering a question: ex.*Le roi ira-t-il à la comédie?* Will the king go to the play?*Pas que je sache,* Not that I know of.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Vaux*, *vaut*, *vaut*, I am worth.  
 Plur. *Valons*, *valez*, *valent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Valois*, *valois*, *valoit*, I was worth.  
 Plur. *Valions*, *valiez*, *valoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Valus*, *valus*, *valut*, I was worth,  
 Plur. *Valûmes*, *valûtes*, *valurent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Vaudrai*, *audras*, *audra*, I shall, or will be  
 Plur. *Vaudrons*, *audrez*, *audront*, worth.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Vaudrois*, *audrois*, *audroit*, I should, &c. be  
 Plur. *Vaudrions*, *audriez*, *audroient*, worth.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vaux*, *vaille*, be thou worth.  
 Plur. *Valons*, *valez*, *vailent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Vaille*, *vailles*, *vaille*, that I may be worth.  
 Plur. *Valions*, *valiez*, *vailent*.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Valusse*, *valusses*, *valût*, that I might be worth.  
 Plur. *Valussions*, *valussiez*, *valussent*,

The compound of this verb is,

*Prévaloir*, to prevail, is conjugated as *VALOIR*:  
 but we say in the present tense of the subjunctive.

*Que je préval-e, es, e : ions, iez, ent.*

**VOIR, TO SEE.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Voir</i> , to see.
Part. act.	<i>Voyant</i> , seeing.
Part. pass.	<i>Vu</i> , <i>ue</i> , seen.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Vois</i> , <i>vois</i> , <i>voit</i> , I see.
Plur.	<i>Voyons</i> , <i>voyez</i> , <i>voient</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Voyois</i> , <i>voyois</i> , <i>voyoit</i> , I did see.
Plur.	<i>Voyions</i> , <i>voyiez</i> , <i>voyoient</i> ,

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Vis</i> , <i>vis</i> , <i>vit</i> , I saw, or did see.
Plur.	<i>Vîmes</i> , <i>vîtes</i> , <i>virent</i> ,

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Verrai</i> , <i>verras</i> , <i>verra</i> , I shall, or will see.
Plur.	<i>Verrons</i> , <i>verrez</i> , <i>verront</i> ,

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Verrois</i> , <i>verrois</i> , <i>verroit</i> , I should, &c. see.
Plur.	<i>Verrions</i> , <i>verriez</i> , <i>verroient</i> ,

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Vois</i> , <i>voie</i> , see thou.
Plur.	<i>Voyons</i> , <i>voyez</i> , <i>voient</i> ,

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
<b>Sing.</b>	<i>Voie,</i>	<i>voies,</i>	<i>voie,</i>	that I may see.
<b>Plur.</b>	<i>Voyions,</i>	<i>voyiez,</i>	<i>voient,</i>	

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Visse</i> , <i>visses</i> , <i>vît</i> , that I might see.
Plur.	<i>Vissions</i> , <i>vissiez</i> , <i>vissent</i> ,

<i>Entrevoir</i> , to have a glimpse of.	<i>Prévoir</i> , to foresee.
<i>Revoir</i> , to see again.	<i>Pourvoir</i> , to provide.

**PREVOIR** differs from **VOIR** in the future : ex.

Sing. *Prévoirai, prévoiras, prévoira,*  
 Plur. *Prévoirons, prévoirez, prévoiront ;* And,

Conditional. Present.

Sing. *Prévoirois, prévoirois, prévoiroit.*  
 Plur. *Prévoirions, prévoiriez, prévoiroient.*

**POURVOIR** makes in the Preterite,

Sing. *Pourvus, pourvus, pourvut.*  
 Plur. *Pourvûmes, pourvûtes, pourvurent.*

Future.

Sing. *Pourvoirai, pourvoiras, pourvoira.*  
 Plur. *Pourvoirons, pourvoirez, pourvoiront.*

Conditional.

Sing. *Pourvoirois, pourvoirois, pourvoiroit.*  
 Plur. *Pourvoirions, pourvoiriez, pourvoiroient.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

Preterite.

Sing. *Pourvusse, pourvusses, pourvût.*  
 Plur. *Pourvussions, pourvussiez, pourvussent.*

**VOULOIR, TO BE WILLING.**

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Vouloir, to be willing.*  
 Part. act. *Voulant, being willing.*  
 Part. pass. *Voulu, ue, been willing.*

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Present.

Sing. *Veux, veux, veut, I am willing, or I will.*  
 Plur. *Voulons, voulez, veulent.*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Voulois, voulois, vouloit, I was willing, or I would.*  
 Plur. *Voudions, vouliez, vouloient.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Voulus, vculus, voulut*, I was willing, or I  
 Plur. *Voulûmes, voulûtes, voulurent*, would.

## Future.

Sing. *Voudrai, voudras, voudra*, I shall be willing, or  
 Plur. *Voudrons, voudrez, voudront*, I will.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Voudrois, voudrois, voudroit*, I should be willing,  
 Plur. *Voudrions, voudriez, voudroient*, or I would.

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

However, we say,

*Veillez bien*, be willing to.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Veuille, veuilles, veuille*, that I may be willing.  
 Plur. *Vou lions, vouliez, veuillent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Voulusse, voulusses, voulut*, that I might be wil-  
 Plur. *Voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent*, ling.

When the words *will* or *would* signify a will, choice, or deliberation in the agent, and can be expressed by *choose* or *chose*; *will* is rendered in French by the present of the indicative mood, or future of this verb: ex.

*Je veux y aller, et lui par-* I will, or choose to, go  
*ler moi-même,* there, and speak to him  
 myself:

*Il ne veut pas manger,* He will not eat, or does  
 not choose to eat:

and *would* by one of the following tenses, viz. the Imperfect, Preterite, Conditional, or Compound of the Present.

<i>Si je voulois, je vous dirois où elle demeure,</i>	If I would, or chose, I could tell you where she lives.
<i>Il voulut absolument partir hier,</i>	He would, absolutely, or absolutely chose to, set out yesterday.
<i>Que voudriez-vous que je fisse ?</i>	What would you have me do ?

When *would* is joined to the verb *to have* immediately followed by a participle passive, they are to be rendered by the compound of the imperfect or compound of the conditional of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

<i>Si j'avois voulu lui parler,</i>	If I would have spoken to him, or had I chosen to speak to him.
<i>Vous n'auriez pas voulu prendre les armes, si, &amp;c.</i>	You would not have taken up arms, if, &c.
<i>Nous aurions pu l'arrêter si nous eussions voulu,</i>	We could have stopped him, if we would, or had chosen.

### EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Why do not you sit down, sir? -- You *Pourquoi, adv.*  
 come to see me very seldom. -- Let us sit down upon *rarement, adv.*  
 the grass. -- Do not make (so much) noise, I cannot *herbe, f. faire, v. tant, adv.*  
 learn my lesson. -- Do you know what has hap- *apprendre, v. arri-*  
 pened to her? -- No, I do not. -- As soon as he saw *ver, v. Aussitôt que, c.*  
 he could not make her hear reason, he went *entendre, v. s'en*  
 away. -- We went there ourselves, and soon knew *aller, v. bientôt, adv.*

what she asked. -- See the letter she wrote me. -- We  
*écrire, v.*  
 will not sit down till you have determined to  
*que ne se déterminer, v. subj. à*  
 set out. -- The first time I saw your sister, she pleased  
*fois, f. plaire, v.*  
 me. -- I would sit down upon the grass, if it were not so  
 damp. -- Mrs. P. desired me to tell you she could  
*humide, adj. prier, v. dire, v.*  
 not come to see you this week, but she would cer-  
*semaine, f. cer-*  
 tainly come at the beginning of next  
*tainement, adv. au commencement, m.*  
 month. -- Cannot you lend me three or four  
*mois, m. prêter, v.*  
 guineas? -- If I would, I could soon know  
*guinée, f. bientôt, adv.*  
 whether Mrs. D. has seen your aunt or not. --  
*si, c. tante, f.*  
 The last time I was in the park, I could not distinguish  
 her on account of the trees that were between  
*à cause, p.*  
 her and me; (I had only a) glimpse of her. -- --  
*je n'ai fait que*  
 This cloth is not worth five shillings a yard, but its  
*drap, m.*  
 colour becomes you very well. -- Do you not see the  
 defects of it? -- When you know your lesson  
*défaut, m. (by the fut.)*  
 come and repeat it to me. -- Did you not know that  
*répéter, v.*  
 Mr. A. was to marry Miss B.? -- -- I knew it, but  
*épouser, v. mais, c.*  
 I was not willing to tell your brother of it. -- -- I be-  
*parler, v.*  
 lieve you could learn your lessons much bet-  
*apprendre, v. beaucoup, adv.*  
 ter, if you would, -- Could you lend me your horse  
*prêter, v.*

for two or three days? - - If your brother come with  
*jour, m.* *avec, p.*  
 me, will he be able to follow me? - - What will you  
*sivre, v.*

lay that he will not come without his sister? - - This  
*parier, v.*

room can contain about a hundred people. - - Could  
*environ, p.* *personne, f.*

they see so great an alteration, without being  
*changement, m.* *sans, p.*

vexed (at it)? - - It is better to be unfortunate than  
*fâché, p.p.* *en, pro.* *valoir, v.* *malheureux, adj.*

criminal. - - He is incapable of commanding others, who  
 cannot command himself. - - His best coat was not

*se* *habit, m.*  
 worth two-pence when he arrived from Germany. - - -  
*sou, m.* *Allemagne, f.*

We saw them yesterday. - - They did not foresee  
*hier, adv.*

what would happen to them. - - We ought to  
*arriver, v.* *devoir, v.*

make a judicious choice of those friends, to  
*faire, v.* *judicieux, adj.* *choix, m.*

whom we intend to give our confidence. - - Do you  
*vouloir, v.* *confiance, f.*

know where Miss B. lives? - - Yes, I do (know it),  
*où, adv.* *demeurer, v.*

and I see her every day at her window. - - Why will  
*fenêtre, f.*

you not tell it me? - - She would marry him in  
*épouser, v.* *en, p.*

spite of all her relations. - - It is for this reason  
*dépit, m.* *parent, m.* *Ce, pro.*

her father says he will never see her again. - - I  
*dire, v.*

have spoken of your wine to two friends of mine:  
 one has money, but he will not buy; the other would  
 buy, but he has no money. - - Some told me that  
 your brother could not pay me, others told me that



he would not; in short, I find that, when people  
*enfin, adv.*

will not pay, we have much trouble. -- We regularly  
 pay all that we owe, but he says that he will pay  
 nobody. -- All the finest talents united are not

• *réunir, v.*  
 worth one virtue. -- Virtue is a quality which we can-  
*on, pro.*

not praise (too much.) -- Severity and rigour may  
*louer, v. trop, adv. Sévérité, f. rigueur, f.*

excite fear, but not love. -- You saw with what  
*crainte, f. amour, m.*

goodness she received him. -- I would not tell her  
*bonté, f. recevoir, v.*

what I think about it, for fear of giving her the least  
*de, p. imp.*

subject of complaint. -- If you foresee the danger,  
*plainte, f.*

why do you not endeavour to avoid it? -- They were  
*tâcher, v. de éviter, v.*

willing to withdraw but your brother hindered  
*se retirer, v. empêcher, v.*

them (from it), and desired them to sit down again.  
*prier, v. de*

-- You can speak to Mr. B. whenever you  
*parler, v. quand, adv.*

please, but I may not take that liberty. ---  
*vouloir, v. prendre, v.*

Why may you not? -- -- You know the esteem  
*estime, f.*

and friendship that I have for him: you know  
 that his father is one of my oldest friends;

*ancien, adj.*  
 you yourself know the merit of both. -- He would

not sell me these buckles under four  
*vendre, v. boucle, f. à moins de, p.*

guineas. -- I will not see your brother (any more),  
*plus, adv.*

but I will see you again as soon as I can. ---  
*(by the fut.)*

Every body thinks, that, if they would have pursued  
the enemy briskly, *poursuivre, v.* they might have ended  
*vigoureusement, adv.* *finir, v.*  
the war on that day. - - Should we see ourselves re-  
duced to so great difficulties? - - If I would have be-  
lieved him, he would have persuaded me to go to Italy  
*croire, v.* *de*  
with him. - - He could have done his work in less  
*faire, v.* *en, p.*  
than ten minutes, if he had not amused himself in  
*s'amuser, v.* *à*  
reading. - - If you want that book, you may take  
*lire, v.* *avoir besoin de*  
it, it is at your service. - - If he sold all his horses now,  
*à*  
the best of them would not be worth ten guineas. - - -  
We might have danced till (twelve o'clock) if  
*jusqu'à, p.* *minuit, m.*  
that had not happened. - - Oh! my children, may you  
be happy, and never bewail the moment of your  
*heureux, adj.* *pleurer, v.*  
birth! - - I spoke to her (a long while), but could  
*naissance, f.* *long-tems, adv.*  
not persuade her to come with me. - - May I go  
*de*  
and see him? - - - Yes, you may, but come back  
as soon as you can.  
*aussitôt que, c.* (by the fut.)

## VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*ABSOUTRE*, TO ABSOLVE, TO ACQUIT.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Absoudre*, to absolve.  
 Part. act. *Absolvant*, absolving.  
 Part. pass. *Absous, oute*, absolved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Absous*, *absous*, *absout*, I absolve.  
 Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Absolvois*, *absolvois*, *absolveit*, I did absolve.  
 Plur. *Absolvions*, *absolviez*, *absolvoient*,

Preterite is wanting.

## Future.

Sing. *Absoudrai*, *absoudras*, *absoudra*, I shall, or will  
 Plur. *Absoudrons*, *absoudrez*, *absoudront*, absolve.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Absoudrois*, *absoudrois*, *absoudroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Absoudrions*, *absoudriez*, *absoudroient*, absolve.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Absous*, *absolve*, absolve thou.  
 Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Absolve*, *absolves*, *absolve*, that I may absolve.  
 Plur. *Absolvions*, *absolviez*, *absolvent*,

Preterite is wanting.

*SOUTRE*, TO SOLVE, (the primitive of this verb),  
 is used only in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

The other compounds are,

*Dissoudre*, to dissolve. *Résoudre*, to resolve.

*Dissoudre* has the same tenses wanting as *absoudre*.

*Résoudre* has its participle passive, *résolu* : its preterite is,

Sing. *Résolus*, *résolus*, *résolût*.

Plur. *Résolûmes*, *résolûtes*, *résolurent*.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

##### Preterite.

Sing. *Résolusse*, *résolusses*, *résolût*.

Plur. *Résolussions*, *résolussiez*, *résolussent*.

**ATTEINDRE**, TO REACH, TO HIT, TO ATTAIN,  
TO OVERTAKE, and

**ASTREINDRE**, TO OBLIGE;

**AVEINDRE**, TO REACH, TO FETCH OUT,  
are conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

The two foregoing verbs are growing obsolete.

**BATTRE**, TO BEAT.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Battre*, to beat.

Part. act. *Battant*, beating.

Part. pass. *Battu*, *ue*, beaten.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. *Bats*, *bats*, *bat*, I beat, or am beating.

Plur. *Battons*, *battlez*, *battent*,

##### Imperfect.

Sing. *Battois*, *battois*, *battoit*, I did beat, or was beating.

Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Battis*, *battis*, *battit*, I beat, or did beat.Plur. *Battîmes*, *battîtes*, *battirent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Battrai*, *battras*, *battrà*, I shall, or will beat.Plur. *Battrons*, *battrez*, *battront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Battrois*, *battrois*, *battroit*, I should, &c. beat.Plur. *Battrions*, *battriez*, *battroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bats*, *batte*, beat thou.Plur. *Battons*, *battez*, *battent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que* *Batte*, *que* *battes*, *que* *batte*, that I may beat.Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Battisse*, *battisses*, *battît*, that I might beat.Plur. *Battissions*, *battissiez*, *battissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Abattre*, to pull down,  
to throw down.*Combattre*, to fight.*Débattre*, to debate.*Se débattre*, to struggle.*Rabattre*, to abate, to beat  
down.*Rebattre*, to beat again.

---

**BOIRE, TO DRINK.**

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Boire*, to drink.Part. act. *Ruvant*, drinking.Part. pass. *Bu*, *ue*, drunk.

**Present.**

## Imperfect.

### Preterite.

## Future.

**Conditional.**

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**Present.**

### Preterite.

N. B. *Boire dans quelque chose*, is, *To drink out of something.*

*BRAIRE, TO BRAY.*

This verb is seldom used, except in the present tense of the infinitive mood, and the third person

singular and plural of the present, future, and conditional, of the indicative mood.

**Infinitive.** *Braire*, to bray.—**Present, indicative.** *Il brait, ils braient*.—**Future.** *Il braira, ils brairont*.—**Conditional.** *Il brairoit, ils brairoient*.—This verb expresses the discordant cry of an ass.

---

**BRUIRE**, TO ROAR, TO MAKE A GREAT NOISE.

This verb is used only in the present of the infinitive mood, and in the third person of the imperfect, indicative: *il bruyoit, ils bruyoient*. Its participle active, *bruyant*, is often but a mere adjective.

---

**CEINDRE**, TO GIRD,

And its compound, *Enceindre*, to inclose, to encompass, are conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

---

**CIRCONCIRE**, TO CIRCUMCISE,  
is conjugated like **CONFIRE**,

but has its participle passive ending in *is, ise*, instead of *it*.

---

**CONCLURE**, TO CONCLUDE.

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Conclure</i> , to conclude.
Part. act.	<i>Concluant</i> , concluding.
Part. pass.	<i>Conclu, ue</i> , concluded.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**Present.**

Sing.	<i>Conclus, conclus, conclut</i> , I conclude.
Plur.	<i>Concluons, concluez, concluent</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Conclucis, concluois, concluoit</i> , I did conclude.
Plur.	<i>Concluions, concluïez, concluoient</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Conclus, conclus, conclut*, I did conclude, or  
 Plur. *Conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent*, concluded.

## Future.

Sing. *Conclurai, concluras, conclura*, I shall, or will  
 Plur. *Conclurons, conclurez, concluront*, conclude.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Conclurois, conclurois, concluroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Conclurions, concluriez, concluroient*, conclude.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Conclus, conclue*, conclude thou.  
 Plur. *Concluons, concluez, concluent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Que que que  
 Sing. *Conclue, conclues, conclue*, that I may con-  
 Plur. *Concluions, conclûiez, concluent*, clude.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Conclusse, conclusses, conclûit*, that I might con-  
 Plur. *Conclussions, conclussiez, conclussent*, clude.

## CONDUIRE, TO CONDUCT, TO LEAD, TO CARRY.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Conduire*, to conduct.  
 Part. act. *Conduisant*, conducting.  
 Part. pass. *Conduit, te*, conducted.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Conduis, conduis, conduit*, I lead, &c.  
 Plur. *Conduisons, conduisez, conduisent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Conduisois, conduisois, conduisoit*, I did lead.  
 Plur. *Conduisions, conduisiez, conduisoient*,



## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Conduisis</i> ,	<i>conduisis</i> ,	<i>conduisit</i> , I led.
Plur. <i>Conduisimes</i> ,	<i>conduisites</i> ,	<i>conduisirent</i> ,

## Future.

Sing. <i>Conduirai</i> ,	<i>conduiras</i> ,	<i>conduira</i> , I shall, or
Plur. <i>Conduirons</i> ,	<i>conduirez</i> ,	<i>conduiront</i> , will lead.

## Conditional.

Sing. <i>Conduirois</i> ,	<i>conduirois</i> ,	<i>conduiroit</i> , I should,
Plur. <i>Conduirions</i> ,	<i>conduiriez</i> ,	<i>conduiroient</i> , &c. lead.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Conduis</i> ,	<i>conduise</i> , lead thou.
Plur. <i>Conduisons</i> ,	<i>conduisez</i> ,	<i>conduisent</i> ,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Que	que	que	
Sing. <i>Conduise</i> ,	<i>conduises</i> ,	<i>conduise</i> , that I may	
Plur. <i>Conduisions</i> ,	<i>conduisiez</i> ,	<i>conduisent</i> ,	lead.

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Conduisisse</i> ,	<i>conduisisses</i> ,	<i>conduisît</i> , that I might
Plur. <i>Conduisissions</i> ,	<i>conduisissiez</i> ,	<i>conduisissent</i> , lead.

Its compound is

*Reconduire*, to lead again.

**CONFIRE**, TO PRESERVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Confire</i> , to preserve.
Part. act.	<i>Confisant</i> , preserving.
Part. pass.	<i>Confit</i> , <i>te</i> , preserved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. <i>Confis</i> ,	<i>confis</i> ,	<i>confit</i> , I preserve.
Plur. <i>Confisons</i> ,	<i>confisez</i> ,	<i>confisent</i> ,

## Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Confisois</i> ,	<i>confisois</i> ,	<i>confisoit</i> , I did pre-
Plur. <i>Confisions</i> ,	<i>confisiez</i> ,	<i>confisoient</i> , serve.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Confis*, *confis*, *confit*, I preserved.Plur. *Confimes*, *confites*, *confirent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Confirai*, *confiras*, *confira*, I shall, or will pre-Plur. *Confirons*, *confirez*, *confiront*, serve.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Confirois*, *confirois*, *confiroit*, I should, &c. pre-Plur. *Confirions*, *confiriez*, *confiroient*, serve.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Confis*, *confise*, preserve thou.Plur. *Confisons*, *confisez*, *confisent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Confise*, *confises*, *confise*, that I may preserve.Plur. *Confissions*, *confisiez*, *confisent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Confisse*, *confisses*, *confit*, that I might preserve.Plur. *Confissions*, *confissiez*, *confissent*,**CONNOITRE**, TO KNOW, TO BE ACQUAINTED  
WITH, *somebody*.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Connoître*, to know.Part. act. *Connoissant*, knowing.Part. pass. *Connu*, *ue*, known.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Connois*, *connois*, *connoît*, I know.Plur. *Connoissons*, *connoissez*, *connoissent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Connoissois*, *connoissois*, *connoissoit*, I did knowPlur. *Connoissions*, *connoissiez*, *connoissoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Connus*, *connus*, *connut*, I knew.  
 Plur. *Connûmes*, *connûtes*, *connurent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Connottrai*, *connottas*, *connottira*, I shall, &c.  
 Plur. *Connottrons*, *connottrez*, *connottront*, know.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Connottrois*, *connottrois*, *connottroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Connottrians*, *connottriez*, *connottroient*, know,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Connois*, *connoisse*, know thou.  
 Plur. *Connoissons*, *connoissez*, *connoissent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Connoisse*, *connaisse*, *connaisse*, that I may  
 Plur. *Connoissions*, *connouissiez*, *connoissent*, know.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Connusse*, *connusses*, *connût*, that I might know.  
 Plur. *Connussions*, *connussiez*, *connussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Méconnoître*, to take for | *Reconnoître*, to acknowl-  
 another. | edge, to know again.

---

**CONSTRUIRE**, TO CONSTRUCT, TO BUILD,  
 is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

---

**CONTRAINdre**, TO CONSTRAIN, TO COMPEL,  
 TO FORCE,  
 is conjugated like **CRaindre**.

---

## COUDRE, TO SEW, TO STITCH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Coudre</i> , to sew.
Part. act.	<i>Cousant</i> , sewing.
Part. pass.	<i>Cousu, ue</i> , sewed.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Couds</i> ,	<i>couds</i> ,	<i>coud</i> , I sew, or am sewing.
Plur.	<i>Cousons</i> ,	<i>cousez</i> ,	<i>cousent</i> ,

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Cousois</i> ,	<i>cousois</i> ,	<i>cousoit</i> , I did sew, or was sewing.
Plur.	<i>Cousions</i> ,	<i>cousiez</i> ,	<i>cousoient</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Cousis</i> ,	<i>cousis</i> ,	<i>cousit</i> , I sewed.
Plur.	<i>Cousîmes</i> ,	<i>cousîtes</i> ,	<i>cousirent</i> ,

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Coudrai</i> ,	<i>coudras</i> ,	<i>coudra</i> , I shall, or will sew.
Plur.	<i>Coudrons</i> ,	<i>coudrez</i> ,	<i>coudront</i> ,

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Coudrois</i> ,	<i>coudrois</i> ,	<i>coudroit</i> , I should, &c. sew.
Plur.	<i>Coudrions</i> ,	<i>coudriez</i> ,	<i>coudroient</i> ,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Couds</i> ,	<i>couse</i> , sew thou.
Plur.	<i>Cousons</i> ,	<i>cousez</i> , <i>cousent</i> ,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Couse</i> ,	<i>couses</i> ,	<i>couse</i> , that I may sew.
Plur.	<i>Cousions</i> ,	<i>cousiez</i> ,	<i>cousent</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Cousisse</i> ,	<i>cousisses</i> ,	<i>cousît</i> , that I might sew.
Plur.	<i>Cousissions</i> ,	<i>cousissiez</i> ,	<i>cousissent</i> ,

Its compounds are,

*Découdre*, to unsew.

*Recoudre*, to sew again.

# EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

I know several persons in this country who  
*plusieurs*, adj. *pays*, m.  
 speak as good French, as if they had been (brought up)  
*bien*, adv. *élevé*, p. p.  
 in France. - - - Do you know Mr. A.? - - -  
 Yes, we know him very well; and, though he is  
*Oui*, adv. *soit*  
 rich, I assure you he is not the more charitable for  
 it. - - - He has been beaten (soundly). - - If you  
*comme il faut*,  
 knew the question, you would resolve it in two  
*question*, f. *en*  
 words. - - I will soon conclude, if you think as  
*mot*, m. *comme*, adv.  
 your brother does. - - We should beat them, if they  
 did not fight in their own country. - - Do not  
*propre*, adj.  
 beat him any more, he acknowledges his fault. - - -  
*faute*, f.  
 We ran for above two hours, but at last  
*pendant*, p. *plus de*, adv. *enfin*, adv.  
 your brother overtook him, and brought him back. - -  
*ramener*, v. *en*  
 You would never see him again, if you knew him. - - -  
 He struggled a long while, but he was soon obliged  
*se* *tems*, m.  
 to (cry for) mercy. - - This mortification has pulled  
*de demander*, v. *grâce*, f.  
 down his pride, I assure you: however, the judge  
*cependant*, adv.  
 has acquitted him of the accusation falsely  
*faussetment*, adv.  
 brought against him. - - Mr. R. told me some time  
*intenté*, p. p. *contre*, p.

ago, that he would build a ship on a new plan. - - -  
 What will you drink? - - I will drink nothing but

water. - - Do not drink so much. - - If your father  
*ne que*  
*tant, adv.*

were here, you would not drink (at all). - - -  
*du tout.*

Let us fill our glasses, and drink our friend's health. - -  
*verre, m. santé, f.*

We beat them because our troops were better dis-  
*parceque, c. dis-*  
 ciplined than theirs. - - Come with us, we shall  
*cipliné, p. p.*

see whether she will know you again or not. - - If you  
*si, c. non*

knew her, I am certain she would please you. - - -  
*plaire, v.*

The English drink as much tea as the Venetians  
*autant, adv. thé, m. Vénitien, m.*

drink coffee. - - - After tea we conducted the ladies  
*café, m.*

to the concert. - - - When they had explained to us  
 all that had passed, we acknowledged we (were in the  
*se passer, v. avoir*

wrong). - - - Your brother's coat was torn,  
*tort, déchirer, v.*

but our tailor sewed it up again so skilfully,  
*tailleur, m. adroitement, adv.*

that his father did not perceive it. - - - Unsew  
 that gown. - - I will sew it to-morrow. - - - The  
 Jews and the Mahometans circumcise their  
*Juif, m. Mahométan, m.*

children a few days after their birth. - - - Why  
*peu, adv. naissance, f.*

do not you preserve some fruits this year? - - - He  
*année, f.*

would not know you if he saw you now. - - - Did  
*à présent, adv.*

you ask him whether he was acquainted with any of  
*si, c.*

these ladies? - - I know Mr. Y. but I do not trust  
*se fier, v.*

to him. - - You will force your father to punish you  
*à*

if you do not behave better. - - - The last  
*se comporter, v.*

time we went to Vauxhall, we drank three bottles of  
 Champagne-wine. - - The enemy beat us on the

eighteenth, but we beat them again two days after.

- - What will you drink, ladies? - - We shall willingly  
*le*  
*madame, f.* *volon-*

ly drink some wine; for we have not drunk  
*tiers, adv.*

any since our departure from France. - - -  
*depuis, p.* *départ, m.*

Drink, said she to me, (out of) that cup, the  
*dans* *coupe, f.*

only token which your father has left  
*seul, adj.* *marque, f.* *laisser, v.*

us of his love. - - - Virtue in indigence is like  
*affection, f.* *dans, p.* *comme*

a traveller whom the wind and rain compel to  
*pluie, f.* *de*

wrap himself up in his cloak. - - I would have  
*enveloppeur, v.* *de, manteau, m.*

preserved some fruits this year, but sugar is too  
*trop, adv.*

dear. - - Thence we concluded you could not come  
*De là, adv.*

to-day. - - I know nobody in this neighbourhood. - - I  
*voisinage, m.*

knew your sister again as soon as I saw her. - - Though  
*Quand, c.*

you should take three dozen of them, I could  
*douzaine, f.*

not abate a farthing. - - The wind was so great that  
 liard, m. vent, m. fort  
 it has thrown down one or two trees in our garden.

---

### **CRAINdre, TO FEAR, TO BE AFRAID.**

#### **INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Craindre*, to fear.  
 Part. act. *Craignant*, fearing.  
 Part. pass. *Craint*, *ainte*, feared.

#### **INDICATIVE MOOD.**

##### **Present.**

Sing. *Crains*, *crains*, *craint*, I fear, or am afraid.  
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*,

##### **Imperfect.**

Sing. *Craignois*, *craignois*, *craignoit*, I did fear, or  
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craigniez*, *craignoient*, was afraid.

##### **Preterite.**

Sing. *Craignis*, *craignis*, *craignit*, I feared.  
 Plur. *Craignîmes*, *craignîtes*, *craignirent*,

##### **Future.**

Sing. *Craindrai*, *craindras*, *craindra*, I shall, or will  
 Plur. *Craindrons*, *craindrez*, *craindront*, fear.

##### **Conditional.**

Sing. *Craindrois*, *craindrois*, *craindroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Craindriens*, *craindriez*, *craindroient*, fear.

#### **IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Crains*, *craigne*, fear thou.  
 Plur. *Craignons*, *craignez*, *craignent*,



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Craigne,</i>	<i>craignes,</i>	<i>craigne,</i>	that I may fear.
Plur.	<i>Craignons,</i>	<i>craigniez,</i>	<i>craignent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Craignisse,</i>	<i>craignisses,</i>	<i>craignît,</i>	that I might fear.
Plur.	<i>Craignissions,</i>	<i>craignissiez,</i>	<i>craignissent,</i>	

## CROIRE, TO BELIEVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Croire,</i>	to believe.
Part. act.	<i>Croyant,</i>	believing.
Part. pass.	<i>Cru, ue,</i>	believed.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Crois,</i>	<i>crois,</i>	<i>croit,</i>	I believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyons,</i>	<i>croyez,</i>	<i>croient,</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Croyois,</i>	<i>croyois,</i>	<i>croyoit,</i>	I did believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyions,</i>	<i>croyiez,</i>	<i>croyoient,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Crus,</i>	<i>crus,</i>	<i>crut,</i>	I believed.
Plur.	<i>Crûmes,</i>	<i>crûtes,</i>	<i>crurent,</i>	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Croirai,</i>	<i>croiras,</i>	<i>croira,</i>	I shall, or will believe.
Plur.	<i>Croirons,</i>	<i>croirez,</i>	<i>croiront,</i>	

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Croirois,</i>	<i>croirois,</i>	<i>croiroit,</i>	I should, &c. believe.
Plur.	<i>Croirions,</i>	<i>croiriez,</i>	<i>croiroient,</i>	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Crois*, *crois*, believe thou.  
 Plur. *Croyons*, *croyez*, *croient*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Crois</i> ,	<i>croies</i> ,	<i>croie</i> , that I may believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyons</i> ,	<i>croyiez</i> ,	<i>croient</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Crusse*, *crusses*, *crût*, that I might believe,  
 Plur. *Crussions*, *crussiez*, *crussent*,

**CROITRE**, TO GROW,

And its compounds.

<i>Accroître</i> , to accrue,	<i>Recroître</i> , to grow again, .
<i>Décroître</i> , to decrease, to	
grow less,	

are conjugated like **CONNOITRE**.**CUIRE**, TO BAKE, TO BOIL, often Englished by

TO DO,

And its compound *Recuire*, to bake again ;**DEDUIRE**, TO DEDUCT, TO ABATE,and **DETRUIRE**, TO DESTROY ;are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.**DIRE**, TO SAY, TO TELL.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Dire</i> , to say,
Part. act.	<i>Disant</i> , saying.
Part. pass.	<i>Dit</i> , <i>te</i> , said.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Dis*, *dis*, *dit*, I say, or am saying.Plur. *Disons*, *dites*,\* *disent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Disois*, *disois*, *disoit*, I did say, or was saying.Plur. *Disions*, *disiez*, *disoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Dis*, *dis*, *dit*, I did say, or said.Plur. *Dîmes*, *dîtes*, *dîrent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Dirai*, *diras*, *dira*, I shall, or will say.Plur. *Dirons*, *direz*, *diront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Dirois*, *dirois*, *diroit*, I should, &c. say.Plur. *Dirions*, *diriez*, *diroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Dis*, *dise*, say thou.Plur. *Disons*, *dites*,\* *disent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que* *dis*, *que* *dises*, *que* *dise*, that I may say.Plur. *Disions*, *disiez*, *disent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Disse*, *disses*, *dît*, that I might say.Plur. *Dissions*, *dissiez*, *dissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Contredire</i> , to contradict.		<i>Interdire</i> , to interdict, to
<i>Se dédire</i> , to unsay, to re-		forbid.
tract, to recant.		<i>Prédire</i> , to foretell.

\* All the above compounds (*Redire* excepted, which is conjugated like its primitive) make *ises* instead of *ites*; and *Maudire* doubles its *s* through the whole verb; ex. *Nous maudissons*, *vous maudissez*, *ils maudissent*, &c.

<i>Médire</i> <i>de</i> , to slander, to speak ill.	<i>Redire</i> , to say, or tell, again.
<i>Maudire</i> , to curse.	

---

**ECLORRE, TO HATCH, TO OPEN, TO COME  
TO LIFE.**

This verb is seldom used but in the infinitive mood, present tense, and the third persons of the following tenses.

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Eclorre*, to open, to hatch, to come to life.  
Part. pass. *Eclos, ose*,

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Il éclot.*  
Plur. *Ils éclosent.*

**Future.**

Sing. *Il éclorra.*  
Plur. *Ils éclorront.*

**Conditional.**

Sing. *Il éclorroit.*  
Plur. *Ils éclorroient.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

**Present.**

Sing. *Qu'il éclose.*  
Plur. *Qu'ils éclosent.*

It is only used when speaking of oviparous animals or of flowers.

The primitive of the above verb is *Clorre*, to shut, to surround, and another compound, *Enclorre*, to shut in, to surround, with walls, hedges, or ditches.

**ECRIRE, TO WRITE.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Ecrire</i> , to write.
Part. act.	<i>Ecrivant</i> , writing.
Part. pass.	<i>Ecrit</i> , <i>ite</i> , written.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Ecris</i> ,	<i>écris</i> ,	<i>écrit</i> , I write, or am writing.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivons</i> ,	<i>écrivez</i> ,	<i>écrivent</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Ecrivois</i> ,	<i>écrivais</i> ,	<i>écrivait</i> , I did write, or was
Plur.	<i>Ecrivions</i> ,	<i>écriviez</i> ,	<i>écrivaient</i> , writing.

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Ecrivis</i> ,	<i>écrivis</i> ,	<i>écrivit</i> , I wrote, or did
Plur.	<i>Ecrivîmes</i> ,	<i>écrivîtes</i> ,	<i>écrivirent</i> , write.

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Ecrirai</i> ,	<i>écriras</i> ,	<i>écrira</i> , I shall, or will write.
Plur.	<i>Ecrirons</i> ,	<i>écrirez</i> ,	<i>écriront</i> ,

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Ecrirois</i> ,	<i>écrirois</i> ,	<i>écriroit</i> , I should, &c. write.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivions</i> ,	<i>écrivriez</i> ,	<i>écriroient</i> ,

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Ecris</i> ,	<i>écrive</i> , write thou.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivons</i> ,	<i>écrivez</i> , <i>écrivent</i> ,

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Ecrive</i> ,	<i>écrives</i> ,	<i>écrive</i> , that I may write.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivions</i> ,	<i>écriviez</i> ,	<i>écrivent</i> ,

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Ecrivisse</i> ,	<i>écrivisses</i> ,	<i>écrivît</i> , that I might write.
Plur.	<i>Ecrivissions</i> ,	<i>écrivissiez</i> ,	<i>écrivissent</i> ,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Décrire*, to describe.  
*Inscrire*, to inscribe.  
*Prescrire*, to prescribe.

*Proscrire*, to proscribe, to  
 outlaw, to banish.  
*Souscrire*, to subscribe.  
*Transcrire*, to transcribe.

**ENDUIRE**, TO DO OVER,  
 is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

**ETEINDRE**, TO EXTINGUISH,  
 is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

**EXCLURE**, TO EXCLUDE,  
 is conjugated like **CONCLURE**.  
 Its participle passive is *exclus*.

**FAIRE**, TO MAKE, TO DO.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Faire*, to make.  
 Part. act. *Fesant*, making.  
 Part. pass. *Fait, te*, made.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. *Fais, fais, fait*, I make, or am making.  
 Plur. *Fesons, faites, font*,

##### Imperfect.

Sing. *Fesais, fesois, fesoit*, I did make, or was mak-  
 Plur. *Fesions, fesiez, fesoient*, ing.

##### Preterite.

Sing. *Fis, fis, fit*, I made, or did make.  
 Plur. *Fîmes, fîtes, firent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Ferai, feras, fera*, I shall, or will make.Plur. *Ferons, ferez, feront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Ferois, ferois, feroit*, I should, &c. make.Plur. *Ferions, feriez, feroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fais, fasse*, make thou.Plur. *Fesons, faites, fassent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Fasse, fasses, fasse*, that I may make.Plur. *Fassions, fassiez, fassent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Fisse, fisses, fit*, that I might make.Plur. *Fissions, fissiez, fissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Contrefaire*, to counterfeit,  
to mimic.*Défaire*, to undo, to de-  
feat.*Se défaire*, to get rid of, to  
part with.*Refaire*, to do, or make up  
again.*Redéfaire*, to undo again,*Satisfaire*, to satisfy.*Surfaire*, to exact, to ask  
too much.

---

*FEINDRE*, TO FEIGN, TO DISSEMBLE, TO

PRETEND,

is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

**FRIRE, TO FRY.**

This verb is more elegantly used in its present infinitive with the verb *faire* conjugated : ex.

Faites frire ce poisson, Fry that fish.

Its participle passive is *frit, ite*, fried.

**INDUIRE, TO INDUCE,**  
**INSTRUIRE, TO INSTRUCT,**  
 and **INTRODUIRE, TO INTRODUCE,**  
 are conjugated like **CONDUIRE.**

**JOINDRE, TO JOIN,**  
 and its compound, *Enjoindre*, to enjoin,  
 are conjugated like **CRAINdre.**

**LIRE, TO READ.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Lire*, to read.  
 Part. act. *Lisant*, reading.  
 Part. pass. *Lu, ue*, read.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Lis,</i>	<i>lis,</i>	<i>lit</i> , I read, or am reading.
Plur.	<i>Lisons,</i>	<i>lisez,</i>	<i>lisent</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Lisois,</i>	<i>lisois,</i>	<i>lisait</i> , I did read, or was reading.
Plur.	<i>Lisions,</i>	<i>lisiez,</i>	<i>lisoient</i> ,



## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Lus,</i>	<i>lus,</i>	<i>lut,</i> I did read, or read.
Plur. <i>Lûmes,</i>	<i>kûtes,</i>	<i>lurent,</i>

## Future.

Sing. <i>Lirai,</i>	<i>liras,</i>	<i>lira,</i> I shall, or will read.
Plur. <i>Lirons,</i>	<i>lirez,</i>	<i>liront,</i>

## Conditional.

Sing. <i>Lirois,</i>	<i>lirois,</i>	<i>liroit,</i> I should, would, &c. read.
Plur. <i>Lirions,</i>	<i>liriez,</i>	<i>liroient,</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.<sup>6</sup>

Sing.	<i>Lis,</i>	<i>lise,</i> read thou.
Plur. <i>Lisons,</i>	<i>lisez,</i>	<i>lisent,</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Lise,</i>	<i>lises,</i>	<i>lise,</i>	that I may read.
Plur. <i>Lisions,</i>	<i>lisiez,</i>	<i>lisent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Lusse,</i>	<i>lusses,</i>	<i>lût,</i> that I might read.
Plur. <i>Lussions,</i>	<i>lussiez,</i>	<i>lussent,</i>

Its compounds are,

*Elire,* to elect.

*Relire,* to read again.

**LUIRE, TO SHINE,**

and its compound *Reluire,* to glitter,  
are conjugated like **CONDUIRE** ;

but take no *t* at the end of their participle passive :  
ex. *Lui,* shined.

**METTRE,\* TO PUT.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Mettre</i> , to put.
Part. act.	<i>Mettant</i> , putting.
Part. pass.	<i>Mis</i> , <i>se</i> , put.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Mets</i> ,	<i>mets</i> ,	<i>met</i> , I put, or am putting.
Plur.	<i>Mettons</i> ,	<i>mettez</i> ,	<i>mellent</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Mettois</i> ,	<i>mettois</i> ,	<i>mettoit</i> , I did put, or was putting.
Plur.	<i>Mettions</i> ,	<i>mettiez</i> ,	<i>mettoient</i> ,

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Mis</i> ,	<i>mis</i> ,	<i>mit</i> , I did put, or put.
Plur.	<i>Mîmes</i> ,	<i>mîtes</i> ,	<i>mirent</i> ,

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Mettrai</i> ,	<i>mettras</i> ,	<i>mettra</i> , I shall, or will put.
Plur.	<i>Mettrons</i> ,	<i>mettrez</i> ,	<i>mettront</i> ,

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Mettrois</i> ,	<i>mettrois</i> ,	<i>mettroit</i> , I should, would, &c.
Plur.	<i>mettrions</i> ,	<i>mettriez</i> ,	<i>mettroient</i> ,

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Mets</i> ,	<i>mette</i> , put thou.
Plur.	<i>Mettons</i> ,	<i>mettez</i> , <i>mellent</i> ,

\* *Mettre*, when conjugated as a reflexive verb, expresses the beginning or continuation of an action or application; it is then constantly followed by the particle *à*, and an infinitive mood. It is rendered, in English, by the verb *to begin*: ex.

<i>Toutes les fois qu'il la voit, il se met à rire,</i>	Every time he sees her, he begins laughing.
<i>s'est mis tout de bon à étudier,</i>	He has begun to study in earnest.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Mette,</i>	<i>mettes,</i>	<i>melle,</i>	that I may put.
Plur.	<i>Mettions,</i>	<i>mettiez,</i>	<i>mettent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Misse,</i>	<i>misses,</i>	<i>mît,</i>	that I might put.
Plur.	<i>Missions,</i>	<i>missiez,</i>	<i>missent,</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Admettre,</i>	to admit.	<i>Permettre,</i>	to permit.
<i>Commettre,</i>	to commit.	<i>Promettre,</i>	to promise.*
<i>Compromettre,</i>	to compromise.	<i>Remettre,</i>	to deliver up,
<i>Démettre,</i>	to turn out, to remove.		to put back again, to
<i>Se démettre de,</i>	to resign.		recollect, to put off, to
<i>Omettre,</i>	to omit.		defer.
		<i>Soumettre,</i>	to submit.
		<i>Transmettre,</i>	to transmit.

## MOUDRE, TO GRIND.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Moudre,</i>	to grind.
Part. act.	<i>Moulant,</i>	grinding.
Part. pass.	<i>Moulu, ue,</i>	ground.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Mouds,</i>	<i>mouds,</i>	<i>moud,</i>	I grind, or am grind-
Plur.	<i>Moulons,</i>	<i>moulez,</i>	<i>moulent,</i>	ing.

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Moulois,</i>	<i>moulois,</i>	<i>mouloit,</i>	I did grind, or was
Plur.	<i>Moulions,</i>	<i>mouliez,</i>	<i>mouloient,</i>	grinding.

\* The participle active of this verb (promising), when used adjectively and expressing the mental qualities of somebody, is rendered in French by *qui promet*, or *promettoit beaucoup*, or *dont il y a*, or *avoit beaucoup à espérer* : ex.

*Le Major A. étoit un officier qui* Major A. was a very promising  
*promettoit beaucoup, ou dont il* officer.  
*y avoit beaucoup à espérer.*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Moulus, moulus, moulut*, I ground, or did  
 Plur. *Moulûmes, moulûtes, moulurent*, grind.

## Future.

Sing. *Moudrai, moudras, moudra*, I shall, or will grind.  
 Plur. *Moudrons, moudrez, moudront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Moudrois, moudrois, moudroit*, I should, would,  
 Plur. *Moudrions, moudriez, moudroient*, &c. grind.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mouds, moule*, grind thou.  
 Plur. *Moulons, moulez, moulent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Que que que  
 Sing. *Moule, moules, moule*, that I may grind.  
 Plur. *Moulions, mouliez, moulent*, -

## Preterite.

Sing. *Moulusse, moulusses, moulût*, that I might grind.  
 Plur. *Moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Emoudre*, to whet. *Remoudre*, to grind again.

# EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Do not fear to tell her what you think of it. - - I  
                                   de lui                   penser, v.  
 will speak to her to oblige you, but I know she  
                                   pour, p.  
 does not fear me. - - Why do you not believe me? - -

They (are afraid) of being exposed to some dangers.

*être, v.*

- - We would not believe him, though he should tell  
*quand, c.*

the truth. Why would you not? - - You should not  
*vérité, f.* *devoir*

speak so imprudently before I know not whom,  
*devant, p.*

who slanders every body. - - These flowers would  
*fleur, f.*

grow much better if you watered them oftener. - - -  
*arroser, v.*

Put out the candle, and do not pretend to sleep.  
*de*

- - Were I in town, I would tell them all that  
*en, p.*

I know (about it). - - Say nothing to her, believe  
*en, pro.* *ne rien*

me. - - I will tell it to you to-morrow. - - I esteem  
*estimer, v.*

your daughter much, because she told me sin-  
cerely that she would do neither. - - - They who

say all they know, will readily say what they  
*volontiers, adv.*

do not know. - - Tell the truth with modesty: they  
who do not love it, will always respect and fear it. - -

If I see your father, shall I tell him you are afraid of  
*lui*

not succeeding? - - - Do you think me capable of  
*réussir*

forgetting my friends so soon? No, I do not. - - You  
*oublier, v.*

always contradict me when I speak. - - - It is pru-  
dent and humane, not to speak ill of any body;

but it is a meanness to speak ill of your bene-  
 ce, pro. bassesse, f. bien-  
 factors. - - We often do good to those who  
 fauteur, m. souvent, adv. bien, m.  
 are not worthy of it, and harm to those who  
 mal, m.  
 do not deserve it. - - Will you tell me, after  
 mériter, v.  
 this, that I am not your friend? - - I hope she  
 que, c.  
 will not tell them what happened to me yester-  
 leur  
 day. - - I was telling it yesterday to several friends of  
 mine, and every body began crying. - - I do not  
 like Miss D. because she speaks ill of every body.  
 parceque, c.  
 - - Her father has transmitted her all his fortune, but  
 lui  
 not his virtues. - - - Sylla proscribed above four  
 plus de, adv.  
 thousand Roman citizens. - - Does Mr. R. write to  
 citoyen, m.  
 you (now and then) from Paris? - - - Do you  
 de tems en tems, adv.  
 know his direction? - - Would you not write to him  
 adresse, f.  
 if you knew it? - - We were writing while  
 pendant que, c.  
 they slept. - - If your brother come here, detain him,  
 and tell him that I have something to show him.  
 à faire voir,  
 - - The last time they wrote to him, they desired  
 prier, v.  
 him to send them the invoice of the goods, and he  
 de leur facture, f.  
 has still omitted it in his letter. - - What are you  
 encore, adv.

doing now? - - - I am making a cap for your sis-  
*maintenant, adv.*  
 ter. - - Do not do that, I will do it myself. - - I would  
 do it with all my heart if I could. - - What would  
*de*  
 you have done, if you had been in my place? - -  
*si, c.* *à, p.*  
 Why do you not fry that fish? - - - The first time  
*fois, f.*  
 you come to see me, I will show you some  
 (by the fut.)  
 flowers in my garden which will surprise you. - -  
 - - Silk-worms generally hatch at the end of the  
*Les vers à soie, m.*  
 spring. - - - These rose-trees grow perceptibly,  
*printems, m.* *rosier, m.* *à vue d'œil, adv.*  
 and those tulips would soon open, if it were a  
*faisoit, v.*  
 little warmer. - - Though they should deduct ten  
*chaud, adj.* *Quand, c.*  
 per cent. they would get still enough.  
*pour* *gagner, v.* *encore, adv.*  
 - - I never buy (any thing) at Mr. P\*\*\*'s; for, he  
*acheter, v.* *rien* *chez,* *car, c.*  
 always asks too much for his goods. - - - I will  
*de* *marchandise, f.*  
 undo my gown to-morrow, and do it up again imme-  
*sur le-*  
 diately. - - - The first time you mimic any  
*champ, adv.* (by the fut.)  
 one, I will punish you severely. - - I would introduce  
 your sister to Mrs. F. if I knew her. - - She would  
 consent to that, if you would promise her to come  
*vouloir* *lui de*  
 here. - - - They were playing while you instructed  
 them. - - You truly join what is useful to what is  
*vraiment, adv.*

agreeable. - - - Did not our soldiers join dexterity  
*adresse, f.*  
to valour? - - If you do not take great care of  
*prendre, v.*  
your flowers, the frost will destroy them. - - Mr.  
*gelée, f.*  
S. says he will get rid of his horse (at the) begin-  
*au* *commence-*  
ning of next month. - - You would put out the fire, if  
*ment, m.*  
&c. - - Undo that, make it up again before dinner,  
*avant, p.*  
and never defer until to-morrow what you can do to-  
*à, p.*  
day. - - Your daughter joins to the love of study the  
desire of surpassing her companions. - - - Always  
*compagne, f.*  
virtuous, still handsome, she makes herself  
*toujours, adv.*  
more enemies than friends; but a day will come,  
when every body will do her the justice she  
*que, c.* *rendre, v. lui*  
deserves. - - She reads the History of England every  
*mériter, v.*  
day from three o'clock till five. - - I will read  
*depuis* *heure, f.* *jusqu'à, p.*  
your letter as soon as I am dressed. - - The  
*(by the fut.) habillé, p. p.*  
inhabitants of W\*\*\* have elected Mr. V. W. for  
their representative in parliament. - - I was reading  
*représentant, m.* *au*  
Marmontel's Tales when you came in. - - Mr.  
*Conte, m.* *entrer, v.*  
R. wrote to me some time ago, that when he  
was in London, the Earl of E\*\*\* told him  
*Comte, m.*  
we should soon see a great change in the  
*changement, m.*



ministry. - - - He often writes to me, and always con-  
*ministère, m.*

cludes his letters thus : (Be so kind as to) send me  
*Avoir la bonté de*

some news, whatever it may be. - - Put these books in  
 their places again. - - - I believe he did it through

spite. - - Shall I put another trimming *par, p.*  
*dépit, m.* *garniture, f.* to your

gown ? - - I read last year a very good book, but I  
 cannot remember the author's name. - - - What

grammar do you read ? - - - Whatever merit a master  
 has, he cannot succeed in teaching young people  
*à, p.*

if he do not join practice to theory. - - - I would put  
 all your china in that closet if I had  
*porcelaine, f.* *cabinet, m.*

the key of it. - - You could not do it in ten days, if  
*en*

I did not help you. - - We could not permit him  
*aider, v.*

to go out, though they would. - - Why do not you  
*de* *quand, c.*

abstain from wine, since it hurts you ? - -  
*puisque, c.* *faire mal, v.*

He promised to pay me the tenth of this month,  
 but he has now put me off to the third of Decem-

ber. - - He submitted to it with the greatest pa-  
*se soumettre*

tience. - - You promise enough, but you seldom  
*rarement, adv.*

keep your word. - - Mr. D. is a very promising  
*tenir, v.*

young man. - - It is he who told me, that, be-  
*Ce, pro.*

fore the invention of water and wind-mills the an-

cients used to grind their corn in mor-  
*avoir coutume, v. de grain, m. dans mor-*  
 tars. - - Will they not admit Mr. Z. in their society? - -  
*tier, m.*

No, they told me that they would not. - - The Eng-

lish fleets have performed actions worthy to be  
*faire, v. de*

transmitted to posterity. - - Your brother promises

me every day to amend, but, &c. - - Were I

their master, I would not permit them to go out to  
*de se corriger, v. leur de*

day. - - I was writing to you when your servant

brought me your letter.

### NAITRE, TO BE BORN, TO RISE.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Naître*, to be born.  
 Part. act. *Naissant*, being born, rising.  
 Part. pass. *Né, ée*, been born.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. *Nais*, *nais*, *nait*, I am born,  
 Plur. *Naissons*, *naissiez*, *naissent*,

##### Imperfect.

Sing. *Naissois*, *naissois*, *naissoit*, I was born.  
 Plur. *Naissions*, *naissiez*, *naissoient*,

##### Preterite.

Sing. *Naquis*, *naquis*, *naquit*, I was born.  
 Plur. *Naquîmes*, *naquîtes*, *naquirent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Naîtrai, naîtras, naîtra*, I shall, or will be born.  
 Plur. *Naîtrons, naîtrez, naîtront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Naîtrois, naîtrois, naîtroit*, I should, &c. be born.  
 Plur. *Naîtrions, naîtriez, naîtroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Nais, naisse*, be thou born.  
 Plur. *Naissons, naissez, naissent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Naisse, naisses, naisse*, that I may be born.  
 Plur. *Naissions, naissiez, naissent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Naquisse, naquisses, naquît*, that I might be born.  
 Plur. *Naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent*,

The compound of this verb is,

*Renaitre*, to be born again, to revive.

*NUIRE*, TO HURT,

is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*, but makes, in its  
 \* participle passive, *nui*.

*OINDRE*, TO ANOINT.

This verb is seldom used, except in speaking of sacred ceremonies wherein oil is made use of. It is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

**PAITRE**, TO FEED, TO GRAZE,  
**PAROITRE**, TO APPEAR, TO SEEM,

and its compounds,

*Comparoitre*, to appear, to | *Disparoitre*, to disappear,  
 make one's evidence,

are conjugated like **CONNOITRE**.

**PEINDRE**, TO PAINT, TO DRAW,

**PLAINdre**, TO PITY,

and *Se Plaindre*, to complain,

are conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

**PLAIRE**, TO PLEASE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Plaire*, to please.

Part. act. *Plaisant*, pleasing.

Part. pass. *Plu*, pleased.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Plais*, *plais*, *plait*, I please.

Plur. *Plaisons*, *plaisez*, *plaisent*,

Imperfect.

Sing. *Plaisois*, *plaisois*, *plaisoit*, I did please, or was

Plur. *Plaisions*, *plaisiez*, *plaisoient*, pleasing.

Preterite.

Sing. *Plut*, *plus*, *plut*, I pleased, or did please.

Plur. *Plûmes*, *plûtes*, *plurent*,

Future.

Sing. *Plaira*, *plairas*, *plaira*, I shall, or will please.

Plur. *Plairons*, *plairez*, *plairont*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Plairois, plairois, plairoit*, I should, would, &c.  
 Plur. *Plairions, plairiez, plairoient*, please.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Plais, plaise*, please thou.  
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaisez, plaisent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Plaise, plaisses, plaise*, that I may please.  
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaisiez, plaisent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Plusse, plusses, plût*, that I might please.  
 Plur. *Plussions, plussiez, plussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Complaire*, to humour. *Déplaire*, to displease.

*PRENDRE*, TO TAKE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Prendre*, to take.  
 Part. act. *Prenant*, taking.  
 Part. pass. *Pris, ise*, taken.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Prends, prends, prend*, I take, or am taking.  
 Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Prenois, prenois, prenoit*, I did take, or was taking.  
 Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prenoient*, ing.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Pris, pris, prit*, I took, or did take.  
 Plur. *Primes, prîtes, prirent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Prendrai, prendras, prendra*, I shall, or will take.  
 Plur. *Prendrons, prendrez, prendront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Prendrais, prendrais, prendrait*, I should, would,  
 Plur. *Prendrions, prendriez, prendroient*, &c. take.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Prends, prennne*, take thou.  
 Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Prenne,</i>	<i>prennes,</i>	<i>prenne,</i>	that I may take.
Plur.	<i>Prenions,</i>	<i>preniez,</i>	<i>prennent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing. *Prisse, prisses, prit*, that I might take.  
 Plur. *Prissions, prissiez, prissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Apprendre</i> , to learn.	<i>Entreprendre</i> , to under-
<hr/> <i>des nouvelles,</i>	<i>take.</i>
to hear of.	<i>Méprendre</i> , to mistake, to
<i>Comprendre</i> , to apprehend,	<i>be deceived.</i>
to understand, to in-	<i>Reprendre</i> , to take again,
clude.	<i>to chide, to rebuke.</i>
<i>Désapprendre</i> , to unlearn.	<i>Surprendre</i> , to surprise.

**PRODUIRE**, TO PRODUCE,  
**REDUIRE**, TO REDUCE, TO BRING TO,  
 are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

**RESTRANDRE**, TO RESTRAIN,  
 is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

**RIRE, TO LAUGH.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Rire</i> , to laugh.
Part. act.	<i>Riant</i> , laughing.
Part. pass.	<i>Ri</i> , laughed.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Ris</i> ,	<i>ris</i> ,	<i>rit</i> , I laugh, or am laughing.
Plur.	<i>Rions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> ,	<i>rient</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Riois</i> ,	<i>riois</i> ,	<i>rioit</i> , I laughed, or was laughing.
Plur.	<i>Riions</i> ,	<i>riiez</i> ,	<i>rioient</i> ,

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Ris</i> ,	<i>ris</i> ,	<i>rit</i> , I laughed, or did laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rîmes</i> ,	<i>rîles</i> ,	<i>rirent</i> ,

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Rirai</i> ,	<i>riras</i> ,	<i>rira</i> , I shall, or will laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rirons</i> ,	<i>rirez</i> ,	<i>riront</i> ,

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Rirois</i> ,	<i>rirois</i> ,	<i>riroit</i> , I should, could, &c. laugh.
Plur.	<i>Ririons</i> ,	<i>ririez</i> ,	<i>riroient</i> ,

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Ris</i> ,	<i>rie</i> , laugh thou.
Plur.	<i>Rions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> , <i>rient</i> ,

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Rie</i> ,	<i>ries</i> ,	<i>rie</i> , that I may laugh.
Plur.	<i>Riions</i> ,	<i>riiez</i> ,	<i>rient</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Risse*, *risses*, *rit*, that I might laugh.Plur. *Rissions*, *rissiez*, *rissent*,

The compound of this verb is,

*Sourire*, to smile.*SEDUIRE*, TO SEDUCE,is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.*SUFFIRE*, TO SUFFICE, TO BE SUFFICIENT,is conjugated like *CONFIRE* : but its participle  
passive is *suffi*.*SUIVRE*, TO FOLLOW.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Suivre*, to follow.Part. act. *Suivant*, following.Part. pass. *Suivi*, *ie*, followed.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Suis*, *suis*, *suit*, I follow, or am following.Plur. *Suivons*, *suivez*, *suivent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Suivois*, *suivois*, *suivoit*, I did follow, or wasPlur. *Suivions*, *suiviez*, *suivoient*, following.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Suivis*, *suivis*, *suivit*, I followed, or did follow.Plur. *Suivîmes*, *suivîtes*, *suivirent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Suivrai*, *suivras*, *suivra*, I shall, or will follow.Plur. *Suivrons*, *suivrez*, *suivront*,



## Conditional.

Sing. *Suivrois, suivrois, suivroit*, I should, &c. follow.  
 Plur. *Suivrons, suivriez, suivroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Suis, suive*, follow thou.  
 Plur. *Suivons, suivez, suivent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que*            *que*            *que*  
 Sing. *Suive, suives, suive*, that I may follow.  
 Plur. *Suivions, suiviez, suivent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Suivisse, suivisses, suivît*, that I might follow.  
 Plur. *Suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*S'Ensuivre*, to follow from.    *Poursuivre*, to pursue.

*Se TAIRE*, TO HOLD ONE'S TONGUE,  
 is conjugated like *PLAIRE*.

*TEINDRE*, TO DIE,  
 is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

*TRADUIRE*, TO TRANSLATE,  
 is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

*TRAIRE*, TO MILK.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.    *Traire*, to milk.  
 Part. act.    *Trayant*, milking.  
 Part. pass.    *Trait, aité*, milked.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Trais*, *trais*, *trait*, I milk, or am milking.Plur. *Trayons*, *trayez*, *traient*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Trayois*, *trayois*, *trayoit*, I did milk, or wasPlur. *Trayions*, *trayiez*, *trayoiient*, milking.

Preterite is wanting.

## Future.

Sing. *Trairai*, *trairas*, *traira*, I shall, or will milk.Plur. *Trairons*, *trairez*, *trairont*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Trairois*, *trairois*, *trairoit*, I should, &c. milk.Plur. *Trairions*, *trairiez*, *trairoient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Trais*, *traie*, milk thou.Plur. *Trayons*, *trayez*, *traient*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. .

## Present.

Sing. *Que traie*, *que traies*, *que traie*, that I may milk.Plur. *Trayions*, *trayiez*, *traient*,

Preterite is wanting.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Abstraire*, to abstract.*Distraire*, to distract.*Extraire*, to extract.*Rentraire*, to fine draw.*Soustraire*, to subtract.

**VAINCRE, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Vaincre</i> , to conquer.
Part. act.	<i>Vainquant</i> , conquering.
Part. pass.	<i>Vaincu</i> , <i>ue</i> , conquered.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Vains</i> ,	<i>vains</i> ,	<i>vainc</i> ,* I conquer.
Plur.	<i>Vainquons</i> ,	<i>vainquez</i> ,	<i>vainquent</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Vainquois</i> ,	<i>vainquois</i> ,	<i>vainquoit</i> , I did conquer.
Plur.	<i>Vainquions</i> ,	<i>vainquiez</i> ,	<i>vainquient</i> ,

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Vainquis</i> ,	<i>vainquis</i> ,	<i>vainquit</i> , I conquered.
Plur.	<i>Vainquîmes</i> ,	<i>vainquîtes</i> ,	<i>vainquirent</i> ,

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Vaincrai</i> ,	<i>vaincras</i> ,	<i>vaincra</i> , I shall, or will con-
Plur.	<i>Vaincrons</i> ,	<i>vaincrez</i> ,	<i>vaincront</i> , quer.

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Vaincrois</i> ,	<i>vaincrois</i> ,	<i>vaincroit</i> , I should, &c. con-
Plur.	<i>Vaincristions</i> ,	<i>vaincristiez</i> ,	<i>vaincristient</i> , quer.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Vains</i> ,	<i>vainque</i> , conquer thou.
Plur.	<i>Vainquons</i> ,	<i>vainquez</i> , <i>vainquent</i> ,

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Vainque</i> ,	<i>vainques</i> ,	<i>vainque</i> ,	that I may conquer.
Plur.	<i>Vainquions</i> ,	<i>vainquiez</i> ,	<i>vainquent</i> ,	

\* The singular is very little used.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Vainquise, vainquisses, vainquist*, that I might

Plur. *Vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent*, conquer.

The compound of this verb is,

*Convaincre, to convince.*

## VIVRE, TO LIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vivre, to live.*

Part. act. *Vivant, living.*

Part. pass. *Vécu, lived.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Vis, vis, vit*, I live or am living.

Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Vivois, vivois, vivoit*, I did live, or was living.

Plur. *Vivions, viviez, vivoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Vécus, vécus, vécut*, I lived, or did live.

Plur. *Vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Vivrai, vivras, vivra*, I shall, or will live.

Plur. *Vivrons, vivrez, vivront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Vivrois, vivrois, vivroit*, I should, would, &c. live.

Plur. *Vivrions, vivriez, vivroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vis, vive*, live thou.

Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Vive,</i>	<i>vives,</i>	<i>vive,</i> that I may live.
Plur.	<i>Vivions,</i>	<i>viviez,</i>	<i>vivent,</i>

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Vécusse,</i>	<i>vécusses,</i>	<i>vécut,</i> that I might live.
Plur.	<i>Vécussions,</i>	<i>vécussiez,</i>	<i>vécussent,</i>

The compounds of this verb are,

*Revivre,* to revive.

*Survivre,* to outlive.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS  
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

My brother was born in Paris, on the eighth of February, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-one. -- *prier, m.*

The same men who seem not to fear death when they are in good health, often dread it when they are sick. -- What does your sister complain of? *lorsque, adv.*  
*en redouter, v.*

- - The swallows generally disappear towards the end of autumn. -- You do not seem to pay any attention to what I say to you. -- This man paints *hirondelle, f.*  
*automne, f.* *faire, v.*

very well, I assure you. -- Why would you hurt him, he never did you any harm? -- I should pity and succour him if it were not his fault. -- *assûrer, v.*  
*lui faire, v.* *mal, m.*  
*ce, pro.*

You shall disappear as soon as you have ex-  
 ecuted my orders, and take care not to speak  
 to any body, for you know that walls have ears.  
 - - - The last time I saw your sister she ap-  
 peared to me thoughtful and melancholy. - - - She  
 is a lady that pleases every body. - - - She appears  
 quite young: how old is she? - - - Does she not  
 learn drawing? - - Your brother has not included his  
 tailor's bill in the account which he has  
 given me. - - I see you do not complain of him  
 without a cause. - - I really am surprised (at it), but  
 he always smiles at (every thing) I tell him. - - As sur-  
 prising as this seems to you, yet it is true. - -  
 At last the enemy surprised and defeated them in the  
 space of twelve days. - - They might, if they would,  
 have taken the town three days sooner, but the sol-  
 diers were so exhausted with fatigue, that they  
 could not even hold their guns. - - May these  
 brave men long enjoy the glory which they have ac-  
 quired. - - I sincerely wish they may. - - Children sel-  
 dom forget, when they continually  
 ment, adv. lorsque, c. continuellement, adv.

exercise their minds to study. - - If my brother do not  
*exercer, v.*

come this week, as he promised me, if you will, we

will go and see him in the country. - - Does not

Mrs. H. appear much concerned at her daughter's death? - - When you see Mrs. B. I am  
*à bien affligé, p.p. de*

certain she will please you. - - Did you never see  
*(by the fut.)*

her? - - The children who shall be born from this

happy marriage, will be the delight of their  
*délices, f. pl.*

father and mother. - - She joins to the qualities of the

body those of the mind. - - Take some pears, and carry

them to your brother. - - Every time I see him, I take

him for a foreigner. - - My sister and I learn French,  
*étranger, m.*

and understand very well all that (is said) to us in that  
*on dit*

language. - - - Though you should learn all the rules,  
*langue Quand, c.*

they would not (be sufficient) without practice. - - I did  
*suffire, v.*

not understand what you said. - - Do not undertake to  
*de*

undecieve her; believe me, you will lose your time.  
*détromper, v.*

- - - Virtue procures and preserves friendship, but  
*obtenir, v. conserver, v.*

vice produces hatred and quarrels. - - If you  
*vice, m. haine, f. querelle, f.*

complain to the master, I will complain to the

mistress. - - Though you should undertake to prove  
*Quand* *de*  
 the contrary, she would not believe you. - - Why did

not you take the same road as we? - - He (is not  
*que*  
 pleased) in his situation, now he sees all the dangers  
*se plaire, v.*

of it. - - He has suffered much, and none of his friends

has pitied him. - - The idea of his misfortune pur-  
*idée, f.* *malheur, m.*

sues him every-where. - - When did you hear of him?  
*par-tout, adv.*

- - - Captain D. told my father that he had seen  
 him and spoke to him at Madras. - - - We often

mistake when we judge of others by ap-  
*se méprendre, v.* *juger, v.*

pearances; and often a person displeases us by the

very quality by which another has pleased us.  
*même, adj.*

--- The people who often seem the most zealous  
*gens, m.* *zélé, adj.*

are not always the most constant. --- Leave me  
*Laisser, v.*

that book a little longer, do not take it again. ---

That apple-tree produces no fruit. - - We were  
*pommier, m.*

reduced to the last extremity when they retook

our ship. - - Go and speak to Mr. —; but above all  
*sur, p.*

do not laugh. - - Would you not laugh, if you were

in my place? - - - We laughed much yesterday at  
*à*



the play. - - - She was an agreeable lady, she was  
 ever smiling when any body had the honour  
*toujours*, adv.  
 of speaking to her. - - He seduced her by his fine  
 promises. - - Whatever he may undertake, he never  
 will succeed, he is too much addicted to the  
 pleasures of this world. - - Young people tell  
*adonné*, p. p.  
 what they do, old people what they have done,  
*gens*, m. & f.  
 and fools what they intend to do. - - We  
*sot*, m. *se proposer*, v. *de*.  
 learn much more easily the things which  
*facilement*, adv.  
 we understand than those which we do not. - - If we  
 go together to my brother's, shall you be able  
*chez*, p.  
 to follow us? - - I will follow you step by step. - -  
*pas à pas*, adv.  
 Why do you follow me as you do? - - You may set  
*comme*  
 out when (You please), we will follow you. - - Hold  
*il vous plaira*  
 your tongue, you do not know what you say. - -  
 What books do you translate? - - My master says I  
 shall soon translate Marmontel's Works. - - We should  
 have conquered them if we had fought; and, believe  
*combattre*  
 me, you might have done much better, if you had  
 followed the advice which he gave you. - - - They

have debated the question a long time without  
 (being able to) resolve it. -- They were quite trans-  
<sup>pouvoir</sup>ported with joy when they heard of the happy  
<sup>de, p.</sup>news of the peace. --- Every thing smiles in  
<sup>dans, p.</sup>nature (at the) return of the spring. - - - As long  
<sup>au retour, m.</sup>as her father and mother <sup>printems, m.</sup>live, <sup>Tant</sup>they never  
<sup>que, adv.</sup>will consent to her marriage with Mr. R. --- You  
 will not live long if you drink so much. -- She lived  
 about four years after her husband's death. - -  
<sup>environ, p.</sup>George III. the eldest son of Frederick, prince of  
<sup>après, p.</sup>Wales, was born on the fourth of June, 1738, and  
<sup>ainé, adj.</sup>Galles, f.  
 was proclaimed king of Great-Britain on the twenty-  
<sup>proclamer, v.</sup>sixth of October, 1760. --- Let a man live in any  
 country whatever, he is sure to be respected and  
<sup>de</sup>well treated every where, if his behaviour and  
 manners are ruled by the principles of a sound  
<sup>mœurs, f. pl.</sup>policy, <sup>régler, v.</sup>and the laws of the country he lives  
<sup>sain, adj.</sup>  
<sup>politique, f.</sup>  
 in.  
 du.

## OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs which relate to no person or thing, and which, as has been before observed, are only conjugated in the third person singular, are called impersonal verbs: they generally are preceded by one of the following pronouns *il* or *on*: of this number are,

*Il tonne,* It thunders.  
*Il pleut,* It rains.  
*On dit,* People say, or, it is said, &c.

To which may be added several other verbs, which become impersonal when employed in the same manner: ex.

*Il vous convient d'être mo-* It becomes you to be mo-  
*deste,* dest.  
*Il fait beau, froid, &c.* It is fine, cold, &c.  
*Il semble,* It seems.  
*Il s'ensuit que,* It follows that.  
*Il vaut mieux,* It is better, &c.

These verbs, like others, whether regular or irregular have their different tenses, and are conjugated in the same manner as the personal verbs from which they are derived. The learner having gone through the other conjugations, the verbs of this class may the more easily be dispensed with. It will only be necessary to select one that is not derived, and show the manner of conjugating it, only premising, that the compound tenses are formed, like others, by joining the participle passive to one of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

## CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Pleuvoir*, to rain.  
 Part. act. *Pleuvant*, raining.  
 Part. pass. *Plu*, rained.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Affirmatively.

Present, *Il pleut*, it rains, it does rain.

## Negatively.

*Il ne pleut pas*, it does not rain.

## Interrogatively.

*Pleut-il ?*

does it rain ?

*Ne pleut-il pas ?*

does it not rain ?

Imperfect.	<i>Il pleuvait,</i>	it rained, it was raining.
Preterite.	<i>Il plut,</i>	it rained.
Future.	<i>Il pleuvra,</i>	it shall, or will rain.
Conditional.	<i>Il pleuvrait,</i>	it would, should, &c. rain.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il pleuve*, that it may rain.

Imperfect. *Qu'il plût*, that it might rain.

The following being of the first conjugation, I shall only give the third person, present tense, of the indicative mood: the learner may easily find out the rest.

<i>Il arrive</i> , it happens ;	from	<i>arriver</i> ,	to happen.
<i>Il bruine</i> , it drizzles ;		<i>bruiner</i> ,	to drizzle.
<i>Il éclaire</i> , it lightens ;		<i>éclairer</i> ,	to lighten.
<i>Il gèle</i> , it freezes ;		<i>geler</i> ,	to freeze.
<i>Il grêle</i> , it hails ;		<i>grêler</i> ,	to hail.
<i>Il neige</i> , it snows ;		<i>neiger</i> ,	to snow.
<i>Il tonne</i> , it thunders ;		<i>tonner</i> ,	to thunder.
<i>Il importe</i> , it matters,		<i>importer</i> ,	to concern.
it concerns.			

## EXERCISES ON THESE VERBS.

Does it rain? - - It rained just now, but  
*tout-à-l'heure*, adv.  
 it does not rain at present. - - - Was it not raining  
*maintenant*, adv.  
 when you came? - - I advise you not to go out  
*conseiller*, v. *de*  
 this morning, I think it will soon rain. - - I am  
*bientôt*, adv.  
 sure it would rain if the wind was not so high. - - -  
*fort*, adv.  
 Do you know what happened to my cousin  
*savoir*, v.  
 whilst he was in town? - - I foresaw what  
*pendant que*, c. *prévoir*,  
 would happen. - - The roads were very slippery  
*chemin*, m. *glissant*, adj.  
 yesterday, because it drizzled the whole day. - - Did  
 you observe how it lightened last  
*remarquer*, v. *comme*, adv.  
 night? - - If it did not freeze I would go to see them  
*voir*, v.  
 to-day. - - It hailed this afternoon, and it will  
*après-midi*, m.  
 certainly snow to-night. - - It thundered much  
*beaucoup*, adv.  
 yesterday, and I think it will still thunder to-  
*encore*, adv.  
 day. - - It matters little whether you do your ex-  
*que* (subj.)  
 ercise now or later, provided it be well  
*pourvu que*, c.  
 done. - - It greatly concerns children to  
*beaucoup*, adv. *aux* *de*  
 avoid idleness, because it is the parent of all vice  
*éviter*, v. *mère*, f.  
 and destroyer of all virtues.  
*destructrice*, f.

The verb *Avoir*, to have, conjugated impersonally with *y*, adverb of place.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Y avoir*, there to be.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Affirmatively.

Present. *Il y a*, there is, there are.

#### Negatively.

*Il n'y a pas*, there is not, there are not.

#### Interrogatively.

*Y a-t-il ?* is there ? are there ?

*N'y a-t-il pas ?* is there not ? are there not ?

Imperfect. *Il y avoit*, there was, there were.

Preterite. *Il y eut*, there was, there were.

Future. *Il y aura*, there shall, or will be.

Conditional. *Il y auroit*, there should, would, &c. be.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Qu'il y ait*, let there be.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il y ait*, that there may be.

Imperfect. *Qu'il y eût*, that there might be.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

*Il y a eu*, there has, or have been.

*Il y avoit eu*, there had been.

*Il y eut eu*, there had been.

*Il y aura eu*, there shall, or will have been.

*Il y auroit eu*, there should, &c. have been.

*Qu'il y ait eu*, that there may have been.

*Qu'il y eût eu*, that there might have been.

## EXERCISE ON THIS VERB.

There are three ladies who (are waiting for) you  
*attendre, v.*  
 in your brother's study. - - Is there any fire in the  
*cabinet, m.*  
 parlour? - - No, Sir, there is none. - - There were two  
*salle, f.*  
 men below who asked to speak to you. - - Was  
*en bas, adv.* *à*  
 there not formerly a (coffee-house) at the  
*autrefois, adv.* *café, m.*  
 corner of this street? - - - There were great re-  
*coin, m.* *rue, f.* *ré-*  
 joicings in France when peace was proclaimed. - -  
*jouissance, f.* *proclamé, p.p.*  
 I was telling you that there will be a grand concert  
*dire, v.*  
 and afterwards a ball and supper at the Pantheon,  
*ensuite, adv.*  
 in the course of this month. - - There would be  
*courant, m.*  
 no harm if you would learn your lesson better. - - -  
*mal, m.* *mieux, adv.*  
 Let there be any danger, let there be none, I will  
 go back. - - - My brother says that there has  
*s'en retourner, v.*  
 been a bloody engagement between an English  
*sanglant, adj.* *combat, m.*  
 frigate and a French one, and there have been  
*frégate, f.* *frégate*  
 many men killed on both sides. - - There would  
*de part et d'autre.*  
 have been a great riot yesterday in the Strand,  
*émeute, f.*  
 if the magistrates had not sent so many constables,  
*connétable, m.*  
 who dispersed the mob in less than ten minutes.  
*populace, f.*

*There is*, immediately followed by the negation *ne* and a participle active, must be rendered by *on ne peut pas*, *on ne sauroit*, with the participle in the infinitive mood; the other tenses, as *there was*, *there will be*, *there would be*, used as above, and made by the same tenses of the verb *pouvoir* only: ex.

*On ne peut pas*, or, *on ne sauroit sortir aujourd'hui à cause de la pluie,*

*On ne pouvoit l'appaiser,*

*On ne pourra pas jouer demain, mon père est très malade,*

There is no going out to-day because of the rain; that is, one cannot, &c.

There was no pacifying him.

There will be no acting to-morrow, my father is very ill.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

There is (such a deal) of snow that there is no going  
*tant, adv.*  
 out of the house. - - You speak so low and so quick  
*bas, adv. vite, adv.*  
 that there is no hearing nor understanding what  
*entendre, v. comprendre, v.*  
 you say. - - My brother runs so fast that there is  
*vite, adv.*  
 no following him. - - There was no walking yesterday  
*hier, adv.*  
 in the streets of London on account of the dirt. - - His  
*à cause, p. boue, f.*  
 arguments were so convincing that there was no re-  
*ré-*  
 plying to him. - - There will be no skating in the  
*pliquer, v. patiner, v.*  
 park to-morrow because it thaws. - - There will be  
*dégeler, v.*  
 no going to the play next month, be-  
*comédie, f. prochain, adj. parce-*  
 cause the play-house will be shut. - - There would  
*que, c. théâtre, m.*



be no living with you, if you were always in the same  
*étiez, v. de, f.*  
 humour. - - If a horse knew his strength, there would  
*force, f.*  
 be no mastering him.  
*dompter, v.*

This verb *il y a*, when used to denote a quantity of time, is sometimes rendered in English by *it is, it was, &c.* when the English preposition *since* is rendered (in French) by *que* : but in all cases where the English phrase can be rendered negatively, *que* must be accompanied by the negation *ne* : ex.

<i>Il y a trois semaines que</i>	<i>It is three weeks since</i>
<i>votre père est arrivé,</i>	<i>your father arrived.</i>
<i>Il y a long-temps que je ne</i>	<i>It is a long while since I</i>
<i>vous ai vu,</i>	<i>saw you, or, I have not</i>
	<i>seen you this long</i>
	<i>while.</i>

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

How long is it since we saw (one another) ? It is a  
*Combien, adv. nous, pro.*  
 year since I met your brother in Italy, and  
*recontrer, v.*  
 it is six months since I heard of him. - -  
*entendre parler, v.*  
 How long is it since you wrote to your mother ? - - -  
 It is but two months. - - It was a week since I had  
*ne que semaine, f.*  
 seen your brother, when I met him by chance in  
*par hasard, adv.*  
 a coffee-room. - - How long was it since your friend  
 had left France when he wrote to you ? - - It was  
*laisser, v.*  
 three months. - - It may be two years since Mr. Robert

set out for the Indies. - - How long is it since you  
*partir, v.*

were in England? - - It is such a long while since I

learned German, that I almost forgot it.

*Allemand, m.*

It often happens that the verb *there is*, or *it is*, &c. is understood: in this case, one of the words, *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, is expressed as a substitute: ex.

*Il y a trois mois que j'é-* I was in France three  
*tois en France, or j'étois* months ago.  
*en France il y a trois*  
*mois,\**

*Il y a quatre ans que mon* My brother has been dead  
*frère est mort,* *these four years.*

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

He is the same man whom we saw a quarter of an  
*quart*

hour ago. - - When did you see my father? - - I saw

him (a fortnight) ago. - - We have not heard from my  
*quinze jours*

brother these two years. - - You do not seem to  
*paraître, v.*

be so lively as you were three years ago. - - I would  
*enjoué, adj.*

have written to you a month ago, if I had known  
*savoir, v.*

your direction. - - - I have not seen your sister these  
*adresse, f.*

\* From this instance it may be observed, that, if the verb *il y a*, &c. begin the sentence, the word *que* must immediately follow the noun of number; but, if it be transposed, *que* must be omitted. The first construction is to be preferred. The learner must at the same time observe, that in the above sentence, the verb, which, in English, is in the *compound of the present*, is rendered in French by the *present of the indicative*, and when in the *compound of the imperfect* by the *imperfect of the same mood*.

four months. - - My father has been ill these  
*malade*, adj.  
 six weeks. - - He has been in London these five years,  
 and (it is said) he there enjoys a considerable em-  
*on dit*, v.  
 ployment. - - We have neither seen you nor your  
 sisters these three days.

It also happens, that neither the verbs, nor any of the words, *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, are expressed in the sentence : ex.

<i>Il y a neuf ans que ma tante demeure dans ce voisinage,</i>	My aunt has lived nine years in this neighbourhood.
<i>Il n'y a pas plus d'une heure que nous pêchons ici,</i>	We have not been above an hour fishing here.
<i>Il y avoit deux ans que ma sœur étoit en France quand j'y allai,</i>	My sister had been two years in France when I went there.
<i>N'y avoit-il pas six mois qu'elle demeurait avec nous quand elle mourut ?</i>	Had she not lived six months with us when she died ?
<i>Il y aura six ans à Noël que votre frère est chez Mons. O.</i>	Your brother will have been at Mr. O's. six years at Christmas.
<i>N'y aura-t-il pas un an au mois d'Août prochain que votre sœur est à Paris ?</i>	Will not your sister have been a year at Paris next August ?

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Some people have no pity on their poor  
*gens*, pl. *de*  
 fellow-creatures. - - Some people fancy  
*semblable*, *personne*, f. *s'imaginer*, v.

that they can learn a language without  
*pouvoir, v.*  
 studying. - - - My brother has been four years at  
*étudier, v.*  
 Mr. W's. academy, and my father told him that  
 he should stay there two years more. - - I had  
*rester, v.*  
 been three years in England when that happened.  
*arriver, v.*  
 - - I had not been three months in France, when  
 my brother returned from America to London,  
 where he fell ill and died. - - Mr. N. had only  
*malade,* *ne que*  
 learned French seven months when he wrote me  
 a letter in that language. - - - Had not Mr. David  
 been four years and a half in Spain when his sister  
 was married ? - - My father and mother had not been  
 gone out above a quarter of an hour when  
*sortir, v.* *plus de, adv.*  
 he arrived. - - - We had been playing at cards  
*aux cartes, f.*  
 for two hours when you came in. - - Thomas will have  
*entrer, v.*  
 been at the college two years the tenth of next  
*collège, m.*  
 month.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes impersonal when followed by a substantive, or one of the pronouns *personal*, *possessive*, or *demonstrative*, and is always conjugated with the pronoun demonstrative *ce*, whether speaking of persons or things : ex. .

<i>C'est la loi qui l'ordonne,</i>	It is the law that pre- scribes it.
<i>C'est moi qui l'ai fait,</i>	It is I who have done it.
<i>C'est mon bienfaiteur,</i>	It is my benefactor.
<i>C'est eux, or, ce sont eux,</i>	It is they who have related
<i>qui me l'ont rapporté,</i>	it to me.

From the last instance, it appears that *it is*, &c. followed by a pronoun of the third person plural, may be rendered in French two ways; but, when *is it*, &c. is used in asking a question, it is generally put in the singular, though the pronoun be in the plural number: ex.

*Est-ce eux qui l'ont fait ?* Is it they who have done it?

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

It is prosperity which commonly makes  
*prospérité, f.* *rendre, v.*  
 men haughty and proud, but it is adversity  
*orgueilleux, adj.*  
 that makes them wise. - - - It was the custom  
*coutume, f.*  
 among the Spartans to inure their  
*chez, p.* *Spartiate, m.* *de endurcir, v.*  
 children early to the fatigues of war.  
*de bonne heure, adv.* *travail, m.*  
 - - It is not I who occasioned the quarrel, it is  
*causer, v.* *querelle, f.*  
 you who began first. - - - It was envy  
*avez commencé, v. le* *envie, f.*  
 which caused the first murder. - - Is it not you who  
*causer, v.* *meurtre, m.*  
 wrote to Miss A. ? No, it is Miss Rose's sister,  
*avez écrit, v.*  
 - - If you do not succeed, it will not be my fault.  
*réussir, v.* *faute, f.*  
 - - If you came to lose the friendship of your  
*à perdre, v.*

parents, it would be the greatest misfortune which  
*malheur, m.*

ever might happen to you. - It is my friend  
*jamais, adv. pouvoir, v.*

who told me that it was your father whom we saw  
*dire, v.*

yesterday. - Speak to my brothers, for it is they

who told it me. - Why do you not accuse

*Pourquoi, adv.*

my sisters? It is they who have done all the

mischiefs. - You blame my aunts, but is it they  
*mal, m. blâmer, v. tante, f.*

who have offended you?

*offenser, v.*

*He, she, they,* immediately followed by *who, whom,*  
 or *that,* and *such as,* whether separated in English or  
 not, but implying *people* in general, are often made  
 into French by the impersonal *c'est*, with an infinitive  
 followed by *que de* before a second infinitive, and if  
 the sentence be negative, *c'est ne pas* must be used :  
 ex.

*C'est être fou que de* He is a fool who loses his  
*perdre le tems à ces* time in those trifles.  
*bagatelles,*

*C'est ne pas goûter les* Such as love nobody, do  
*plaisirs de l'amitié que* not enjoy the pleasures  
*de n'aimer personne,* of friendship.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

He is a blind man who does not  
*aveugle, adj.*  
 perceive all the dangers which surround us  
*environner, v.*  
 in this deceitful world. - Such as are satis-  
*trompeur, adj.* con-

fied with their lot are happy. - - He  
*tent*, adj. *de son*, pro. *sort*, m.  
 does not know the court who relies  
*connoître*, v. *cour*, f. *se fier*, v.  
 on the promises which (are made) there. - - They  
*aux* *on fait*, v.  
 are strangers to the charms of society who shun  
*fuir*, v.  
 company. - - They are idle who do not know the  
*savoir*, v.  
 value of time. - - They obey the commands of God  
 who love their neighbours, and do not reproach  
*prochain*, sing.  
 them with their small defects. - - He is not a Chris-  
*lui* *en ses*  
 tian who seeks to hurt his neighbour and speaks  
*à* *voisin*, m.  
 ill of him on all occasions. - - Such as neglect  
*dans* *négliger*, v.  
 study do not understand their own interest.  
*propre*, adj.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes also impersonal every time it is followed by a noun adjective used in a vague indeterminate sense, and relates to no particular object; in which case the verb is generally preceded by the pronoun *il*; and when used to denote the state of the weather, it is rendered by the third person singular of the verb *faire*, to make or do: ex.

<i>Il est extraordinaire, &amp;c.</i>	It is extraordinary, &c.
<i>Il fait beau tems,</i>	It is fine weather.
<i>Ne fait-il pas chaud ?</i>	Is it not hot ?

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

It is surprising to see you so lazy and in-  
*étonnant*, adj. *de*

attentive after having been punished severely  
*après, p. avoir* *sévère-*  
 ly for these faults. -- It is always dangerous  
*ment, adv.*

to (keep company with) people without any prin-  
*de fréquenter, v.* *aucun prin-*  
 ciple of religion. -- Does it rain? No, Sir,  
*cipe, m.* *Monsieur, m.*

it is fine weather. -- Is it not very cold? --- It is  
*froid, m.*

neither cold nor hot. -- It is a high wind, and  
*ni, c.* *ni, c.* *en grand, adj.*

I think it will soon freeze. --- It is not so cold as  
*penser, v.*

it was at the beginning of this month. -- Do  
*commencement, m.*

you think (that) it is hotter in Italy than here?

The learner must observe, that the following verb is absolutely impersonal throughout all its tenses, and that nothing is more disagreeable than to hear young people say, *Je faut, vous faut, on faut, &c.* to prevent which, as much as possible, some examples are here set down.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Falloir*, to be needful, requisite, necessary.  
 Part. pass. *Fallu*, been needful, &c.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively. Sing.

Present.	<i>Il faut que je fasse,</i>	I must do.
	<i>Il faut que tu fasses,</i>	thou must do.
	<i>Il faut qu'il fasse,</i>	he must do.
	<i>Il faut qu'elle fasse,</i>	she must do.

Plural.

<i>Il faut que nous fassions,</i>	we must do.
<i>Il faut que vous fassiez,</i>	you must do.
<i>Il faut qu'ils, or elles fassent,</i>	they must do.



## Negatively.

*Il ne faut pas que je fasse,* I must not do.  
*Il ne faut pas que vous fassiez,* you must not do, &c.

## Interrogatively.

*Faut-il que je fasse?* must I do?  
*Faut-il que vous fassiez?* must you do?  
*Ne faut-il pas que je fasse?* must I not do?  
*Ne faut-il pas que vous fassiez?* must you not do?

Imperfect. *Il falloit qu'il écrivit,* it was necessary, &c.  
 for him to write.

Preterite. *Il fallut qu'il partît,* he was obliged to set  
 out.

Future. *Il faudra qu'il vienne,* he must come, he shall  
 be obliged to come.

Condit. *Il faudroit que j'allasse,* I should go, or it  
 would be necessary  
 for me to go.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il faille,* that it may be necessary, &c.

Imperfect. *Qu'il fallût,* that it might be necessary.

As to the compound tenses of this verb, they are formed by adding its participle passive to the third person singular of any of the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have: ex. *Il a fallu, il avoit fallu, &c.*

From the foregoing instances, it is easy to see, that, when the verb  *falloir*  is used in the present or future tense of the indicative mood, the following verb must be rendered by the present of the subjunctive; but when it is used in the imperfect, preterite, or conditional present of the indicative, the verb following must be rendered by the preterite of the subjunctive: ex.

*Il faut, or il faudra que je fasse,* I must do, I shall be obliged  
 to do, or, it will be necessary for me to do.

*Il falloit, or, il falut que* I was obliged, or, it was  
*je parlasse,* necessary for me to  
*speak.*

*Il faudroit que je vendisse,* I should be obliged to  
*sell.*

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

If you go to Coxheath to-day you must  
*aujourd'hui, adv.*  
 come back to-morrow. - - - You may go to  
*revenir, v.* *pouvoir, v.*  
 London this morning, but remember that you must  
 be back at three o'clock. - - - You must get  
*de retour* *se*  
 up to-morrow morning at four o'clock. - - -  
*lever, v.*  
 Custom must not always prevail over reason. - - -  
*sur, p.*  
 Shall I be obliged to carry them there? - - -  
*falloir, v.* *mener, v.*  
 Must I not show you my work? - - - You  
*montrer, v.* *ouvrage, m.*  
 must have been well (acquainted with) the places  
*connoître, v.* *endroit, m.*  
 to expose yourself in that manner. - - If he  
*pour, c.* *de, p.*  
 wished to pay his debts, he would be obliged  
*vouloit, v.* *dette, f.*  
 to sell all his property. - - If your brothers had not  
*de* *bien, m.*  
 ceased to quarrel, it would have been ne-  
*cesser, v.* *de quereller, v.*  
 cessary\* for them to part. - - It is impossible for you  
*se séparer, v.*

\* After the words *better, necessary, needful, expedient, good, im-possible, &c.* joined to the verb *to be*, conjugated impersonally, the preposition *for* is to be rendered by *que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood, either present or preterite, according to the tense of the preceding verb.

to succeed in that undertaking, all your friends oppose it.

*s'opposer, v. y.*

The same observation is to be made on the verb *valoir mieux*, to be better, used impersonally; and the adjectives *bon, difficile, impossible, nécessaire, à propos, &c.* joined to the verb *être*, used in the third person singular only: ex.

*Il n'est pas bon que vous soyez seul,* It is not good for you to be alone.  
*Il vaut mieux que vous ayez compagnie,* It is better for you to have company.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

It is difficult for you to improve if you  
*faire des progrès,*  
do not apply better to study. - - - It was impossible  
*s'appliquer, v.*  
for you to have succeeded unless you had taken  
*à moins que, c. ne. (by the sub.)*  
more convenient measures. - - It would be expedient  
*convenable, adj. à propos*  
for you to read this book from the beginning  
*depuis, p.*  
to the end. - - Believe me, it is better  
*jusqu'à, p. fin, f. valoir mieux, v.*  
for you to go there to-morrow, for it will snow  
*car, c.*  
soon. - - - Will it not be better for me to be at  
*bientôt, adv.*  
school too soon than too late? - - Would it not  
*tôt, adv. tard, adv.*  
be better for him to go and speak to them himself,  
than to send his servant? - - - It is good for us  
*de domestique, m. & f.*  
to help one another in our troubles.  
*s'aider, v. peine, f.*

The above verb *falloir*, being used before the verb *to have*, followed immediately by a noun substantive, may be rendered without expressing the auxiliary verb; instead of which, insert one of the following pronouns, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, or leur*, according to the number and person: ex.

*Il me faut des livres,*                      I must *have*, or, I want books.

*Il lui faut un chapeau,*                      He must *have*, or, he wants a hat.

*Il lui faut un bonnet,*                      She must *have*, or, she wants a cap.

N. B. If the verb *to have* be expressed in French, it must be rendered by the subjunctive mood:

*Il faut que j'aie des livres,*                      I must *have*, or, I want books.

This method, however, is not so elegant as the former.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I shall want · paper, pens, and ink. -- What do you want? -- I want nothing (for the) present, but I

think I shall soon want a French grammar. --- *penser, v.*

My brother has an old hat, and he will soon

want a new one. -- If you like to

speak much, you must have (a good deal) of

circumspection not to (speak ill) of others. --- *retenue, f. pour ne pas médire, v.*

Since I cannot find my book, I must have

another. -- If we wish to succeed in our under-

*vouloir, v.*

taking, we must have (a great deal) of patience. . . .  
*beaucoup, adv.*

My brothers have lost their buckles, they must have  
*boucle, f.*

others.

Before the conclusion of this section, it will be proper to say something about the pronoun general *on*, which commonly precedes a verb used impersonally (viz. in the third person singular) in French, and in English is made by a passive voice: *ex.*

*On m'a permis de chanter,* I have been allowed to  
*sing.*

*On lui a défendu de sortir,* He has been forbidden to  
*go out.*

In this case, the verb which, in English, is in the passive voice, must, in French, be turned into the active, when the English nominative becomes the regimen of the verb in French, the sentence beginning with *on*, and translated as if the English were, *one* has allowed me to sing, *one* has forbidden him to go out.

It is the same with,

<i>On dit,</i>	It is said, or people say.
<i>On me dit,</i>	I am told.
<i>On dit à votre frère,</i>	Your brother is told.
<i>On disoit, }</i>	It was said, or people said,
<i>On dit, }</i>	or were saying.
<i>On dira,</i>	It will be said, or people
	will say.
<i>On dira à nos enfans,</i>	Our children will be told.

<i>On a dit,</i>	It has been said, or people
	have said.

<i>On nous a dit,</i>	We have been told.
-----------------------	--------------------

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

In time of war, peace is always spoken of. - - -

*En, p.*

Where is your brother? it is not known; for, we  
*savoir, v.*

have not heard of him these two years. - - -

The death of the invincible admiral Lord Nelson  
*mort, f.*

is daily lamented, and will be  
*tous les jours, adv. regretter, v.*

so a long time. - - - I was told yesterday that

your brother has been punished for his idleness;

had your father been told of it, he would have been

very angry with him. - - As soon as your  
*contre, p. Aussitôt que, c.*

book is printed, people will be eager in  
*sera imprimé, v. s'empresse, v. de, p.*

buying it, and it will be read with avidity. - - Learned

men are found in villages, as well as in large  
*grand, adj.*

towns. - - It is reported on all sides that we shall  
*de côté, m.*

soon have peace, but the news has not yet been

received, though it be ardently (wished for),  
*ardemment, adv. souhaiter, v.*

however, it is thought that the secret expedition

will sail in a few days. - - It was as-  
*mettre à la voile.*

serted that you were lazy. - - It will be believed that you

blame me. - - It would not be supposed that you praise

us. - - I have been assured that he has threatened him.

## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE ON THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

There is no going out to-day, it rains apace. - - -  
*à verse, adv.*  
 Do not make so much noise, there is no hearing  
*s'entendre, v.*  
 one another. - - Is it cold this morning? Yes, Sir, it  
 is very cold; however, I am told it is not so cold as  
 it was yesterday. - - The weather is very inconstant  
 in this country, it was very hot yesterday, it is  
*pays, m.*  
 excessively cold to-day: it did freeze this morning,  
*très, adv.*  
 it hailed at noon, it rained in the afternoon, and  
*midi, m.* *après-midi,*  
 now it drizzles. - - It sometimes lightens when it  
*quelquefois, adv.*  
 does not thunder, but as often as it thun-  
*toutes les fois, c.*  
 ders, it lightens. - - If it be fine weather next week,  
 I shall go to London, but if it be bad weather I  
 shall stay at home. - - It is a pleasure to see  
*rester, v. au logis.* *de*  
 bees (coming out) of their hives when it is  
*abeille, f.* *sortir, v.* *ruche, f.*  
 a sunny day. - - Had I known you were returned  
*soleil* *revenir, v.*  
 from the continent, I would have gone to see you  
 long ago. - - My father and mother were told you  
 were in England ten years ago, but you neither saw  
 nor wrote to them. - - Every body agrees there  
*convenir, v.*

are fine women in Great-Britain, but there is not  
 such good wine as in France. - - It greatly  
*si* *beaucoup, adv.*  
 concerns children to avoid bad company. - -  
*aux* *de éviter, v.*  
 If there were any real virtue in the world, should  
 we (meet with) so many false friends? - - If he  
*trouver, v.*  
 behaved well, there would not be a man  
*se comporter, v.*  
 (in the world) that I should esteem more. - - No  
*au monde,*  
 object is more pleasing to the eye than the sight of  
*plaire, v.* *vue, f.*  
 a man whom you have obliged, nor (is) any music  
 so agreeable to the ear as the voice of a man  
*oreille, f.*  
 who owns you for his benefactor. - - It is a  
*reconnoître, v.*  
 sad thing to see unfortunate people and be  
*de* *malheureux, adj.*  
 unable to relieve them. - - Such as support the  
*secourir, v.* *encourager, v.*  
 conduct of idle and obstinate scholars, make them-  
 selves contemptible. - - They are not acquainted with  
*méprisable, adj.*  
 the human heart, who rely upon the vain  
*faire fond, v.*  
 promises of men. - - You have already been told  
*déjà, adv.*  
 that nobody in the world has prepossessed me  
 against you, how many times must I repeat  
*contre, p.* *combien, adv.*  
 it to you? - - I was told yesterday that you were very



ill, and I am truly glad to see you so well. - - -  
*de bien portant.*

There is no persuading you when you have a mind  
*en envie, f.*

not to believe what you are told. - - - More virtue is  
*de*

requisite to support good fortune than bad. - -  
*pour, p.*

Much art and nicety are requisite to  
*délicatesse, f. pour, p.*

please every body. - - It matters little whether it be  
 my servant or yours who carries the letter to the  
*porter, v.*

post. - - You must honour your father and mother if  
*poste, f.*

you will live long and happy. - - It is more glo-  
*reux, v.*

rious to conquer one's passions than to conquer  
*de vaincre, v. conquérir, v.*

the whole world. - - Sir, I want a pair of boots,  
*entier, adj.*

have you any in your shop that will suit  
*boutique, f. convenir, v.*

me? - - It is reported that the Russians have beaten  
*Russe, m.*

the Turks; it is said so, but it is not yet known for  
*Turc, m.*

certain. - - It is thought Sweden has declared war  
*Suède, f.*

against France. - - It is true; but it is much  
*à vrai, adj.*

feared lest the Swedes should be  
*craindre, v. que, c. Suédois, ne, (by the pre. subj.)*

beaten, though they fight most courageously.  
*se battre, v. très,*

- - - Have the letters been received which were  
 expected yesterday? No, but the mail is ar-  
*attendre, v. malle, f.*

rived, and they will be delivered this morning. —

## SECT. V.

## OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles are either active or passive. The *participle active*, in French, always ends in *ant* : ex. *parlant* ; *punissant*, and in English in *ing* : ex. *speaking*, *punishing*, &c. It is always, in its own nature, indeclinable : ex.

*Je vois des hommes et des femmes venant à nous,* I see men and women coming to us.

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

The persons whom you saw with us are people <sup>gens, pl.</sup> fearing God and loving virtue. - - She met your father and sister (as she was) coming here. - - My <sup>en</sup> mother was told (the day before yesterday) that <sup>ici, adv.</sup> your sister, remembering the injuries she had <sup>avant-hier, adv.</sup> received from your brother, refused to <sup>se ressouvenir, v. des</sup> see him, and we are all glad to hear <sup>de la part de,</sup> it. - - <sup>de apprendre, v.</sup> Your aunt, having given the necessary orders to your cousins, set out immediately for London. - - - Did <sup>partir, v.</sup> you not see them coming to us ? - - How many lowing oxen, bleating sheep, neighing <sup>mugir, v. bœuf, m. bêler, v. brebis, f. pl. hennir, v.</sup> horses I hear afar off ! - - Do you not admire these <sup>de loin, adv.</sup>

skipping lambs in your father-in-law's meadow?  
*bondir, v. agneau, m. prairie, f.*

- - Do you see the flocks languishing with  
*troupeau, m. languir, v. de, p.*  
 thirst, and drinking (on the) margin of this limpid  
*au bord, m.*

brook?

*ruisseau, m.*

When the participle active is preceded by another verb, an article, or a preposition, it must be rendered in French by the verb in the infinitive mood, and it is sometimes used as a substantive: ex.

*Faut-il que je parte sans lui parler?* Must I set out without speaking to him?

*La pauvreté du corps est la richesse de l'âme,* The impoverishing of the body is the enriching of the soul.

N. B. There are some active participles which, by use, have been converted into substantives or adjectives, as *médisant*, slanderer, *ignorant*, ignorant, &c. which are declinable.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I assure you there is a great deal of pleasure in  
*à, p.*  
 teaching diligent scholars. - - We are told there  
*enseigner, v.*  
 will not be so much danger in travelling, as there  
*voyager, v. que*  
 was before. - - - There is a real advantage in  
*auparavant, adv.*  
 being learned, but science must not create  
*savant, adj. inspirer, v.*  
 pride. - - Lewis the Great had especially the su-  
*surtout, adv.*  
 perior and rare talents of knowing and choosing men  
 of merit. - - He left the house without seeing his

father, and even without speaking to his mother.  
*même, adv.*

-- He was hanged for robbing Mr. D. -- I should  
*pendre, v. (avoir volé)*

despise a man who is capable of deceiving  
*mépriser, v. tromper, v.*

his friends. -- After having (waited for) her a long  
*attendre, v.*

while, she (sent me word) that she was not ready  
*envoyer dire, v. prêt, adj.*

to go out. -- She spends all her time in reading or  
*à passer, v.*

writing. -- My mother takes an infinite pleasure in

admiring the situation of your house. -- The grace  
*situation, f.*

of God will always keep us from sinning. --  
*empêcher, v. pécher, v.*

I often admire the rising and setting of the sun. ----  
*soleil, m.*

The defending of a bad cause is worse than  
*défense mauvais, adj.*

the cause itself.  
*même.*

The participle passive is sometimes declinable, and sometimes indeclinable.

It is declinable,

First, when it is joined to the verb *être*, to be, forming a passive verb, and agrees with the nominative case of the verb in gender and number; and after the verbs *paraître*, *naître*, &c. : ex.

*Mon frère est aimé,*

*Ma sœur est aimée,*

*Mes cousins sont partis,*

*Mes cousines sont parties,*

*Elle paraît affligée,*

*Elles paraissent affligées,*

My brother is loved.

My sister is loved.

My cousins are gone.

My cousins are gone.

She appears afflicted.

They appear afflicted.

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I have been told your brother-in-law is gone to  
*beau-frère, m.*  
 the Continent; have I been told the truth? - I have  
 not seen your mother since *she arrived*  
*depuis que, c.*  
 from France; does she appear satisfied with her  
*de*  
 journey? - My brothers are gone to Dover, and  
*voyage, m.*  
 intend to pay you a visit when  
*se proposer, v. de rendre, v.*  
 they are come back. - The houses which are  
*(by the fut.) revenir, v.*  
 built in the winter are not so wholesome as those  
*sain, adj.*  
 which are begun (in the) spring and finished in the  
*au*  
 middle of summer. - The wicked are always tor-  
*méchant, adj. bour-*  
 mented, and the righteous are comforted by their  
*reler, v. juste, adj. consoler, v.*  
 own conscience. - Virtuous people are esteemed  
*personne, f.*  
 and respected by those who are so, and even  
*même, adv.*  
 by the wicked. - I assure you that Mr. Brown's  
 wife appears much afflicted at the death of  
*femme, f. de,*  
 her husband, but her sons appear as much affect-  
*mari, m.*  
 ed by it as she. - Children (are born) poor and  
*naître, v.*  
 helpless, and sometimes they die very young.  
*foible, adj. mourir, v.*

Secondly, when it is joined to the verb *avoir*, or *être*, forming the compound tenses of an active or reflected verb, immediately preceded by a *pronoun* which it governs in the *accusative case*; it must then agree with the gender and number of the substantive to which that pronoun refers: *ex.*

<i>J'ai parlé à votre frère et</i>	I spoke to your brother
<i>J'ai prié de venir nous</i>	and desired him to come
<i>voir,</i>	to see us.
<i>J'ai vu Madame Wright et</i>	I saw Mrs. Wright and
<i>J'ai entendue chanter,</i>	heard her sing.
<i>J'ai lu tous les livres que</i>	I have read all the books
<i>vous m'avez prêtés,</i>	which you lent me.
<i>Avez-vous vu les marchan-</i>	Did you see the goods
<i>dises que j'ai reçues,</i>	which I have received?
<i>Vous l'avez souvent priée</i>	You often desired her to
<i>de passer chez vous,</i>	call at your house.
<i>Elles se sont repenties de</i>	They have repented of
<i>leurs fautes,</i>	their faults.

In the above instances the pronouns are governed by the verbs *avoir* or *être*, and the participle passive.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I spoke to your brother this morning, and  
*ai parlé, v.*  
 desired him to come and dine with us to-morrow. . . .  
 The resolution which she has taken of going into  
 the country surprises me very much; I have spoken  
*étonner, v. très fort,*  
 to her myself, but I have not been able to learn  
*pouvoir, v.*  
 the reasons which have induced her to it. . . . Miss  
*engager, v.*  
 Farren was an excellent actress, I have seen her  
*actrice, f.*

play several times. -- I am very sorry <sup>for the</sup>  
<sup>fâché, adj. de</sup>  
 trouble that affair has given to your aunt. -- If you  
<sup>peine, f.</sup> <sup>tante, f.</sup>  
 can come with me, I will show <sup>you the lady</sup>  
<sup>montrer, v.</sup>  
 whom I have heard <sup>sing.</sup> -- What stuff <sup>have</sup>  
<sup>entendre, v.</sup> <sup>éttoffe, f.</sup>  
 you chosen? -- The letter which you have written to  
<sup>choisi, p-p.</sup>  
 me in French was tolerably <sup>well;</sup> I have shown  
<sup>passablement, adv.</sup>  
 it to your aunt, who is much <sup>pleased</sup>  
<sup>très, adv. content, adj.</sup>  
 (with it). -- I have not yet received the <sup>goods,</sup>  
<sup>en, pro.</sup> <sup>marchandise, f.</sup>  
 which you sent me by the ship <sup>Good-</sup>  
<sup>vaisseau, m.</sup>  
 Will. -- Ladies, have you returned <sup>him the letters</sup>  
<sup>rendre, v.</sup>  
 which he had desired you to read? -- -- Where  
<sup>prier, v. de</sup> <sup>Où, adv.</sup>  
 did you buy <sup>those gloves?</sup> -- -- -- I bought  
<sup>acheter, v.</sup>  
 them in France. -- -- Alexander conquered Asia with  
 the troops which his father Philip had disciplined.  
<sup>troupe, f.</sup>  
 -- The faults which he had committed, greatly  
<sup>beaucoup, adv.</sup>  
 increased his prudence. -- He has spent all the  
<sup>augmenter, v.</sup>  
 treasures which his father had amassed with so much  
<sup>trésor, m.</sup>  
 care and labour. -- I shall never forget the good  
<sup>oublier, v.</sup>  
 services which you have done <sup>to my mother.</sup>  
<sup>service, m.</sup> <sup>rendra, v.</sup>  
 -- Of all the letters which my brother has received

to-day, there is not one (of them) for  
*aujourd'hui*, adv.  
 me. - - The reasons, which you have given us, have

satisfied us. - - What books have you lost? - - The  
*satisfaire*, v.

fine actions your brothers have done in  
*beau*, adj. *faire*, v.

America deserve great praises, and (ought to) be  
*mériter*, v. *louange*, f. *devoir*, v.

transmitted to posterity. - - The three country

houses, which your father is said to have bought,  
*maison*, f.

are extremely fine and well situated. - - The  
*situé*, p.p.

soldiers, whom they obliged to set out, are  
*soldat*, m. *à*

come back already. - - - My sisters have  
*revenir*, v.

quarrelled the whole day, and are now reconciled.  
*se quereller*, v.

The participle passive is indeclinable in the follow-  
 ing cases ;

First, when the contrary to the above rule happens ;  
 that is, when the pronoun, though preceding the parti-  
 ciple passive, is governed by another verb : ex.

*Plusieurs personnes se sont* Several persons came to  
*présentées à la porte,* the door, the sentinel  
*la sentinelle les a laissé* let them pass.

*passer,*  
*C'est une belle chanson,* It is a fine song. I have  
*je l'ai entendu chanter* heard it sung many a  
*plusieurs fois,* time.

*J'y suis allé avec elle et* I went there with her,  
*l'ai vu peindre,* and saw her picture  
 drawn.



*La langue que j'ai com-*      The language I have be-  
*mencé d'apprendre est*      gun to learn is very  
*fort utile,*                      useful.

In the above instances the pronouns are not governed by the participle passive, but by the verbs *passer*, *chanter*, *peindre*, and *apprendre*.

# EXERCISES ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

I cannot forget the good actions, which I have seen  
 you do. - - - The goods which you ordered me to  
 send, are arrived; permit me to show you the letters <sup>de</sup>  
 which we have received from Germany. - - The <sup>de</sup>  
 fable which I gave you to translate is not difficult. *Allemagne, f.*  
*à traduire, v.*  
 - - Have you already read the books, which I saw you  
 buying? - - Not yet, for I have sent them to my  
*Pas, adv.*  
 sister, who is in the country. - - - I have bought the  
 clothes for which you saw me bargaining. - - The  
*habit, m.* *marchander, v.*  
 history which I have begun to read is not enter-  
 taining. - - She has written more books than you ever  
*amusan, adj.*  
 have read. - - The lady whom I saw singing is hand-  
 some and young, but the song which I have heard  
 sung is the best, as to words and music, that  
*quant,*  
 your brother ever wrote. - - Miss B. has spent  
*passer, v.*

two or three days with your sisters, and saw their  
 (picture drawn); their cousins were in the next  
*peindre, v.*  
 room, and my sister saw them painting in minia-  
*en, p.*  
 ture.

Secondly, when it is immediately followed by a noun  
 (either substantive or adjective) in the accusative case,  
 or by another participle passive, though it should be  
 preceded by a pronoun : ex.

<i>Ma sœur s'est cassé le bras,</i>	My sister broke her arm.
<i>Les Anglois se sont ren-</i>	The English made them-
<i>du fameux dans cette</i>	selves famous in this
<i>guerre,</i>	war.
<i>Les Espagnols se sont</i>	The Spaniards found them-
<i>trouvé obligés de lever</i>	selves obliged to raise the
<i>le siège,</i>	siege.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Your sister has rendered herself celebrated by  
*célèbre, adj.*  
 her wit and beauty. - - My mother has bought  
*esprit, m.* *acheter, v.*  
 herself a fine gown, my sister had made her-  
*faire, v.*  
 self a good cloak, and my brothers had built  
*mantelet, m.* *bâtir, v.*  
 themselves an elegant house. - - They found  
 themselves surrounded by soldiers, who carried  
*conduire, v.*  
 them to prison, where they have been detained  
*en, p.* *retenir, v.*  
 for eight days; but they have been found  
*pendant, p.*

innocent of the crime with which they were ac-  
 cused, and at last (acquitted). - - - The city  
*(renvoyer absous.)*  
 of Liverpool has rendered itself flourishing by its  
*florissant, adj.*  
 trade. - - Did you hear the new song?  
*commerce, m. entendre chanter*  
 Yes, I did.

Lastly, when the auxiliary verb and the parti-  
 ciple passive are used impersonally. *Dû* (when not  
 signifying owed), *pu*, and *voulu*, are also indeclinable :  
 ex.

<i>Les pluies qu'il a fait,</i>	The rains which we have <i>had.</i>
<i>Je vous ai montré la re- connaissance que j'ai dû,</i>	I have shown you the gra- titude I ought.
<i>Ma sœur a fait tout ce qu'elle a pu,</i>	My sister has done every thing she could.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

The storm, which we had yesterday, has  
*tempête, f.*  
 done (a great deal) of damage to our  
*causer, v. beaucoup, adv. dommage, m.*  
 ships. - - The abundant showers which we have  
*pluie, f.*  
 had this week, have prevented me from going  
*empêcher, v.*  
 into the country. - - The high wind which  
*grand, adj. vent, m.*  
 they have had in the county of Kent, has (blown  
*comlé, m. renver-*  
 down) many houses and trees. - - At last he has  
*ser, v. Enfin, adv.*

returned me all the sums which I had lent to  
*rendre, v.* *somme, f.*

him, and which he had owed me so long. - - I  
*devoir, v.*

have not paid all the attention which I ought to  
*faire, v.*

the advice your father gave me. - - She has ob-  
*avis, m.* *ob-*

tained from the king all the favours she would.  
*tenir, v.* *grâce, f.*

- - My brother might have improved more,  
*faire des progrès*

but he has not made all the efforts he could. - - The  
*effort, m.*

excessive heat that (we have had) this summer,  
*chaleur, pl.* *il a fait, p.p.*

has caused many diseases.

In order to illustrate in a single example the appli-  
 cation of the above rules about participles passive, we  
 must write,

<p><i>J'ai reçu les lettres que          vous m'avez écrites au          sujet de l'affaire, que je          vous avois proposée: et          après les avoir lues avec          attention, j'ai reconnu,          comme vous, que, si je          l'avois entreprise, j'y          aurois trouvé des ob-          stacles que je n'avois pas          prévus,</i></p>	<p><i>I have received the letters,          which you wrote to me          with respect to the affair          which I had proposed to          you: and after having          read them with attention,          I perceived, as you did,          that, if I had undertaken          it, I should have met with          obstacles, which I had          not foreseen.</i></p>
--	--

In this period, *reçu* is indeclinable, because it is not  
 preceded by any regimen; *écrites* is declinable, and  
 agrees in gender and number with its absolute regi-  
 men, or accusative, expressed by the pronoun relative  
*que*, which precedes the verb and relates to *letters*;  
*proposée* likewise agrees with *que*, by which it is pre-

ceded, and which relates to the word *affaire* ; *lues* is declinable on account of its regimen *les*, which precedes it and relates to *letters* ; *reconnu* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded by any regimen to which it can relate ; *entreprise*, on the contrary, is declinable, and takes the gender and number of the conjunctive pronoun *l'*, which is its absolute regimen and its antecedent, relating to *affaire* ; *trouvé* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded but followed by its absolute regimen *obstacles* ; *prévus*, on the contrary, is declinable, because it is preceded by its absolute regimen *que*, which relates to *obstacles*.

If custom, in any case, has deviated from the preceding rules, it is sufficient to observe, that they have the sanction of the best authors. A little practice will soon remove many of these apparent difficulties.

## SECT. VI.

### INDECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Under this head are comprehended *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

#### OF ADVERBS.

*Adverbs* have been distinguished, according to their several significations, into *adverbs of place*, *time*, *quality*, *quantity*, *number*, *order*, *affirmation*, *negation*, *doubt*, *interrogation*, *comparison*, *collection*, *separation*, &c. But this classification, however ingenious, is far from being exact : it was therefore judged, that, if those of the most frequent use, and which, when compounded, form a particular idiom, were carefully selected, and arranged in an alphabetical series, it would be more to the advantage of the learner.

## TABLE OF ADVERBS.

*Abondamment*, abundantly, plentifully.

*à l'Abandon*, at random, in confusion, in disorder.

*D'Abord*, at first, immediately.

*Absolument*, absolutely.

*D'Accord*, grant it, done.

*Agréablement*, pleasantly, comfortably.

*Ainsi* (de même), so, thus, in the same manner.

*Aisément*, easily.

*Mal aisément*, with difficulty.

*Dans un an d'ici*, a year hence.

*L'année qui vient*, the next year.

*Anciennement*,  
*Autrefois*, } formerly, anciently.

*En ami*, friendly.

*à l'amiable*, amicably.

*En arrière*, *Tomber en arrière*, to fall backward.

*à reculons*, *Marcher à reculons*, to walk backward.

*Assez*, enough.

*Assurément*, certainly.

*Aujourd'hui*, to-day.

Time to { *D'aujourd'hui en huit*, this day se'nnight.  
 come. { *D'aujourd'hui en quinze*, this day fortnight.

Time { *Il y a aujourd'hui huit jours*, this day week, this  
 past. { day se'nnight.  
 { *Il y a aujourd'hui quinze jours*, this day fortnight.  
 { *Il y a aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve months.

*Autant*, as much, as many.

*D'autant plus*, so much the more.

*D'autant moins*, so much the less.

*Tout autant*,  
*Tout aussi*, } just as, just as much, every whit.

*Dorénavant*, in future.

*à l'avenir*, for the future, hereafter.

*à l'Angloise*, after the English manner, fashion, or way.

*à l'Italienne*, after the Italian, &c.

*à la Française*, after the French, &c.

*à la Turque*, after the Turkish, &c.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Our garden produces all kinds of fruits *plentifully*. - - Your sister left all her things in *disorder*. - - You did not know me *at first*. - - He would *absolutely* do it. - - If you please, I will go to London with you. *Done*. - - I hope we shall spend the day *pleasantly*. - - Have we not spent it *so*? - - My brother learns his lessons *easily*, and I *with difficulty*. - - *A year hence* you will (be able to) speak French tolerably well. - - My father says I shall go to *\*France next year*. - - - It was done so *anciently*. - - - I had the honour of seeing you *formerly*, but I do not recollect where I had that pleasure : I believe it was at Mr. P's. who received us so *friendly*. - - - Your brother and mine have settled their affairs *amicably*. - - Make two steps *backward*. - - He cannot see his way who walks *backward*. - - Have you played *enough*? - - Certainly you must be tired. - - - We do not expect him

\* See the article indefinite, page 41.

*to-day.* - - If it be fine weather, I shall be back  
*this day se'nnight.* - - I shall see you *this day fortnight*  
*de retour*  
 if I am well. - - *This day week* I was (at your house).  
*chez vous.*  
 - - *This day month* I met your brother. - - I came  
 here *this day twelve months.* - - - He has as  
*ici, adv.*  
 much money and as many friends as you. - - I was  
 so much the more persuaded of what you told me,  
 that I dismissed him *this day three weeks.* - -  
*renvoyer, v.*  
 I will do it so much the less, as I promised him not  
 to meddle with that affair. - - My sister has  
*de se mêler, v.* *de, p.*  
 just as much wit, and is just as amiable as yours. - -  
 Your son has given you some trouble, but I  
*mais, c.*  
 hope he will give you pleasure hereafter. - - If you  
 forgive him this time, he will not do it for the  
*future.* - - - In future, I never will trust him  
 any more. - - She dresses after the English  
*s'habiller, v.*  
 fashion, but she lives after the French way. - - - She  
 plays after the Italian manner. - - Your sister has a  
 cap after the Turkish fashion. - - Come here,  
*bonnet, m.*  
 go there, look every where.  
*chercher, v.*



## ADVERBS.

- Bas,*  
à, or *en bas,* } off, down, down with, below  
*En badinant,* for fun.
- Beaucoup,* } much, many, a great deal.  
*Bien,* }
- à beaucoup près,* nothing near.  
*De beaucoup,* by much, greatly.  
*Bien,* well, very.  
*De bon cœur,* heartily, with a good will.  
*De bonne foi,* } sincerely.  
*Sincèrement,* }
- De bonne heure,* betimes.  
*De bon jeu,* fairly.  
*De bon matin,* early.  
*De bouche,* by word of mouth.  
*à la bonne heure,* in good time, luckily, well and good.  
*à bon droit,* deservedly.  
*à bon marché,* cheap.  
*à bride abattue,* full speed.  
*çà et là,* to and fro.  
*à cause de quoi,* on what account.  
*à cela près,* that excepted.  
*Cependant,* in the meanwhile, nevertheless.  
*à cheval,* on horseback.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Hats off, gentlemen, and sit down. - - - The whole  
army surrendered and laid down their arms  
upon the ramparts of the citadel. - - There is a man  
below, whom you will see with pleasure. - - Though  
we said it for fun, he was very angry with us. - -  
There were many ladies, and we had a great deal of  
pleasure. - - You may say what you please,  
pouvoir, v. il vous plaira, v.

but she is *nothing near* so handsome as her sister. - - He has *by much* increased his fortune. - -  
 Whatever you do, do it well. - - If you do not do it with  
 a *good will*, I will do it myself. - - He has acted very  
*sincerely* in that business. - - Do you speak *sincerely*?  
 - - We will get up *betimes*. - - Have I not won  
*se lever, v.* *gagner, v.*  
*fairly*? - - We will set out *early*, that we may arrive  
 before the heat *chaleur, f.* of the day. - - It (is  
 better) *valoir* to tell it him *by word of mouth*, than to  
*mieux, v.* write to him. - - Sir, I have done my exercise. - - Well  
*de*  
*and good*. - - He has obtained it *deservedly*. - - My  
*obtenir, v.*  
 father has bought a horse *very cheap*. - - Do you see  
 those two horsemen, who come to us *full speed*? - -  
*cavalier, m.*  
 They wandered *to and fro* without knowing whither  
 to go. - - On *what account* is he angry with me?  
 - - That *excepted*, I have nothing to reproach him  
*à reprocher, v.* *lui*  
 with. - - - I should speak, but, *in the meanwhile*, I  
*en* *devoir, v.*  
 (hold my tongue). - - Miss White is very handsome,  
*se taire, v.*  
 nevertheless, I do not love her. - - - Some went  
 to London in a coach, others on horseback.  
*en, p.* *à*

## ADVERBS.

*Combien*, How much, how many, how ?

<i>Combien y a-t-il que,</i>	} how long ?
<i>Combien de tems y a-t-il que,</i>	
<i>Combien y avoit-il que,</i>	
<i>Depuis quand,</i>	
<i>Combien de tems,</i>	
<i>Pendant combien de tems,</i>	

N. B. 1. *How much, how many, how*, are rendered in French by *que* before an admiration : ex.

*Que vous êtes jolie !*

How pretty you are !

2. We make use of *combien y a-t-il que*, when the action mentioned in the interrogation has not yet ceased ; and then the verb, which (in English) is in the compound of the present, must be rendered (in French) by the present of the indicative mood : ex.

<i>Combien y a-t-il que vous</i>	How long have you been
<i>êtes, or, depuis quand</i>	in London ?
<i>êtes-vous à Londres ?</i>	

3. If the verb (in English) be in the compound of the imperfect, it is to be rendered (in French) by the imperfect of the indicative : ex.

<i>Combien y avoit-il que vous</i>	How long had you been
<i>étiez, or, depuis quand</i>	in London, when he
<i>étiez-vous à Londres</i>	died ?
<i>quand il mourut ?</i>	

4. If the action have entirely ceased, we make use of *pendant combien de tems*, with the following verb in the compound of the present : ex.

<i>Pendant combien de tems</i>	How long were you in
<i>avez-vous été à Londres ?</i>	London ?

5. *How long*, in the sense of *for what time*, is also rendered by *pendant combien de tems*, with the verb in the same tense as it is in English: ex.

*Pendant combien de tems* How long do you intend  
*vous proposez-vous de* to stay in Italy?  
*rester en Italie?*

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

*How much* do you owe him? - - - You see to *how*  
*many* dangers and *how many* reproaches we are  
 liable. - - - *How many* times shall I be obliged to  
*exposé*, p.p. *de*  
 bid you to (be silent)? - - *How* troublesome  
*dire*, v. *de se taire*, v. *importun*, adj.  
 you are? *How* sorry I am for having displeased  
*de*  
 you! - - *How much* I should be obliged to you, if  
 you would grant me that favour! - - *How long*  
*accorder*, v.  
 have you been learning French? - - *How long* have  
 they been in Paris? - - *How long* had you been in  
 London, when you married? - - *How long* had you been  
 learning Italian, when you wrote to me? - - *How long*  
 have your parents been in England? - - *How long*  
 had your brother been in Germany, when we left  
 it? *How long* were you in Holland? - - *How long*  
 did your cousin learn the mathematics? - - *How long*

have that gentleman and lady been waiting for me ? - - *How long* has your relation been dead ? - - *How long* had he been in his regiment, when he died ? - - *How long* was he ill ? - - *How long* does your uncle intend to leave his son on the continent ? - *se proposer de*  
*How long* had your father and mother proposed to stay in America, when they first went thither ? - - *de*  
 Why are you proud of your beauty ? You do not *s'enorgueillir, v.*  
 know how long it will last.

## ADVERBS.

*Combien y a-t-il d'ici ?* How far is it hence ?  
*Dans combien de tems ?* How long will it be before ?  
*Comme, as, like, how.*  
*Comme il faut,* soundly, as it should be.  
*Comment, how.*  
*à contre-cœur,* against our will.  
*à contre-sens,* the contrary, or wrong way, in a wrong sense.  
*à contre-tems,* unseasonably.  
*à corps perdu,* hand over head, desperately.  
*à côté,*  
*à l'écart,*  
*à part,*  
*à quartier,*  
*à côté l'un de l'autre,* abreast.  
*De ce côté-ci,* on this side.  
*De ce côté-là,* on that side.  
*De côté et d'autre,* up and down, about.  
*De tous côtés,* on all sides, on every side.  
*Coup sur coup,* one after another.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

*How far is it hence to Dover?* - - *How long will it be*  
*before you send me back the books I lent you?* - - -  
*They are punished as they deserve.* - - *My father's*  
*house is like yours, it is very badly built.* - - -  
*mal, adv.*  
*See how it rains.* - - - *Have they not been beaten*  
*soundly?* - - *This exercise is done as it should be.*  
- - *How can you speak thus?* - - *We went to the play*  
*against our will.* - - *You hold your book the wrong*  
*way.* - - *Your brother took in a wrong sense all*  
*that I said to him.* - - *Our master arrived very*  
*ce que*  
*unseasonably.* - - *The French rushed on the*  
*fondre, v.*  
*Austrians desperately.* - - *Put that aside.* - - *I*  
*Autrichien, m.*  
*perceive two ships sailing abreast.* - - *Let us walk*  
*on this side, and our companions will go on that*  
*side.* - - *They run up and down all day, and*  
*do nothing but play.* - - *How dare you run about*  
*ne que*  
*while your mother is waiting for you?* - -  
*pendant que, c.*  
*The enemies were victorious on all sides.* - - *We*  
*hear on every side, that peace will very*  
*apprendre, v.*  
*soon take place.* - - *They drank three bottles of*  
*avoir lieu, v.*  
*Burgundy wine one after another.*

## ADVERBS.

*Davantage*, more.

*Dedans*,  
*En dedans*, } within, inwardly.

*Dehors*,  
*En dehors*, } without.

*Déjà*, already.

*Demain*, to-morrow.

*Le lendemain*, the day after.

*Après demain*, the day after to-morrow.

*Dernièrement*, lately.

*Ci-dessus*, above.

*Par dessus*, above, over and above.

*Dessous*,  
*Au dessous*, } underneath.

*à découvert*, openly.

*à demi*,  
*à moitié*, } half, by halves.

*à dessein*, on purpose, designedly.

*à droite*, to the right.

*à double entente*, with a double meaning.

*Encore*, again, yet, as yet.

*Enfin*, at last.

*Ensuite*, afterward, then.

*Entièrement*, entirely.

*Exprès*, on purpose.

*à l'écart*, out of the way.

*à l'entour*, round about.

*à l'envers*, the wrong side outwards.

*à l'envi*, in emulation.

*aux environs*, thereabouts.

*En nulle manière*, in no wise.

*En plein jour*,  
*En plein midi*, } at noon, at mid-day.

*En tems et lieu*, in a proper time and place.

*En tous cas*, whatever may happen.

*En un clin d'œil*, in the twinkling of an eye.

*En sursaut*, suddenly.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

I know how that happened, talk *no more* of it. - -  
 Look *within* and you shall see it. - - She was *within*  
 and I was *without*. - - Have you *already* done your ex-  
 ercise? - - I will call upon you *to-morrow*, and  
*passer, v. chez, p.*  
*the day after* we will go and see my uncle. - - We  
 will pay you *the day after to-morrow* if we can. - -  
 I was *lately* (at your house). - - You will find it *above*.  
*chez vous.*  
 - - I like your garden and walks *above all*.  
*aimer, v.*  
 - - Look *underneath* this stone. - - *Underneath*  
 you will find something curious. - - Speak and show  
 yourself *openly*. - - We were *half* dead. - - I never do  
 things *by halves*. - - They killed him *on purpose*. - -  
 They did say so *designedly*. - - Go *to the right*. - -  
 My brother always speaks *with a double meaning*. - -  
 I tell the truth, *yet* he does not believe me. - - *At*  
*last* the rebels retired into the woods with  
*se retirer, v. dans, p. bois, m.*  
 a great loss. - - Do first what you have to do,  
*perte, f. Faire, v.*  
*afterward* you shall go out. - - He did it *entirely*  
 to please you. - - I came *on purpose* to see you.  
*pour, p.*



- - Take all these papers, and put them out of the way. - - How can you find the place, if you always turn round about? - - You have put <sup>mettre, v.</sup> on your waistcoat the wrong side outwards. - - My brother <sup>veste, f.</sup> and yours work in emulation of one another. - - He lives in London or *thereabouts*. - - I will do it in no wise. - - I was stopped at noon. - - We will tell him what we think in a proper time and place. - - *Whatever may happen*, I (do not care) for it. - - He did <sup>se soucier, v.</sup> it in the twinkling of an eye. - - This morning I awoke *suddenly*, but I soon fell asleep again, <sup>s'éveiller, v.</sup> and did not wake again till seven o'clock. <sup>se réveiller, v.</sup>

## ADVERBS.

*Facilement*, easily.

*Fidèlement*, faithfully.

*à la file*, } in a file.  
*De file*, }

*à la fois*, together.

*Combien de fois?* how many times?

*Une fois*, once.

*Deux fois*, twice.

*Trois fois*, thrice, three times.

*Tant de fois*, so many times.

*Par fois*, now and then.

*Fortement*, strongly.

*Fort*, very.

*Fort et ferme*, stoutly.

*à fond*, thoroughly.

*De fond en comble*, from top to bottom, to all intents and purposes.

*De front*, abreast.

*Galamment*, genteelly, gallantly.

*Goutte à goutte*, by drops.

*Guère ou Guères*, (with *ne* before the verb,) little, but little.

*à la hâte*, in haste.

*En haut*, } up there, up stairs, above stairs.  
*Là haut*, }

*D'heure en heure*, hourly, every hour.

*Hier*, yesterday.

*Hier-au soir*, last night.

*Avant-hier*, the day before yesterday.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Your brother learns *easily*, but he forgets *almost*  
*oublier, v.*  
 as *easily* as he learns. - - In the last battle our troops  
 fought (with the) French, all the soldiers and  
*livrer, v. aux*  
 officers did their duty *faithfully*: the enemy sur-  
 rendered at discretion, and were obliged to (march  
*de sor-*  
 out) of the country *in a file*. - - Let every one speak  
*tir, v.*  
 in his turn, for if you speak all *together*, how can  
*à*  
 I hear what you say? - - *How many times* did I tell  
 you to write to your parents? - - I spoke to him only  
*de*  
*once*, but I saw him *twice*. - - My father generally  
 goes to Germany *thrice* a year. - - I told it you *three*

times. - - I saw him *so many times*. - - Do you go  
*often* to London? I go *now and then*. - - The king  
*strongly* opposed the enemy in the action, where  
*s'opposer à* *mêlée, f.*  
he fought *gallantly*. - - Your little sister is *very*  
*combattre, v.*  
pretty. - - In all that they undertake they always act  
*stoutly*. - - My brother knows French *thoroughly*. - -  
They demolished the house *from top to bottom*. - -  
I travelled in a post-chaise drawn by three horses  
*abreast*. - - Always behave *genteelly*. - - Your brothers  
came to see us, and we received them *politely*. - -  
The wine runs from the hogshead *by drops*. - - Give  
him *but little* wine. - - 'Never' do' things in  
*Ne jamais, adv.*  
*haste*. - - Is Mr. D. *above stairs*? - - Go *up stairs*, you  
will find what you (look for) in the drawer  
*chercher, v.* *tiroir, m.*  
*behind* the door. - - After having (waited for) him  
*derrière, p.* *attendre, v.*  
*hourly*, he arrived at last. - - We see the army  
increasing *every hour*. - - I went *yesterday* to London.  
*grossir, v.*  
- - It rained very much *last night*, and it has frozen  
very hard this morning. - - *The day before yesterday*  
*très fort*  
I met your brother, who was riding on horse-  
*se promener, v.*  
back.

## ADVERBS.

*Ici*, here.

*Ici autour*, hereabouts.

*Ici près*, hard by.

*D'ici*, hence.

*D'ici en quinze jours*, within a fortnight.

*Par ici*, this way.

*Par ici par là*, here and there.

*à l'instant*, immediately, instantly.

*Jamais*, ever.

*Ne jamais*, never.

*à jamais*, for ever.

*Justement*, just, precisely.

*Jusqu'à quand ?* how long ?

*Jusqu'ici*, hitherto, as far as this.

*Jusque-là*, so far, as far as that.

*Jusqu'où ?* how far ?

*De jour*, in the day time.

*De jour à autre,* } from day to day, daily.

*De jour en jour,* }

*De deux en deux jours,* } every other day.

*De deux jours l'un,* }

*Tous les deux jours,* }

*Dans quinze jours*, in a fortnight.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Did I not tell you to stay *here* ? - - How many miles is it *hence* to Hampton-Court ? - -

(There must) be a great deal of game *here-*

*Il doit, v.* *gibier, m.*

*abouts.* - - How long has he lived *hard by* ? - - How

far is it *hence* to Canterbury ? - - I will call upon your

*Canorbéry* brother *within a fortnight.* - - Come *this way.* - - Your

books are scattered *here and there*. - - Come back  
*épars*, adj.

*immediately*. - - They *instantly* invited him to dine

with them. - - I do not believe that he *ever* will follow  
*à*  
 (by the subj.)

your advice. - - My father *never* will see him again.  
*conseil*, m.

- - Great men will *for ever* be celebrated in history.

- - (This is) *just* what I say. - - *How long*, O  
*Voilà*, adv.

Catiline, will you abuse our patience? - -  
*Catalina* *abuser*, v. de

*Hitherto* the enemy has done nothing considerable.

- - Learn this piece of poetry *as far as that*. - -  
*poésie*, f.

*How far* will you go? - - You always come to see me

by night, why do not you come *in the day-time*? - -  
*de*

We expect *from day to day* to receive news from  
*de*

the Continent. - - We are *daily* exposed to great

dangers. - - My master comes here *every other day*.

- - I shall go to France and Italy in *a fortnight*.

## ADVERBS.

*Là*, there, thither.

*Là autour*, thereabouts.

*Là bas*, yonder.

*De là*,  
*En de là*, } thence.

*Par là*, that way.

*Loin*, far.

*De loin*, afar off, at a distance.

*Long-tems*, a long while, long time.

*Lors*, then, at the time.

*Alors*,  
*Pour lors*, } then.

*Dès-lors*, from that time.

*Mal*, ill, wrong.

*Maintenant*, now.

*Médiocrement*, indifferently.

*Même*, even, yet.

*De même*, so, in the same manner.

*Mieux*, better.

*De mieux en mieux*, better and better.

*Moins*, less.

*Moins—Moins*, the less—the less.

*à moins*, for less, at less.

*Au moins, du moins* } at least, at the least.  
*Tout au moins*,

*En moins de rien*, in a trice.

*Natûrement*, plainly, ingenuously.

*Naturellement*, naturally, by nature.

*au Naturel*, to the life.

*Ne ni, ni*, neither—nor.

*Non pas, ne pas, ne point, non*, no, not.\*

*De nuit*, by night, in the night-time.

*Obligemment*, kindly, obligingly.

*Où*, where.

## OBSERVATION ON THE ADVERB *Où*.

The adverb of place, *Où*, where, is most commonly and more elegantly turned into French by *que* after the two other adverbs *ici*, here, *là*, there, to prevent the hiatus caused by the meeting of the two vowels; and sometimes after nouns expressing the place where something has happened, been done or committed, especially when

\* *Pas*, with the negation *ne* before it, merely expresses a negative, without affirming it, whereas *point* denies and affirms at once. *Pas* often denies but partly, or with some modification; *point*, on the contrary, always denies absolutely, totally, and without any reserve.

the sentence begins with the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as, *it is, it was, it will be, &c.* : ex.

<i>C'est ici que nous l'attendons,</i>	It is here (where) we are waiting for him.
<i>Ce fut là que je le vis pour la première fois,</i>	It was there (where) I saw him for the first time.
<i>Ce fut en plein sénat que César fut inhumainement assassiné,</i>	It was in full senate (where, or in which) Cæsar was inhumanly murdered.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

It was *there* or *thereabouts* that I met him. - - Do you see that tree *yonder*? - - *Thence* I went to France, and soon after to Germany. - - If you go *that way*, *après, p.* you may call at Mr. H's. - We are yet *far* from *pouvoir, v. passer chez* our house. - - I see many ships *afar off*. - - I saw him yesterday, but it was *at a distance*. - - You made me wait *a long while*. - - The fight lasted *a long combat, m.* time. - - He was ill *at the time* of my arrival. - - Then, I believe you. - - *From that time* I began to *commencer, v.* speak to him. - - Does your son behave ill *now*? - - When I do wrong, I repent *immediately*. - - They are *mal* now in England. - - The tree that I planted grows *indifferently*. - - Virtue is amiable *even* in an enemy.

You blame him, and nevertheless you act in the  
*agiz, v.*  
 same manner. - - You work better than your sister. - -  
 She reads French better and better. - - - My cousin  
 has less money and merit. - - The less you work  
 (by the fut.)  
 the less you will improve. - - - He will not do  
*faire des progrès.*  
 it for less. - - - There are now in America 30,000 men  
 at the least. - - - If you cannot come, at least write  
 to us. - - - He replied plainly to all my questions, and  
 I am much pleased with him. - - - What he does, he  
*de, p.*  
 does it naturally. - - - Miss Nichol's picture is  
*portrait, m.*  
 drawn to the life. - - - I will neither see him nor  
*fait, p. p.*  
 speak to him. - - - My mother and sisters (were to) go  
*devoir, v.*  
 next week to France, but my father says, that he  
 neither can nor will expose them to the caprice of the  
*vouloir, v.*  
 fashion which now reigns in that country. - - - I (asked  
*de-*  
 for) a glass of wine, and not a glass of water.  
*mander, v.*  
 - - - Will you come with me? No, for you always  
 travel by night. - - Always speak kindly. - - Where did  
 you meet them? - - It was here where I saw your brother  
 for the last time. - - - It was at Caernarvon when



Edward the Second was born, the first who bore the  
*naître, v.*

title of Prince of Wales. - - It was near the walls of  
*Galles, f.*

Corunna in Spain, *where* (or *near which*) the brave

Sir John Moore was wounded, and died a  
*chevalier, m.*

few hours after; England will long regret the loss

of that great general. It was there also *where* that

famous battle was fought in which both our

*se donner, v.*

officers and soldiers showed so much courage, and

performed so many prodigies of valour. - - It is not  
*faire,*

amidst the pleasures of this world *where* (or *amidst*  
*parmi, p.*

*which*) we find happiness, it is in the bosom of inno-  
*sein, m.*

cence and peace *where* (or *in which*) we ought to

(look for) it. - - It is in the county of Huntingdon  
*chercher, v.*

*province, f.*

*where* the best cheeses in the kingdom are made.

## ADVERBS.

*D'où ?* whence ?

*Par où,* through what place ? which way ? through  
which ?

*Oui,* yes.

*D'outre en outre,* through.

*Pas à pas,* step by step.

*De part et d'autre,* on both sides.

*Nulle part,* no-where, any-where.

*à peine,* hardly, scarcely.

*Pêle-mêle,* helter-skelter.

*Peut-être*, may be, perhaps.

*Peu*, little.

*Peu à peu*, by little and little, by degrees.

*à peu près*,

*à peu de chose près*, } almost, very near, thereabouts.

*Dans peu*, in a short time.

*Depuis peu*, lately, not long ago, a little while ago.

*à pied*, on foot.

*à pieds nus*, barefoot, barefooted.

*Au pis aller*, let the worst come to the worst.

*De pis en pis*, worse and worse.

*De plein gré*, with a good will, freely.

*De plein pied*, on the same floor.

*à pleines mains*, largely.

*Plus*, more, above.

*Plus—Plus*, the more—the more.

*Plus qu'il n'en faut*, more than enough.

*Au plus, tout au plus*, at the most.

*De plus en plus*, more and more.

*à plus forte raison*, much rather, much more so.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

Did my brothers tell you *whence* they came? - -

*Which way* are they gone? - - The hole *through*

*which* they (made their escape) was so small, that I  
*s'échapper*, v.

do not know how they could get out. - - Do you know  
*sortir*, v.

your lesson? Yes, Sir. - - The barrel is pierced  
*baril*, m.

*through*. - - I will follow you *step by step*. - -

The battle was cruel and bloody, and  
*combat*, m. *sanglant*, adj.

kept up a long time with an equal advantage  
*se maintenir*, v.

*on both sides*. - - I can find my book *no-where*. - -

There is no going *anywhere* in winter. - - He speaks  
 so low, that I can *hardly* hear what he says. - - The  
 Spaniards pursued them so closely that they  
*Espagnol, m.* *de si près, adv.*  
 entered the town *helter-skelter*. - - I shall see you  
*perhaps* to-morrow. - - He has *little* money. - - If you  
 give me a verb, I will learn it *by little and little*. - -  
 She is as tall as you, or *thereabouts*. - - I heard that  
 your sister will (be married) *in a short time*. - - Have  
*se marier*  
 you heard from your mother *lately*? - - I received a  
 letter from her *not long ago*. - - I was *on foot*, and  
 he was in a coach. - - I often pity the poor little  
 chimney sweepers, who walk *barefooted* in  
*cheminée, f.* *ramoneur, m.*  
 winter. - - *Let the worst come to the worst*, I will  
 (get rid) of it. - - Your brother writes *worse*  
*se défaire, v.*  
*and worse*. - - He submitted to it *with a good will*. - -  
*se soumettre*  
 All our rooms are *on the same floor*. - - He is so cha-  
 ritable, that he gives alms *largely*. - - I shall  
*aumône, f.*  
 never more complain of the rude reception  
*malhonnête, adj.* *accueil, m.*  
 which your uncle has given to my father. - - I have  
*fait, p.p.*  
 written three letters, neither *more* nor *less*. - - You  
 are *above* twenty years old. - - *The more* we are

above others, *the more* it becomes us to be  
*au dessus de*, p. *de*  
 modest and humble. - - You give me *more than*  
*enough*. - - You study *more* than ever. - - How many  
 coats have you? I have six *at the most*. - - I shall  
 endeavour to deserve your kindness *more and more*.  
 - - If I have done that to oblige my friend, I  
*pour*, p.  
 would *much more so* do it for my relations.

## ADVERBS.

*Plûtôt*, sooner.

*Point du tout*, not at all.

*à point nommé*, seasonably.

*Tout à point*, in the nick of time.

*à propos*, seasonably.

*Pourquoi?* or *que ne?* why?

*De près*, near, nearly, narrowly.

*Premièrement*,  
*En premier lieu*, } first, in the first place.

*Dès à présent*, from this moment.

*Presque*, almost, hardly.

*Presque jamais*, hardly ever.

*Presque toujours*, most commonly.

*De propos délibéré*, on purpose, purposely, deliberately.

*Par cas fortuit*, by chance, accidentally.

*Par derrière*, behind.

*Par dessus le marché*, into the bargain.

*Par en bas*, downward.

*Par en haut*, upward.

*Par malice*, through ill-nature, out of ill-nature.

*Par mégarde*, unawares.

*Par terre*, upon the ground, down.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

My father arrived yesterday *sooner* than we expected him. - - How do you like that book? *Not at all*. - - You come very *seasonably*, and your brother came *in the nick of time*. - - He speaks *little*, but he speaks *seasonably*. - - *Why* do you not learn your lessons better? - - *Why* do not you come yourself? - - Your dog is so snarling, that there is no approach<sup>ing</sup> him *near*. - - He *narrowly* escaped being killed. - - *In the first place*, I must tell you, that I shall punish you, if you do not behave better. - - *From this moment* I begin to believe that you are altered. - - You are almost as tall as I am. - - He is *hardly ever* at home. - - We dine *most commonly* between three and four o'clock. - - They killed him *purposely*. - - I met him *by chance*. - - That has happened *accidentally*. - - He struck his enemy *behind*. - - He gave me three yards of muslin *into the bargain*. - - Shall I begin downward or upward? - - Begin *downward*. - - He has torn my book *through ill-nature*. - - If I have

done him any harm, certainly I did it *unawares*. - -  
 I always find your books and hat *upon the ground*.  
 - - It was Peter who threw me down.  
*jeter, v.*

## ADVERBS.

*Quand ?* when ?  
*Depuis quand ?* how long is it since ?  
*Que ?* why ? how ?  
*Quelquefois*, sometimes.  
*à quoi bon ?* to what purpose ?  
*Rarement*, seldom.  
*Au reste*, } as to the rest.  
*Du reste*, }  
*à rebours*, the wrong way.  
*à la renverse*, backward, upon one's back.  
*à reculons*, backward.  
*à rez de chaussée*, even with the ground.  
*sens devant derrière*, preposterously.  
*Sens dessus dessous*, topsy-turvy.  
*De tous sens*, } every way.  
*De tous les sens*, }  
*Séparément*, separately.  
*Seulement*, only.\*  
*De sang froid*, in cold blood.  
*De suite*, together, one after another.  
*Dans la suite*, } afterward.  
*Par la suite*, }  
*Sur le champ*, directly, upon the spot.  
*Sûrement*, safely.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

*When* shall I have the pleasure of seeing you ? - -

*How long is it since* you lived in London ? - - *Why do*  
*à*

\* *Only* is also expressed, in French, by *ne* before the verb and *que* after it, when it becomes a conjunction.

you not come to see us *sometimes* ? - - *To what purpose* shall I write to him? - - He writes to me very *seldom*. - - *As to the rest*, do as you please. - - You do every thing *the wrong way*. - - - You hold your book *the wrong way*. - - He fell *upon his back*. - - - If you walk *backward*, you will fall *backward*. - - Our eating-room is *even with the ground*. - - You put all your things *preposterously*. - - She has left (every thing) *topsy-turvy*. - - You may find it *every-  
pouvoir, v.* *where*. - - He defeated them *separately*. - - I only saw him *once*. - - He committed the murder in *cold  
meurtre, m.* *blood*. - - They go *together*. - - He will give you much pleasure *afterward*. - - Do *directly* what I bid *dire, v.* you. - - We arrived *safely*.

## ADVERBS.

*Tant*, so much, so many.

*Tant mieux*, so much the better.

*Tant pis*, so much the worse.

*Tantôt*, by and by, sometimes.

*Tantôt—Tantôt*, sometimes—sometimes.

*Tôt*, } soon.

*Bientôt*, }

*Tôt ou tard*, one time or other, sooner or later, soon or late.

*Tant soit peu*, very little, ever so little.

*Tard*, late.

*à tems*, time enough, in proper time.

*De long-tems*, for a long time, this long while.

*De tems en tems*,  
*De tems à autre*, } now and then, from time to time.

*à tort*, wrongfully.

*à tort ou à droit*, right or wrong.

*à tort et à travers*, at random.

*Trop*, too much.

*Toujours*, always, ever.

*Pour toujours*, for ever.

*Tous les jours*, every day.

*Tour à tour*, by turns.

*Tout*, quite, wholly, thoroughly, entirely.\*

*Tout à coup*, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

*Tout bas*, softly, with a low voice.

*Tout d'un coup*, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

He has *so much* money, and *so many* goods,  
 that he does not know what to do (with them.) - -

(It is) *so much the better* for me, but it will be *so*  
*C'est, v.* *much the worse* for you. - - My father will come back  
*en, pro.* *ce*

*by and by.* - - Sometimes you write well, *some-*  
*times* you write very badly. - - My father says I shall  
*revenir, v.*

soon go to France. - - Have patience, you will suc-  
 ceed one time or other. - - The sun is the em-  
 blem of truth, which dispels, *sooner or later*, the  
*dissiper, v.*

\* This adverb takes the nature of a noun adjective, and becomes declinable, in French, when placed before another adjective feminine beginning with a consonant: ex.

*Ces femmes paroisoient tout effrayées et toutes consternées,* These women seemed quite fright-  
 ened and quite dismayed.



vapours of slander. - - Did he give you any meat?  
 - - He gave me *very little*. - - You arrived *late*, but I  
 came in *proper time*. - - I have not heard from my  
 brother *for a long time*. - - Come and see us *now and*  
*then*. - - You accuse him *wrongfully*. - - *Right or*  
*wrong* he will speak, and always speaks at  
*vouloir, v.*  
*random*. - - Give him a *little* money, but never give  
 him *too much*. - - You *always* contradict me when I  
 speak. - - O my children! be *ever* good, and you will be  
*ever* happy. - - I bid you adieu *for ever*. - - I go *every*  
*dire, v.*  
*day* to town. - - We will dance *by turns*. - - I am  
*quite* tired with repeating the same things. - - My  
*de*  
 sisters were *quite* transported with joy when they  
*de*  
 heard the happy news of the victory. - - Misfortunes  
 come sometimes *suddenly* upon us. - - Speak *softly*.  
 - - A storm arose *suddenly*, and all the sailors  
*s'élever, v.*  
 were *quite* frightened. - - The ladies I saw at the  
*à*  
 play were *quite* young and agreeable. - - He has more  
 brilliancy than solidity. - - Science is estimable,  
*brillant, m.* *solide, m.*  
 but virtue is more *so*,  
*davantage, adv.*

## ADVERBS.

*Tout à fait*, quite.

*Tout à l'heure*, this minute, presently.

*Tout droit*, straight along.

*Tout de bon*, in good earnest.

*Tout de long*, all along.

*Tout franc*, frankly, freely.

*Tout haut*, aloud.

*Tout outre*, through and through.

*à tout bout de champ*, } at every turn.  
*à tous coups*, }

*à tous égards*, in all respects.

*De toutes ses forces*, with all his or her might.

*Par tout*, every-where.

*Par tout où*, wherever.

*Vite*, } quickly.  
*Vitement*, }

*Vivement*, } to the quick.  
*Au vif*, }

*à vide*, empty.

*Au plus vite*, with all speed.

*Voici*, here is, behold.

*Voilà*, there is, behold.

*à vue d'œil*, perceptibly.

*Y*, there, therein, within, thither.

## EXERCISE ON THESE ADVERBS.

You are quite altered. - - I will do it presently. - -

If you do not come this minute, I shall go and  
 fetch you. - - Go straight along. - - Do you be-  
 chercher, v.

Heve it in good earnest? - - He was lain down all  
 couché, p.p.

along. - - He acts frankly, and speaks aloud. - - He

ran him through and through. - - She speaks  
 percer, v.

at every turn, without knowing what she says. - -

*sans, p. savoir, v.*

She is better than her sister in all respects. - - He

struck me with all his might. - - I have (looked  
*frapper, v.* *cher-*

for) you every-where. - - I will follow you wherever  
*cher, v.*

you go. - - Set out quickly. - - Her misfortunes  
(by the fut.) *malheur, m.*

touch me to the quick. - - The coach was returning

empty. - - Go with all speed to Mrs. Lucas, and  
*chez, p.*

tell her to come directly. - - Here is my room, and  
*de*

there is yours. - - These children grow *percep-*  
*grandir, v.*

tibly. - - Go thither instantly.

## SECT. VII.

### OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are divided into the three following classes. First, those that govern the genitive or ablative case. Secondly, those that govern the dative. And, lastly, those that govern the accusative.

First, the following govern the genitive or ablative.

*Autour de*, about, round.

*à cause de*, because of, on account of.

*à cause de vous, de lui, d'elle, de nous, &c.* on your, his, her, our, &c. account.

*à côté de*, aside, by.

*à couvert de*, free, secure, or screened from.

*à fleur de*, close to, even with.

*à moins de*, under.

- à force de*,\* by dint of.  
*à raison de*, at the rate of.  
*à l'abri de*, sheltered from.  
*à l'égal de*, in comparison of.  
*à l'égard de*, with regard, with respect, as to, concerning  
*à la faveur de*, by means of.  
*à l'insçu de*, without the knowledge of, unknown to.  
*à la manière de*, } in or after the manner or fashion of.  
*à la mode de*, }  
*à l'opposite de*, } over-against.  
*Vis à vis de*, }  
*Au deçà de*, } on this side.  
*En deçà de*, }  
*Au delà de*, on that side, on the other side.  
*Au dehors de*, out, without.  
*Au dessus de*, above, over, upon.  
*Au dessous de*, under, below, beneath.  
*Au devant de*, before.  
*Aller au devant de*, to go to meet.  
*Au derrière de*, behind, in the back part.  
*Au dedans de*, in, within.  
*Au lieu de*, instead of.  
*Au milieu de*, in the middle of.  
*Au prix de, en comparaison de*, in comparison to.  
*Aux environs de*, about, round about.  
*Ensuite de*, after.  
*Faute de*, for want of.  
*à la hauteur de*, (sea term), off.  
*Hors de*, out of.  
*Le long de*, along.  
*Loin de*, far from.  
*Près or proche de*, } near, or nigh, by.  
*Auprès de*, }  
*Pour l'amour de moi, de lui, d'elle, de vous, &c.* for  
my sake, for his, her, your sake, &c.  
*Tout auprès de*, close, hard by.  
*à l'épreuve de*, proof, (able to resist).

\* This preposition is sometimes Englished by *with* : ex.

*Il pleure à force de rire,* He cries *with* laughing.

## EXERCISE ON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

- Come this way ; we shall walk *round* the meadow. - - *prairie, f.*
- I have sent nothing to your brother *because* of his idleness, but I forgive him *on your account*. - - Sit down *by* that lady's sister. - - Endeavour to set *yourself* *mettre, v.* free from blame. - - We are not yet *secure* from all danger. - - Cut that sorrel *even with the ground.* *oseille, f.*
- - He is become a very good master *by dint* of study and practice. - - He will *not* sell it *under* *vouloir, v.* twelve guineas. - - My brother bought yesterday twenty pair of silk *stockings at the rate* of fourteen shillings and sixpence *a pair*. - - Under that tree *Sous, p.* we shall be *sheltered from the* rain. - - Your horse (is worth) very little *in comparison* of his *With* *valoir, v.* regard to what you say, I do not *mind* *it.* *se soucier, v.* *en*
- - All the prisoners (made their escape) *by means* of *s'échapper, v.* the darkness *of the night*. - - Your brother is *gone to London without the knowledge* of your *obscurité, f.* mother. - - He (left off) Latin *unknown* to his *quitter, v.* father. - - Now the English ladies (dress themselves) *s'habiller, v.* *after the French fashion*. - - Mrs. Tart lives *in* *demeurer, v.*

the Strand *over-against* Catharine-street. - - We now live *on this side* of the river. - - Do not you say that *demeurer* you met my father *on the other side* of the bridge? - - Why did you stay *out* of the house? - - Mrs. A. is very proud, she thinks *se croire* herself *above* every body, and consequently she (looks upon) every body as *regarder, v.* beneath her. - - Did you observe *remarquer, v.* the elegant lady who was in the box *below* you? - - There is a large tree *loge, f.* before the house. - - I am going to meet my aunt, will you accompany me? - - My uncle has a rich plantation in the *back* part of Virginia. - - There is a fine statue *within* the garden. - - He took my hat *instead* of his. - - Let us go *in the middle* of the meadow. - - My house (is *va-* good for) *nothing* in comparison of hers. - - He *loir, v.* walks two or three times a \* day *about* the garden. - - We drank tea, *after* which we went to *prendre, v.* *quoi, pro.* the play. - - I can do nothing *for want* of money. - - They were *off* the Cape of Good Hope when they were taken. - - Do not push *me out* of the *pousser, v.*

Remember the observations after the article *un, une, a or an*, page 48.

room. - - He is gone *along* the river. We are still  
*far from* our house. - - I met your friend Mr. A.  
*near* the church. - - My mother was buried *nigh* this  
marble pillar. - - He passed by me without knowing  
me. - - I do it *for your sake* as well as for *theirs*.  
- - My best friend lives *close* to the Royal Exchange,  
*demeurer*  
and he lived formerly *close* to St. James's palace. - -  
The officers and soldiers were lodged in barracks  
cannon and bomb-proof. - - My shoemaker very  
*canon, m.* *bombe, f. pl.*  
much wanted to make me a pair of boots water-  
*désirer, v.*  
proof, but I had not money enough to pay  
*pour, p.*  
him.

Secondly, the following govern the dative,  
*Conformément*, according, pursuant.  
*Jusqu'à,* } till, until, even to, as far as, to.  
*Jusques à,* }  
*Par rapport à,* with respect to, on account of.  
*Quant à,* as for, as to.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

A candid and sincere man always speaks and acts  
*according to* what he thinks. - - He has been punished  
*pursuant to* an act of parliament. - - Yesterday we  
*parlement, m.*  
waited for him *till* five o'clock in the morning. - -

They fought with obstinacy on both sides *until* the beginning of the night. - - If I had not stopped him, *entrée, f.*

he would have gone *even to* Dover. - - We accompanied them *as far as* Rochester, and they pursued their way *to* Canterbury. - - I will do it *with respect* to you, but never *on account* of them. - - *As for* me I will not give him a penny. - - *As for* us we were very much dissatisfied, I assure you. - - *As to* what people may say, I do not care for it.  
*pouvoir, v. (fut.)* *se soucier, v.*

Thirdly, the following require the accusative.

*Après*, after.

*D'après*, after.\*

*Avant*, before.

*Avec*, with.

*à travers*, cross, through.

*Chez*, in, to, at, among.

*Chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, chez elle, chez nous, &c.* at or to my, thy, his, her, our, &c. house.

*Contre*, against.

*Dans*, in, into, within.

*De*, about, through.

*Depuis*, since, from.

*Derrière*, behind.

*Dès*, from.

*Devant*, before.

*De dessus*, from the top.

*De dessous*, from under, from beneath.

*Durant*, during.

\* We make use of this preposition in the following sense only :—

*Il peint d'après un bon maître,* He paints after a good master.



- En*, in, into, like, as a, at.  
*Entre*, between.  
*Envers*, towards, with regard to.  
*Environ*, about.  
*Excepté*,  
*Hors*,  
*Hormis*, } except, but, save.  
*Moyennant*, for, provided.  
*Nonobstant*,  
*Malgré*, } notwithstanding, in spite of.  
*Outre*, beside.  
*Par*, by, through.  
*Par deçà*, on this side.  
*Par delà*, on that side.  
*Par derrière*, behind.  
*Par dessus*, above, over.  
*Par dessous*, under, below.  
*Parmi*, among.  
*Pendant*, during, for.  
*Pour*, for.  
*Sans*, without.  
*Sauf*, saving, but with.  
*Selon*,  
*Suivant*, } according to.  
*Sous*, under.  
*Sur*, upon, about.  
*Touchant*, concerning, about.  
*Vers*, towards, to.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

He arrived here an hour *after* you. - - Miss A.  
 paints *after* nature. - - Let me drink *before* you. - -  
*Laisser, v.*  
 Did you not see her walk *with* her father? - - It was  
 the ancient Britons, who cut a road *through*  
*chemin, m.*  
 this mountain. - - Such was the custom *among* the

Romans. - - I was going *to your house* : but as I have met you, we will go *to my house*, where we shall dine.

- - Do not lean *against* that wall. - - Go and

*s'appuyer, v.*  
take a walk *in* the garden. - - I am going *into* my *faire un tour*

room. - - Keep *yourself within* the limits of decency. - - I spoke to your father *about* your affairs. - -

*Tenir, v.*  
His father died *through* grief. - - I have not heard from her *since* her departure. - - Go *into* my room ;

you will find a letter *behind* the looking-glass ; *miroir, m.*

(be so kind as) to bring it to me. - - *From* this moment I believe you. - - Do not put yourself *before*

me. - - We saw the camp *from the top of* the hill. - -

I saw it *from under* a tree. - - He behaved well *during* your absence. - - My sister is *in* England. - - He be-

haved *like* an honest man in that affair. - - He acts as a tender father who loves you. - - Tell nobody what

*—*  
passed *between* you and me. - - Be not unjust *towards* your neighbours. - - It was *about* four o'clock when

*se passer*  
*prochain, m. sing.*  
we set out. - - Take all that you please *except* my sword. - - I give you all my books, *but* the History of

*touloir, (fut.)*

France. - - They were all drowned *save* my friend. - -  
*noyer, v.*

He will do it *for* two guineas. - - I walk every day  
*notwithstanding* the bad weather. - - I hope you will  
 succeed in your undertaking *in spite of* Mrs. Slander.  
*réussir*

- - *Beside* his own money, he spends all his sister's.

- - It is said that Gibraltar is (blocked up) *by* land  
*bloquer, v.*

and *by* sea. - - I have passed *through* France and

Italy. - - We have passed *through* Germany. - - He  
*Allemagne.*

lives *on this side*, and his brother *on that side* of

London. - - He is a coward who attacks his enemy

*behind*. - - Let us see whether you can jump *over*  
*si, c.* *sauter, v.*

the table. - - Look *under* the door, and you will see

it. - - Envy, jealousy, and slander, *always* reign  
*médiance, f.*

*among* authors. - - What have you done *during* my ab-

sence? - - I have been expecting you *for* a long time.

- - - Your aunt has sent me some books *for* you. - - -

*Without* him what could I have done? - A woman may  
*pourvoir,*

please *without* beauty, but she cannot succeed *without*

virtue. - - He always goes out *without* me. - - The

army marched three days and three nights *without*

stopping. - - He carried away all my furniture, *saving*  
*s'arrêter.* *meubles, m. pl.*

my bed. - - Do I not live\* *according to the rules*  
 which you have prescribed? - - I found your *règle, f.* buckle  
*prescrire, v.* under the chair. - - You said you had left *boucle, f.* it upon  
*chaise, f.* the table. - - How could I lend you a guinea? I had no  
*laisser, v.* money about me. - - Did not my brother write to you  
 concerning that affair? - - It was *towards* the evening  
 when he arrived.

### OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

*Above.* This preposition, when preceding a noun expressing time or number, so as to signify *more than* or *longer than*, is to be rendered in French by *plus de*: ex.

*Le combat dura plus de* The fight lasted *above*  
*deux heures,* two hours.

### EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

My brother was not *above* twenty years old, when  
 he (was married). - - He made us wait *above* a week. - -  
*se marier*  
 My father's country-house is very handsome, but it  
 costs him *above* six thousand pounds. - - In the last  
 sea-fight which took place between the French and  
 the English, *above* twelve hundred men perished in  
 the action on the side of the French, and the  
*du,*

\* See the N. B. before the Exercises upon the first Conjugation, page 178.

English took *above* fifteen ships of the line. - - It is  
*above* a year since my cousin set off for Jamaica.

*Jamaïque, f.*

*At* is most commonly rendered by *à*, and sometimes by one of the French articles *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the noun following: *ex.*

*Nous étions à dîner,*

We were at dinner.

*Elle est à la maison,*

She is at home.

*Il joue bien aux cartes,*

He plays well at cards.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

If you be *at* Rome, live as they do *at* Rome. - -

*vivre on,*

We will get up next week *at* six o'clock. - - When I

*se lever*

called upon Mr. B. he was *at* breakfast. - - Every

*passer*

thing I have is *at* your service. - - My brother is *at*

Mr. H's. academy. - - Were you *at* Mrs. C's. ball last

week? - - You always travel by night *at* the peril of

your life. - - I will pay you *at* the end of the year. - -

My mother is *at* the height of happiness. - - He plays

*comble*

very well *at* chess, and his companion begins

*échecs, m. pl.*

to play a little *at* draughts. - - He did it *at* the insti-

*dames, f. pl.*

gation of his friend.

After nouns or verbs denoting anger, derision, joy, provocation, resentment, sorrow, surprise, or concern, *at* is rendered by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*: *ex.*

<i>Il se moque de vous,</i>	He laughs at you.
<i>Je me réjouis de votre bonheur,</i>	I rejoice at your good luck.
<i>Nous sommes surpris de ce que vous dites,</i>	We are surprised at what you say.

## EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Exasperated at his conduct, he told him never to  
*Irrité, adj.*  
 laugh at poor people. - - We always ought to rejoice  
*se moquer,* *devoir*  
 at the good fortune which befalls our neighbours.  
*arriver, v. à*  
 - - I am vexed at the news which we received last  
 week. - - A good Christian never shows any resent-  
 ment at the injuries which are offered to him. - - He  
*faire*  
 always smiles at (every thing) which is said. - - A pa-  
*tout*  
 tient man never grieves at his misfortunes. - -  
*s'attrister, v.*  
 I cannot help being surprised at her manner  
*s'empêcher, v. de*  
 of answering. - - I am concerned at the loss which  
 you sustained in your trade. - - He was so mortified  
*essuyer, v.*  
 at the disobedience of his sons, that he died through  
*de*  
 grief.

*At* is rendered by *chez*, when, in English, it precedes the word *house*, either expressed or understood, and the same rule is to be observed with respect to the preposition *to* : ex.

<i>J'étois chez votre frère,</i>	I was at your brother's.
<i>Je vais chez Madame Lucas,</i>	I am going to Ma. Lucas's.

## EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITIONS.

I (called upon) Miss Brown this morning, as I had  
*passer*  
 promised your mother, but she was not *at* home. - -  
*à*  
 Where was she then? She was *at* her aunt's. - - I  
 thought my friend was *at* his father's, but I mistook,  
*se tromper*  
 for he was *at* his uncle's. - - How long have you been  
*at* Mr. H's. ? - - We lodge *at* my friend's, but we board  
*manger*  
*at* the pastry-cook's. - - If you go *to* my brother, tell  
 him to come *to* my cousin's, where I am to spend  
*de*  
 the day, and we will go together *to* his friend's. *passer, v.*

*By*, when preceding a numeral adjective immediately followed by another adjective expressing the *dimension* or *superficies* of an object, is rendered in French by *sur*, and when it precedes a verb in the participle active, it is then rendered by *en*: ex.

<i>Cette chambre a dix pieds</i>	This room is ten feet
<i>de longueur sur sept et</i>	long <i>by</i> seven and half
<i>demi de largeur,</i>	wide.
<i>En agissant ainsi, vous</i>	<i>By</i> acting thus, you will
<i>vous ferez des ennemis,</i>	get enemies.

## EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

My box is a foot and a half deep *by* two wide and  
 four long. - - The general (drew up) his army in order  
*ranger, v.* *en*  
 of battle, and placed his best soldiers in length *by*

fifty feet deep. - - Our (school-room) at Alfred  
*école, f.*  
 House, Camberwell, is forty feet long by  
 thirty-six wide, and our play-ground contains above  
 an acre of land. - - You will soon speak French  
*arpent, m.*  
 by applying so. - - Your father gets a considerable  
*s'appliquer faire, v.*  
 fortune by buying cheap and selling dear. - - Men  
 acquire learning by working and not by sleeping. - -  
 Water hollows a stone, not by falling with force,  
*creuser, v.*  
 but by falling often; so a man becomes learned, not  
 by studying with force, but by studying often.

By, after the verbs *to sell, to buy, to work*, and the like, preceding a noun of *weight or measure, day, week, month, or year*, is rendered into French by *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun: ex.

<i>Je ne vends rien à la</i>	<i>I sell nothing by the</i>
<i>livre,</i>	<i>pound.</i>
<i>Il achète toujours à l'aune,</i>	<i>He always buys by the ell.</i>
<i>Nous travaillons à l'heure,</i>	<i>We work by the hour, or</i>
<i>ou à la journée,</i>	<i>by the day.</i>

#### EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Always buy tea by the pound, and never by the ounce, you will get it cheaper. - - I never buy my  
*avoir*  
 cloth by the ell, but by the piece. - - It is a sad thing to buy coals by the bushel. - - How do you sell your  
*de*  
 brandy? We sell it by the gallon, and not by the



bottle. - - He sells his wine *by* the dozen. - - I sell  
 eggs *by* the hundred, and chesnuts *by* the quarter.  
 - - How do you measure your cambric? *by* the ell,  
*batiste, m.*  
 or *by* the yard? - - Do you buy cider *by* the hogshead,  
*tonneau, m.*  
 or *by* the pipe? - - Does your father work *by* the  
 week or the month? - - No, Sir, he works *by* the year.  
 Well! I always thought he worked *by* the piece.

*By*, immediately following the verbs *to kill*, *to wound*,  
*to knock down*, and the like, is made into French, by  
*d'un coup de*, when it expresses the effect, blow, thrust,  
 stroke, firing, &c. of an instrument by which a man was  
 either killed, wounded, &c. provided the blows have  
 not been repeated: if the blows have been repeated, we  
 make use of *à coups de*, in which case it is most com-  
 monly rendered in English by *with*: *ex.*

*Il fut blessé d'un coup de* He was wounded *by* an  
*flèche,* arrow.  
*Ils l'assommèrent à coups* They knocked him down  
*de bâton,* with a stick.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

Achilles was killed at the siege of Troy *by* an  
*au*  
 arrow, which Paris, king Priam's son, (let fly)  
*décocher, v.*  
 at his heel. - - (Unable to) catch the thief,  
*talon, m.* *Ne pouvoir attraper, v.*  
 they knocked him down *with* a stick. - - At last  
*Enfin, adv.*  
 the king, having broke his battle-axe and  
*bâche-d'armes, f.*  
 sword *by* the force of his blows, was knocked down  
*renversé, p.p.*

by a stone, and taken prisoner. - - William the  
*fait, p. 3.*

Second was killed by an arrow in the New-Forest. - -

My brother was wounded by a gun, and my  
*fusil, m.*

cousin was killed by a cannon-ball. - - Edward the  
*boulet de canon, m.*

First was wounded in Palestine with a poisoned  
 dagger. - - He is so strong, that with his fist he  
*poignard, m.*

could knock down an ox. - - He threw my brother

down, and almost killed him with his feet. - -  
*par terre;*

They killed him not with stones, but with arrows. - -

The soldiers kill one another with bayonets, and the  
*se tuer*

officers with sabres and swords. - - My mother's

watch (goes too fast) by half an hour, but yours  
*avancer, v.*

(goes too slow) by twenty minutes.  
*retarder, v.*

For, after *reflected verbs*, as also those which denote  
*thanksgiving, &c.* is rendered by one of the following  
 articles, *de, du, de la, de l', des* : ex.

<i>Je me réjouis du service</i>	I rejoice for the service
<i>qu'il vous a rendu, et je</i>	which he has done to
<i>l'en remercierai demain,</i>	you, and will thank
	him to-morrow for it.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

I am very grateful *for* all the kindness  
*reconnoissant, adj.* *bonté, f.*  
 you have had for me. - - He is very sorry *for* the

grief he has caused you. - - When we have reached *atteindre, v.*  
 the age of reason, we are often sorry, but too late,  
*for* the time we lost when we were young. - - My  
 brother desired me to thank you *for* the part you  
*de*  
 took in his troubles. - - Every one leaped *for* joy,  
*peine, f.* *tressaillir*  
 when the happy news of peace arrived. - - A child  
 who cares *little* *for* those who gave him life,  
*se soucier, v.*  
 is an unnatural being. - - An ungrateful son will be  
*dénaturé, adj.*  
 punished (one time or other) *for* his ingratitude.

*From*, preceding the name of a man or woman, or one of the *personal, possessive, relative, or interrogative* pronouns, after the verbs *to go, to come, to send, &c.* is generally rendered in French by *de la part de*, or *de ma, de sa, de notre part, de votre part, &c.* : ex.

*Allez de ma part chez* Go *from* me to Mr. D.  
*Mons. D.*

*Je viens de sa part,* I come *from* him or her.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

Go *from* me to Miss Dunkin's and tell her I shall be glad to see her : no, stop a little, tell her that you come *from* my cousin, who has something very pretty to show her. - - *From* whom do you come ? said she to me. - - Madame, replied I to her, I come *from* my parents, who sent me. - - Well, answered

she, any one is always welcome, who comes *from* them. - - Send *from* me to Mr. Lucas, and let him know that I am (very much) vexed at the letter I received *from* him; I never could have expected to receive such an affront *from* such a gentleman.

*In* requires some attention from the learner, who is to observe that *dans* always conveys a limited idea, and is followed by the article; when, on the contrary, *en* conveys a very determinate idea, and seldom admits of the article, whether expressed in English or not: ex.

*Il est dans la maison,*  
*Elle est en Angleterre,*

He is *in* the house.  
She is *in* England.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

He always keeps himself shut up *in* his room. - -

Take all the linen which I shall want *in* our journey, and put it *into* my box. - - Walk *into* the parlour.

- - We live *in* the county of Surrey. - - Is there a good fire *in* the room? - - Ovid, one of the finest poets of

the Augustan age, expired *in* the seventeenth year of our Lord, at Tomi, near Varna, on the

western coast of the Black Sea, whither he had been banished by the emperor Augustus. - - -

Is your sister *in* France? - - No, madam, she is *in*

Spain. - - How long do you intend to stay in town? - -  
 Sir, do you keep house? - - No, we live in  
 (ready furnished) lodgings. - - When we are in  
     *garni*, adj.      *chambre*, f.      *on*  
 peace, people talk of war; and when in war, they  
     *en*      *on*  
 talk of peace. - - Your eldest son behaved *like a*  
 hero. - - If my son behave *like an* honest man, I shall  
 act towards him *as a* tender father. - - *In* what does  
 human happiness consist? - - If you wish to be happy  
 and esteemed in this world, live *like a* man of  
 honour and probity. - - He walks in the garden with  
 his friend. - - He is gone to spend the winter in  
 Italy. - - The American navy officers have acted  
*like* heroes.

*In*, after words denoting *pain*, *hurting*, or *wounding*,  
 and preceding one of the possessive pronouns in con-  
 junction with any part of the body, is to be rendered by  
 one of the following articles, *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, and  
 the possessive pronoun left out; and when *in* precedes  
 a noun denoting a part of time, it is not to be expressed  
 in French: *ex.*

<i>Il étoit blessé au bras et</i>	He was wounded in his
<i>non à la jambe,</i>	arm, and not in his leg.
<i>Vous le trouverez toujours</i>	You will always find him
<i>chez lui le matin,</i>	at home in the morn- ing.

## EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

My brother has constantly a pain *in* his head, and I have very often a pain *in* my teeth. - - Never eat any fruit which is not ripe, for there is nothing more apt to give you a pain *in* your stomach. - - My companion, by jumping over a form, (fell down), <sup>banc, m.    tomber, v.</sup> and was much hurt *in* the shoulder. - - Your brother was wounded *in* the arm, but not dangerously, and my cousin was mortally wounded *in* the head. - - My master comes generally *in* the morning. - - I will call upon you *in* the afternoon, and *in* the evening go to the play.

*On or upon.* This preposition is rendered by *de* after the verbs *to depend*, *to live*, *to subsist*, and the like ; and by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, after the verb *to play*, preceding the name of an instrument : and before the days of the week and the names of the month, preceded by a numeral adjective the above preposition must not be expressed : *ex.*

*Il vit de pain et d'eau,*

He lives *on* bread and water.

*Vous jouez du violon, et il joue de la flûte,*

You play *on* the violin, and he plays *on* the flute.

*Cela arriva le dix-huit du mois dernier,*

That happened *on* the eighteenth of last month.

## EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

We all depend *upon* divine mercy. - - A *miséricorde*, f.  
 good end generally depends *on* a good beginning. - -  
 Men do not live only *on* bread and meat, but *on* the  
 grace of God. - - Birds subsist *upon* what they can  
 catch. - - What do you live *upon*, you who never eat  
 any meat? - - In winter I live *on* milk and vegetables,  
 and in summer I live *upon* bread and butter, cheese, and  
 all sorts of fruits. - - *Upon* what instrument does your  
 sister play? - - She plays very well *on* the harpsichord;  
 and she is now learning to play *on* the harp. - - Come  
*on* Friday early, and I will go to see you *on* the Saturday  
 following. - - Why did you not play *on* the violin on  
 Wednesday last? - - On June the eighth, 1376, died  
 Edward, prince of Wales, the delight of the  
 nation, in the forty-sixth year of his age. (in the pl.) - - - On the  
 third of June, 1664, the English obtained a great victory  
 over the Dutch off Harwich, took eighteen  
*Hollandois*, m.  
 ships, and destroyed fourteen more.

*Over.* This preposition is commonly rendered in French by *sur*; but it must be rendered by the participle passive of the verbs *finir*, *passer*, *achever*, when it denotes an action ended: *ex*,

**Il a l'avantage sur vous,**

**He has the advantage  
over you.**

*Votre frère partit dès que  
la pluie fut passée,*

**Your brother set out as soon as the rain was over.**

### Le dîner est-il fini ?

## Is dinner over?

**EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.**

**A coach passed over his body and killed him. - -**

**Tullia, Tarquinius' wife, the unnatural daughter**  
*dénaturé, adj.*

of Servius king of Rome, ordered her coachman  
*ordonner à*

to drive over the dead body of her father. - - In  
*de passer, v.*

going to London, did you go over Westminster

bridge? - - Yes, but in coming back I passed over

**Blackfriars bridge. - - They dissolved the army  
dispenser, v.**

as soon as it was resolved that the campaign was

over. - - In France they drink coffee as soon as  
prendre

dinner is over. - - You <sup>perhaps</sup> may go and walk when  
(by the fut.)

the rain is <sup>(by the fut.)</sup> over. - - They fought well, and the

**battle was soon over.**

*With* is rendered by *dans*, when it is used before nouns denoting the purpose, design, or motive of the agent: ex.

*Il le fit dans l'attente d'être  
bien récompensé,*

He did it *with* an expectation of being well rewarded.



## EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

He poisoned his brother *with* the hope of  
*empoisonner, v.*  
 inheriting his estates. - - My brother is gone to  
*hériter, v. de bien, m.*  
 your house *with* the design of scolding you  
*gronder, v.*  
 well. - - He who beats another *with* the intention of  
 killing him, is a murderer at the bottom of his  
 heart. - - He did it *with* the intention of pleasing  
 you, and not *with* any design of hurting you. - - I  
 went last week to Mr. Olympus, *with* the expecta-  
 tion of receiving the money which I lent him a  
 month ago, but he was not at home. - - I live *with*  
 the hope of receiving it (one time or another). - -  
 He said so *with* a design of deceiving you, if he  
 could.

*With* must be made by *de* after the following  
 verbs, to starve, to die, to do, to dispense, to meddle,  
 to encompass, to load, to cover, to strike, and those  
 denoting fulness: likewise after the following adjec-  
 tives, amorous, charmed, pleased, displeased, endowed,  
 &c. ex.

Elle meurt de froid et de	She dies with cold and
faim,	hunger.
Je suis content de ce que	I am pleased with what I
j'ai,	have.

## EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Lazy people ought *devoir, v.* to die *with* hunger and  
 cold. - - The winter was so severe, that I was dying  
*with* cold. - - They are so rich, that they do not know  
 what to do *with* their money. - - I hope you will dis-  
*gue* *~* pense me *with* that disagreeable (piece of work).  
*besogne, f.*  
 - - Do not meddle *with* my affairs, meddle *with* your  
 own. - - It is reported on all sides, that Paris is to be  
 encompassed *with* walls. - - Do you see that waggon?  
*chariot, m.*  
 It is loaded *with* goods. - - Do you wish your house  
*que*  
 (be) covered *with* slates or tiles? - He was overwhelmed  
*soit, v.* *tuile, f.* *accablé, adj.*  
*with* grief. - - The enemy, struck *with* terror and  
 astonishment, ran away. - - Honour me *with* your  
 commands. - - I have filled my cellar *with* good beer  
 and excellent wine. - - Narcissus, seeing himself in a  
 clear fountain, fell in love *with* his own  
*devenir, v.* *amoureux, adj.*  
 person. - - I am charmed *with* the agreeable company  
 of your sister. - - As to us, little satisfied *with* his  
 answers, we took other measures. - - Are you not

pleased with the behaviour of your son Thomas? - -

You would be wrong to be dissatisfied with  
*avoir tort, de mécontent, adj.*

him, for he behaved like an honest man in  
*se conduire, v.*

that affair, and he is endowed with many good  
*doué, adj.*

qualities. - - The man who meddles with nobody's

affairs, but quietly follows his own, seldom makes

himself enemies.

*With* is rendered by *contre* after words denoting anger or passion: and before nouns denoting the matter, instruments, tools, or expressing how and in what manner a thing is done or made, it is rendered by one of the following articles, *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun: ex.

<i>Madame votre mère est très-fâchée contre vous,</i>	Your mother is very angry with you.
<i>Une table à tiroirs,</i>	A table with drawers.
<i>Dessiner au crayon, à la craie,</i>	To draw with a pencil, with chalk.
<i>Se battre à l'épée, au pistolet,</i>	To fight with swords, with pistols.

#### EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

My brother was in<sup>s</sup> such<sup>1</sup> a passion<sup>s</sup> with me, that I  
*si colère, f.*  
 thought he would have beaten me. - - I believe what  
*croire, v.*  
 you say, but I was very angry with her when she  
 told me she would not do it. - - I live near the river,

and if you will come to see me, we will fish *with* a  
 net or a line. - - Your brother and my cousin  
*filet, m. ligne, f.*  
 fought *with* sabres and pistols; the former was  
 wounded in his thigh, and the latter in his side. - -  
 My house has been built *with* lime and sand. - - Did  
 Miss Arnold show you the picture she has drawn  
*with* India ink? - - No, but she showed me her  
*Chine, f.*  
 mother's picture done *with* chalk, I assure you it is  
 very like. - - Do not go so near that wall, it is newly  
*ressemblant, adj.*  
 painted *with* (white lead). - - I bought a penknife *with*  
*céruse, f.*  
 two blades. - - The Americans fought bravely  
*lame, f. se battre*  
*with* the English at New-Orleans.  
*nouvelle*

*With* is not to be expressed after some verbs, such as, *to meet with, to trust with, to supply with, to reproach with, &c.* It is likewise to be suppressed where it expresses the *situation, position, &c.* of a person, or when it is used in the sense of *having, holding, &c.*: ex.

<i>Il a essayé bien des cha-</i> <i>grins,</i>	He has met <i>with</i> many troubles.
<i>Nous lui fournirons, tout</i> <i>ce dont il aura besoin,</i>	We will supply him <i>with</i> every thing he wants.
<i>Il se promène toujours un</i> <i>livre à la main,</i>	He always walks <i>with</i> a book in his hand, that is, <i>having or holding a</i> <i>book, &amp;c.</i>

## EXERCISE ON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

He met *with* so many mortifications from his  
*essuyer, v.*  
 sons, that through grief he fell *ill* and died  
*de* *tomber, v.*  
 almost *with* despair. - - When you meet  
*rencontrer, v.*  
 a poor man, never reproach him *with* his poverty,  
 but endeavour to furnish him *with* the means  
*moyen, m.*  
 of emerging from his misery. - - I have trusted Mr.  
 N. *with* my son's education, with the utmost con-  
 fidence that he will answer my expectation. - - The  
 New River supplies London *with* all the water which  
 the inhabitants stand in need of. - - I reproached  
*avoir besoin, v.*  
 her *with* her ingratitude towards her benefactors. - -  
 He always walks round the premises *with* a stick in his  
*bâton, m.*  
 hand. - - Never speak to any body *with* your hat on,  
*le*  
 your head. - - He is represented on horseback, *with*  
 a sword in his right-hand and a horse - pistol  
*l'épée* *arçon, m. pistolet, m.*  
 in his left.  
*gauche, adj.*

*Without (sans):* this preposition is sometimes ex-  
 pressed (in English) by the imperfect or compound of  
 the imperfect of the verb *to be*, preceded by the con-  
 junction *if*, and sometimes by *but for*: ex.

Sans vous, je ne sais ce que *If it were not for you, I do*  
je deviendrais, not know what would  
become of me.

Sans lui, mon frère auroit *Had it not been for him,*  
été puni, my brother would have  
been punished.

Sans elle, je serois mort de *But for her, I should have*  
faim, starved.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS PREPOSITION.

*Without* the assistance of the divine Providence,  
*secours, m.*  
what are we ? What are we capable of ? - - Accord-  
ing to what you tell me, and what I have heard,  
she has a great deal of wit and merit ; and, *but for*  
that large scar which she has in her fore-  
*grand, adj. cicatrice, f.*  
head, she would be very handsome. - - *Had it not*  
*been for* the help of good and honest people, what  
could you have done ? - - *If it had not been for* me,  
he never would have paid you. - - *Were it not for* rich  
and charitable persons, what would become of the  
poor and needy ? - - Our neighbour fell into the river,  
*voisin, m.*  
and *but for* my father, who was passing that way, he  
would have been drowned. - - *Were it not for* emula-  
*se noyer, v.*  
tion, (every thing) would languish in the world.  
*tout*

## SECT. VIII.

### OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Most of the conjunctions are adverbs and prepositions, but always attended by *de* or *que*. They have been divided into *copulative, comparative, disjunctive, adversative, casual, dubitative, exceptive, conditional, continuative, conclusive, &c.* Instead of following this arrangement, it will be of more importance for the scholar to understand, that different conjunctions require different states of the verb. Some require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*, others in the *indicative*, and others again in the *subjunctive*.

These require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*.

*Afin de*, in order to.

*à moins de*, or } unless.  
*à moins que de*, }

*Avant de*, or } before,  
*Avant que de*, }

*Au lieu de*, instead of.

*De crainte de*, or } for fear of.  
*De peur de*, }

*Excepté de*, except to.

*Faute de*, for want of.

*Jusqu'à*, to that degree that, till.

*Loin de*, far from.

*Plutôt que de*, rather than.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

In order to learn well, we must study with a  
   *on devoir, v.*  
 great deal of attention. - - It will be impossible for  
 you to learn French *unless* you be diligent. - - Let us

breakfast *before* we begin (any thing). - - A prudent  
 man ought to think several times, *before* he acts. - -  
 He is gone to church, *instead of* coming with us. - -  
 I would not do it *for fear of* displeasing you. - - He  
 is capable of (every thing) *except of* doing good. - -  
 For want of sending for <sup>tout</sup> a surgeon in  
<sup>envoyer chercher, v.</sup> <sup>chirurgien, m.</sup> <sup>à</sup>  
 time, he lost his arm. - - He carried his inso-  
 lence to that degree that he spoke injurious words  
 to him. - - Your cousin has humbled himself, till  
 he fell (on his) knees before the idol. - - Far from  
 exciting them to fight, I did all that I could in order  
 to prevent them. - - She would do (any thing) (in the)  
 world *rather than* speak to him. - - *Rather than* study,  
 he loses his time, or spends it in trifles.

The following require the verb in the *indicative mood*.

*Ainsi que*, \* as.

*Tout ainsi que*, \* just as.

*Après que*, \* after that, after.

*à cause que*, } *because*.  
*Parce que*, }

*à ce que*, according as, or to.

*à condition que*, on, or upon condition that.

*à mesure que*, \* in proportion as, as.

*Au lieu que*, whereas.



- Dès le moment que*, \* the moment that.  
*Aussi long-tems que*, \* as long as.  
*Aussi loin que*, \* as far as.  
*Aussitôt que*,  
*D'abord que*, } \* as soon as.  
*Dès que*,  
*Silôt que*,  
*Attendu que*, considering that, seeing that.  
*Comme*, or } \* as.  
*En tant que*,  
*De façon que*,  
*De manière que*, } in such manner that, so that, so.  
*De sorte que*,  
*Si bien que*,  
*Tellement que*,  
*Depuis que*, ever since, since.  
*Puisque*, since.  
*De même que*, even as.  
*D'où vient que*, how comes it to pass that, why.  
*Lorsque*, } \* when.  
*Quand*, }  
*Mais*, but.†  
*Outre que*, beside that.  
*à peine que*, hardly, scarcely,—but, or when.  
*Pendant que*, } \* while.  
*Tandis que*, }  
*Peut-être que*, perhaps.  
*Quand*, }  
*Quand même*, } though.  
*Selon que*, } \* according as.  
*Suivant que*, }  
*Tant que*, \* as long as.  
*Que—de—ne*, than only.  
*Autant que*, \* as much as.

† This conjunction, when beginning a sentence, is always rendered by *mais*. In the middle of a sentence, the word *but* is always rendered by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after it: ex.

*Je n'ai parlé à votre frère que deux fois,* I have spoken to your brother but twice.

*D'autant que*, whereas, for so much as, since.

*D'autant plus—que*, so much the more, the more,—as.

*Toutefois*, yet, nevertheless.

*Toutes les fois que*, every time, as often as, whenever.

*Sinon que*, except that.

*Si*, if, in case, whether.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I called at your sister's, *as* you had desired me.

*passer, v.*

- - I punish you *as* you deserve (it). - - *After* you

were gone, I began writing. - - I love you *because*

you behave better than your brother. - - *According*

*as* I see, you are very well. - - He will write to you,

*on condition that* he shall speedily receive

*promptement, adv.*

your answer. - - *In proportion as* we study, we

become learned. - - A skilful gardener pulls up

*arracher, v.*

weeds *as* they grow. - - Your brother

*mauvaise herbe, f.*

learns his lessons, *whereas* you do nothing. - - *The*

*moment that* I saw you, I knew you again. - - I did

not stay in Italy, *as long as* you did. - - I followed him

(with my) eyes *as far as* I could. - - *As soon as* they

*des*

had taken the general, the army surrendered. - - *Why*

did you give it to him, *considering that* you had

promised it to me? - - I did not come to see you,

seeing that I did not know that you were ill. . . .

You (look at) me, as if I had taken your book. . . .  
regarder, v.

I will lend you my horse, as you are my friend. . . .

So you will not come when I call you? . . . He

beat him so that he almost killed him. . . .

Your mother is quite altered, since I saw her  
changé, p.p.

last. . . . You must stay at home, since you  
dernièrement, adv.

are not well. . . . The thing happened even as I had

foreseen it. . . . How comes it to pass, that I have not

seen your friend until now? . . . Why, in proportion as

we grow older, do we not grow wiser? . . . When  
devenir, v.

you are going to undertake an affair of importance,

permit me to tell you, that you ought to consult  
de

your friends before you begin it. . . . When she had

done speaking, she (fell asleep). . . . Did you not see  
s'endormir, v.

Mr. Brown this morning? . . . Yes, but I could not speak

to him. . . . Sometimes those who meddle with our

affaires but to serve us, are those who do us most

harm. . . . The misfortunes of others seem to us  
tort, m. sembler, v.

but a dream in comparison to our own. . . . If you  
songe, m.

could give me *but* half of the money you owe me, I should be very much obliged to you. - - *Beside that* he does not apply as he should, he is often absent from school. - - We were *hardly* arrived, when it began to rain. - - *While* you lose your time, your brother improves fast. - - Play on the harpsichord, *à* *beaucoup*, adv. *clavécin*, m. while I write my exercise. - - *Perhaps* the master will forgive me. - - *Though* you should cheapen *for* *marchander*, v. two hours, I could not abate sixpence. - - Our father punishes and rewards us *according as we* deserve. - - Speak *as long as* you please, I will not grant you what you ask me. - - He had rather do harm *aimer*, v. *mieux*, adv. to his companions *than* (be doing) nothing. - - If *faire*, v. you loved to study, *as much as* you love to play, I should have (no occasion) to complain. - - I avoid *aucun sujet*, m. *éviter*, v. slanderers, *as much as* I fear them. - - You may *médisant*, m. believe me, *for so much as* I was present when he said so. - - This proceeding was *the more* extraordinary, *as* it was contrary to the laws of the kingdom. - - The belief of another life appears to *croyance*, f.

me so much the more conformable to truth, as it is the more necessary to virtue. - - - Virtue reigns so much the more sovereignly, as it does not reign by force and fear. - - All men (seek after) riches, and yet we see few rich men happy. *rechercher, v.* - - I see the king and queen every time I go to Windsor. - - He interrupts me as often as I speak. - - Whenever I go to London, I meet him. - - - She said nothing to me, except that it was impossible (for her) to do what you required of her. *lui, pro.* - - I know not whether he would come, even though you should desire him. - - In case Mr. S. calls here, tell him I am not at home, and ask him when he will come again to see me. *passer, v.* - - - If you do it, you will be punished. - - - Tell me sincerely whether he did it or not. - - - We should spare ourselves many troubles, were we more prudent. *s'épargner, v.* *peine, f.*

The conjunctions that have this mark \* affixed, as it appears in the preceding ones, when followed, in English, by a verb in the present of the indicative mood, and connected with another verb denoting futurity, require the verb, which, in English, is put in the present, to be rendered in French by the future.

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

You will be rewarded *just as* you deserve. - -

*After* you have done your exercises, you shall go out.  
*devoir, m.*

- - I will explain these rules to you, *as* we read them.

- - *The moment* that you burn this letter, the danger  
will be over. - - We will follow you *as far as* you go.

- - *As long as* you (keep company with) those people,  
*fréquenter, v.*

never come to my house. - - We will set out *as soon*

*as* we have dined. - - *As* you deserve, you will be

rewarded. - - Send me Miss White, *when* she has

done writing. - - You will write the words *accord-*  
*fini, p.p. de*

*ing as* I dictate them. - - *As long as* you behave

well, you will be dear to me. - - *se comporter, v.*  
In short, said this

good king, I shall only think myself happy in *as much*  
*se croire*

*as* I cause the happiness of my people.

*faire*

It has been remarked in the degrees of comparison, that every comparative must be attended by the conjunction *que*, than; it must now be observed, that, if *que* precede a verb in the infinitive, it is to be followed by *de*. But if the verb be neither in, nor can be turned into the infinitive, the conjunction must then be attended by *ne*; that is, *que* before the noun or pronoun, and *ne* before the verb; *ex.*

*Il vaut mieux être mal-  
heureux que d'être cou-  
pable,* It is better to be unfor-  
tunate *than* criminal.

*Mon père est revenu  
plutôt que nous ne l'at-  
tendions,* My father came back  
sooner *than* we ex-  
pected him.

## EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

It is more pleasing to enjoy good health,  
*agréable, adj.*

*than* to possess a large fortune. - - It is harder (to

be revenged) of an enemy, *than* forgive him. - -  
*se venger, v.*

It is better to make a sacrifice of a limb, said the  
surgeon, *than* lose your life. - - When the thunder

roars it is less dangerous to be in an open field,  
*gronder, v.*

*than* to take shelter under a tree. - - Should you  
*se mettre,* *devoir,*

not apply more *than* you do; you, especially, who  
are to be useful to your country? - - That would

give me more pleasure *than* you imagine. - - Did you  
not receive your goods *before* war was declared?

- - How many people can say to themselves, Had I  
employed my time *better than* I did when I was

young, I should be (in good circumstances) now. - -  
*à mon aise,*

Diseases come faster *than* they go away.

*s'en retourner, v.*

The following require the verb in the *subjunctive mood*.

*Afin que,* } that, in order that, to the end that.  
*Pour que,* }

*Avant que,* before.

*Au or en cas que,* in case that, if, suppose that.

*A moins que,\** }  
*Excepté que,* } unless, till.  
*Si ce n'est que,* }

*Que—ne,*

*Bien que,* }

*Encore que,* } though, although, for all that, as.  
*Quoique,* }

*Tout que,* }

*Bien entendu que,* with a proviso that, upon condition that, provided that.

*De crainte que,†* } lest, for fear.  
*De peur que,* }

*Dieu veuille que,* God grant.

*Plaise, or plutôt à Dieu que,* please God, or would to God.  
*à Dieu ne plaise,* God forbid.

*Hormis que,* } save that, unless, except.  
*Hors que,* }

*Jusqu'à ce que,\** till, until.

*Loin que,* far from.

*Moyennant que,* } save that, provided that.  
*Pourvu que,* }

*Nonobstant que,* notwithstanding that.

*Pour peu que,* how little soever, however little.

*Sans que,* without that.

*Soit que,* whether,—or.

*Supposons que,* suppose, let us suppose that.

*Tant s'en faut que je,* I am so far from.

*Tant s'en faut qu'il, or elle, he, or she is so far from.*

*Tant s'en faut que nous, or vous, we, or you are so far from.*

\* These conjunctions require the negation *ne* before the following verbs: ex.

*A moins qu'il ne le fasse,*

*Unless he does it.*

*De crainte, or de peur qu'ils ne viennent, For fear, or lest they come.*

† See observations upon the pronouns indefinite, page 118.



## EXERCISE ON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I will explain to you every difficulty, *that* you may not be disheartened in your undertaking. - -

*décourager, v.*

Carry that money to Mrs. Nolle, *in order that* she may pay the writing-master when he comes. - - A

(by the fut.)

wise and prudent man lives with economy when young, *to the end that* he may enjoy the fruit of

his labour when he is old. - - *Before* you begin an

(by the fut.)

action, consider well, and see whether you can bring it about; for, it is the end that crowns the work. - - -

*à bout*

*en venir*

*œuvre, m.*

*In case* you want my assistance, call me, I shall be near you. - - *If* I do not call upon you this afternoon,

I will write to you. - - *Suppose* you should lose your friends, what would become of you? - - You will

never be respected, *unless* you forsake the bad company you keep. - - You cannot finish (to-night),

*abandonner, v.*

*ce soir,*

*unless* I help you. - - I will not lend it you, *unless* you promise me to return it to her, as soon as you

*de rendre, v.*

can. - - I shall not cease to importune you, *till* you (by the fut.)

*de*

have forgiven me. - - They are not happy, *though*

they be rich. - - The general arrived yesterday morning at the camp, weary and tired, but very seasonably; immediately he gave his orders to begin the action, *though* he had not yet all his troops. - - *Although* you have a good memory, this is not enough to learn any language whatever, you must make use of your judgment. - - *For* all that she has no fortune, I do not love her the less for it. - - *As* zealous a friend, *as* he appears, I know one action of his life which is neither Christian nor equitable. - - I lend you my violin *with a proviso* that you will return it to me in an hour. - - My mother will come to see you, *upon condition* that you promise me to go to the play with her. - - - I give you that penknife, *upon condition* that you will not make a bad use of it. - - I will go to London to-morrow, *provided* you accompany me. - - I will write again to your brother to-morrow, *lest* he should not have received my last letter. - - We avoided an engagement, *for fear* we should be taken, their force being

superior to ours. - - God grant you be not disappointed  
 in your hopes! - - Would to God I had been there! I  
 would have conquered or perished. - - God forbid I  
 should blame your conduct. *vaincre* - - Your business never  
 will be done properly, unless you do it yourself. - - I  
 shall not go out to-day, except you go with me. - -

They fought with fury on both sides,  
*se battre, v.* *acharnement, m.*  
 till night came. - - I shall not set out, till I have  
 dined. - - I am going to write, till we go out. - - Far  
 from hating him, I wish him all kinds of prosperity.

- - I forgive you this time, provided you promise me  
 to be lazy no more, and pay more attention to  
 de *faire, v.*  
 what you are told. - - I will give you leave to dance,

provided you give me your word of honor  
*parole, f.*

not to overheat yourself. - - Why did you tell  
 de *s'échauffer, v.*

me my father was arrived, notwithstanding you  
 knew the contrary? - - He is so quick, that

however little he is contradicted, he (flies into a passion)  
*prompt, adj.*  
*s'emporter, v.*

in an instant. - - However little you give her  
 she is of so good a temper, that she is always  
*naturel, m.*

pleased. - - Can you touch it *without* my brother content, adj.

perceiving it? - - Suppose we dine here to-day, *s'appercevoir de*,

and to-morrow at our house. - - I am so far

from blaming you for assisting him, that, on the  
(com. of the pres. inf.)

contrary, I very much admire your conduct. - -

• He is so far from despising her, that, on the contrary, he respects and honours her. - - It is so far from raining, that, on the contrary, I think we shall have dry and hot weather during all this week.

The conjunction *si*, if, instead of being repeated in a sentence, is more elegantly rendered by *que*, with the verb following it in the subjunctive mood, as, instead of saying,

<i>Si vous venez chez moi, et</i>	If you call upon me, and
<i>si vous ne me trouviez</i>	do not find me at
<i>pas,</i>	home,

It is more elegant to say,

*Si vous venez chez moi, et*  
*que vous ne me trouviez*  
*pas, &c.*

*Que* must also be repeated in the second part of a sentence, as well as the pronoun, when there is a conjunction in the first part of it; in this case *que* requires the following verb to be put in the same mood as the preceding: ex.

<p><i>Dès que je l'aurai vu et que je lui aurai parlé, je vous le ferai savoir, Quoiqu'il soit plus riche que vous, et qu'il ait de meil- leurs amis,</i></p>	<p>As soon as I have seen him and spoken to him, I will let you know it. Though he be richer than you, and have better friends.</p>
---	---

**EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.**

*If* your father do not arrive to-day, and *if* you want money, I will lend you some. - - *avoir besoin de*

*If* you should see your sister, and speak to her, &c. - - *If* you study and take pains, I assure you that you will learn the French language in a very short time. - - *Whether* you eat or drink, sing, dance, or play, do every thing with grace and attention. - -

*If* you love me, and be willing to oblige me, do not go to France with her. - - *If* men were wise, and would follow the dictates of reason, they would save themselves many sorrows. - - *If* you meet my brother, and he speak to you, do not answer. - - *So that* you saw and spoke to her. - - *Though* you have good relations, *parent, m.*

your merit be known, and you do not want  
 friends, your projects will not succeed without your *manquer de*  
 brother's assistance. - - *As soon as* I have dressed  
 myself, and breakfasted, I will go to see him. - -  
*While* you play and lose your money, your sister is  
 learning her lesson. - - We must pity him who has  
 no talent, and *only* despise him who has no virtue.  
 - - Play on the organ, *while* I read my brother's  
 letter and answer him. - - *Beside* that he never  
 studies, and is always in the country, he has not  
 so much wit as his sister. - - I will explain to you  
 every difficulty (*in order*) that you may take  
 courage and learn well. - - *Though* you should have  
 the best master in England, and learn all the rules  
 of the grammar, if you do not put them in practice,  
 you will never speak good French. - - God grant  
 you may succeed in your pursuits, and obtain the  
 favour, you solicit so ardently! *entreprise, f.* - - - *Whether*  
 God raise *élever, v.* up thrones, or pull *abaisser, v.* them down; *en*  
*whether* he communicate his power *puissance, f.* to princes,

or withdraw it to himself, and only leave them  
*retirer, v.*

their own weakness; he teaches them their duty

in a sovereign manner. - - *Whether* you speak or  
*de, p.*

(hold your tongue,) you will obtain nothing from  
*se taire, v.*

me; but whatever you may say, speak so that you

may never offend any one. - - Your brother told me

he was young, and was\* but twenty years old when  
*personne*

he was made a captain; I think he was better in-

formed and had more experience than you have. - -

I can assure you, that both our officers and soldiers

have behaved nobly; and performed prodigies of

valour, though the enemies were superior in num-  
*faire*

ber, and had the advantage of the ground.

*terrein*

It is here necessary to observe, that verbs denoting  
*wish, will, command, desire, doubt, fear, ignorance, entreaty,*  
*persuasion, pretension, surprise, &c.* always require the  
 conjunction *que* after them, with the following verb in  
 the *subjunctive mood*.

In short, in those *dispositions* of mind where the will  
 is chiefly concerned, or whenever we express a thing  
 with some degree of *doubt* or *hesitation*, then the verb,  
 which, in English, is put in the infinitive mood, the  
 participle active, or the future tense, must, in French,  
 be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

\* See the remark after the verb *être*, to be, page 174.

*Croyez-vous qu'il soit hon- Do you believe him to be  
nête? honest?  
Je doute que vous le fas- I doubt of your doing it.  
siez,  
Je ne crois pas qu'elle I do not believe she will  
viensse, come.*

See *Falloir*, and the rules after it, page 332.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

You wish him to pay you; he has no money, I am obliged to lend him some every day. - - I do not think that true philosophy may be less useful to women than men; but I remark, that the most part of those who meddle (with it) are but very bad philosophers, without becoming better wives for it. - - I do not believe that your mother will arrive to-day. - - She wishes you may succeed in all your undertakings. - - I fear she (will go away) without speaking to me. - - I much fear he will come sooner than you expect him. - - Do you not say you are surprised that William has not spoken to you ever since last week. - - For my part, I am not surprised at it, for he is always pouting.

*de*  
*remarquer, v.*  
*se mêler, v.* *en*  
*pouvoir, v.*  
*craindre, v.* *s'en al-*  
*ler, v.*  
*attendre, v.*  
*Quant à moi,*  
*bouder, v.*



- - Do you think he will succeed, and obtain the place

he aims at? - - You have had much trouble, and we  
*aspirer, v.*

all fear lest hereafter she should give you much  
(pres. of subj.)

more. - - If you believe him to be your friend, why

then do not you follow his advice? - - It is necessary

for you to go thither, and assure him, that I am very  
*que*

thankful for all his kindness. - - I wonder that  
*reconnoissant, de,*

Mr. R. has not yet asked your sister in marriage. - -

If you see her and she speaks to you, do not answer

her. - - Order her to do it. - - Do you imagine

*Dire, v.*

*s'imaginer, v.*

we are sure they will come to-night? - - Do you

think it is possible for you to (bring it about)?  
*croire, v. de, en venir à bout, v.*

- - It is just we should suffer, since we deserve it. - -

I do not say I have seen it. - - He (was afraid) lest

*craindre, v. que*

you should come while he was (gone out). - - -

*sortir, v.*

Our master has ordered, that we should (get up) to-

*se lever*

morrow morning early. - - You did not think that she

wanted to deceive you, when she told you that.  
*vouloir, v.*

- - I wonder you should doubt, that it is your

*être surpris, v.*

daughter who told it me. - - Do you think my mother

will let us go to the ball next week? - - Were Mr. S. discreet and willing to undertake that affair, I would communicate it to him immediately. - - It will be better for you to go and speak to him yourself, while he is in town, because I do not doubt of his undertaking it. - - Were I certain that you would speak to him about it, I would desire him to come and dine with us to-morrow; for I am to see him to-night at his brother's. - - I am certain that he will satisfy you: are you certain he will satisfy me? - - Your uncle is very glad you have written to your father. - - I am very glad to hear you have overcome all difficulties. - - I will give you no rest, <sup>de</sup> <sup>sur-</sup> <sup>monter, v.</sup> unless you are reconciled with your mother. - - I <sup>que ne,</sup> do not believe it is she who has done it. - - Do you believe it? - - My brother is not well, and I doubt (very much) of his coming to see us before next <sup>fort,</sup> spring. - - Do you think he is on the road? - - I doubt whether he will come before next <sup>en, p. 10</sup> week <sup>suivant, adj.</sup>. - - I did not know you had studied geography so long

It must be observed, that, after the verb *vouloir*, the verb *to have* is not expressed, but rendered in French by *que*. It must also be observed, that the sign of the future tense, *shall*, when it refers to the will of a person, and meaning, *I choose, I do not choose, do you choose, &c.* must be rendered in French by the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *vouloir*, according to the number and person, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood : *ex.*

<i>Je veux qu'il fasse cela,</i>	<i>I will have him do that.</i>
<i>Je veux que vous me mon-</i>	<i>You shall show me that</i>
<i>triez cette lettre,</i>	<i>letter, that is to say,</i>
	<i>I choose you should</i>
	<i>show, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Voulez-vous que je danse ?</i>	<i>Shall I dance ? that is, do</i>
	<i>you choose, &amp;c.</i>

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

You would have your daughter return to-  
*vouloir, v.* *revenir, v.*  
 morrow, but that is impossible. - - I will have your  
 father know what you have done: you must stay  
*rester, v.*  
 here till he comes. - - Your mother would have you  
 come directly; why do not you come then? - - I  
 absolutely intend that she shall go thither  
*vouloir, v.*  
 directly, and tell him, that, whether he be ill or  
 well, I will have him set out as soon as he has re-  
 ceived my letter. - - I will have you see my house,  
 and tell me what you think of it. - - She shall not go  
*penser, v.*

into the country, unless I go with her. - - My father would have me and my brother walk <sup>*faire à pied, v.*</sup> all the way. - - Your sister shall go with me to Croyden, and *chemin, m.* not you. - - Your father will have you go to France in a month; I am very glad of it, however I would not have you do things too precipitately. - - Shall my brother show you his translation? - - Your brother asked me whether he might go home to-morrow; I told him he might go whenever he thought he should be wanted: but you shall remain here till you have learned all your lessons. - - I know a gentleman who is going to Paris; shall I tell him to call upon you? I would not have you go to Germany <sup>*passer, chez,*</sup> without understanding French well, as that language will enable you to learn German much sooner than you expect. - - Your brother shall not go out to-day. <sup>*s'attendre,*</sup> - - Will you be so good as to go and carry that letter to the post? No, I cannot leave my play. ' But I tell you, that you shall (go); I would have you pay <sup>*faire, v.*</sup> more attention to what you are told.

*Qui, que, or dont*, preceded by a superlative, require the following verb in the subjunctive mood, and when *qui* stands as a nominative to a verb, denoting a condition, it also requires the following verb to be put in the subjunctive mood : *ex.*

<i>C'est la plus belle femme</i>	She is the handsomest wo-
<i>puisse se voir,</i>	man <i>that</i> can be seen.
<i>C'est le plus méchant garçon</i>	He is the most wicked boy
<i>que je connoisse,</i>	<i>that</i> I know.
<i>Je veux une femme qui soit</i>	I will have a wife who is,
<i>belle,</i>	handsome :

that is, I will not have any woman for a wife, but on condition she be handsome.

EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

Do you say you are surprised, that he has not yet written to you? I assure you it is not to be wondered at, for he is the most negligent man I know.

- - It is necessary for you to go thither, and assure him that he has done nothing that should <sup>*ou que*</sup> *devoir, v.*

(make me angry). - - He is the most charitable man <sup>*fâcher, v.*</sup>

we have in this neighbourhood ; his purse is always open to any one who is poor and industrious. - - Did

you not tell me you (sought for) a master who had <sup>*chercher, v.*</sup>

a good pronounciation, and was endowed with a great deal of patience? - - When a father is capable

of teaching his children, he is the best master whom

they can have. - - I know nobody that improves  
more than Miss K——; and when she was learning *faire des progrès,*  
French, had she learned it by rules, she would speak,  
write, and translate now much better than Miss S—,  
though she was two years in France. - - Has not your  
brother some friends whom he can trust? - - Your  
father has bought the finest horse that I have ever *se fier à, v.*  
seen. - - Is there any lady that appears more reasonable  
than she does? - - If you ever choose a friend, I wish  
you may choose one whom you esteem, and who  
may be an honest man. - - It will be better for you to  
go and speak to him yourself, instead of writing to  
him, because I do not doubt of his undertaking and  
(bringing about) your affair; he is the most diligent  
*venir à bout de*  
and the most careful man we have in this country. - -  
Before you begin any thing of importance, consult  
some body who is your friend, and on whom you can  
rely. - - Do you know any body who goes to  
*faire fond, v.*  
France? - - I have something to send to my sister. - -  
If you do not follow my advice, believe me, it will

be the greatest misfortune that can happen to you.

- - Babylon was the finest city that ever was built. - -

The best reason I can give you is, that I  
*pouvoir, v.*

(was not well). - - If you lend me a horse, lend me  
*se bien porter, v.*

one that goes well. - - The God who has created us,  
and who created the universe, is the only one  
*seul, adj.*  
to whom we owe homage, and the only one whom we  
ought to fear.

## SECT. IX.

### OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections, as before observed, serve to express the sudden emotions of the soul.

There are several sorts, viz.

Of joy, grief, pain, admiration, aversion, silence, calling, encouraging, warning, &c. such as,

*Allons, gai!* come, be cheerful!

*ça, courage!* come, come on!

*Bon!* good!

*Ah, mon Dieu!* oh, my God!

*Ah, ouidà!* ay, marry!

*Ha, quelle joie!* O, joy!

*ô ciel!* O Heaven!

*Fi! fi; fy* upon!

*Holà, ho!* ho there!

*Hélas!* alas!

*Malheur à!* wo to!

*Miséricorde!* bless me!

*Prenez garde, gare!* have a care!

*Paix, chut, st!* hist, hush!

*Silence!* silence!

## EXERCISE ON THE INTERJECTIONS.

Come, friends, let us rejoice! - - Good! here are  
*se réjouir, v.*

news for you, brother. - - Fy, fy! Robert, you do

not think of what you say. - - Oh! how lovely a  
*penser, v. à que*

virtue is modesty! Why do you not endeavour to  
*s'efforcer, v. de*

acquire it? - - Alas! who can express the torments

I suffer here? - - - Man without religion, never

having his heart or mind at peace, can, alas!  
*esprit, m. en, p.*

be but a very unfortunate creature. - - Wo to you!

usurers, misers, unjust possessors of (other people's)  
*usurier, m. avare, m. autrui, pro.*

goods, hearken to these words: The treasures  
*bien, m. écouter, v. parole, f.*

of iniquity (will be of no service) to you. - - O  
*ne servir de rien*

(lazy people), go to the ant, consider what she  
*paresseux, fourmi, f.*

does, and learn from her, wisdom and industry. - -

Bless me! I am undone! - - Hush there! silence!  
*perdu, p.p.*

- - Oh! the dismal effects which laziness pro-  
*funeste, adj.*

duces! - - How<sup>1</sup> tremendous<sup>2</sup> an<sup>3</sup> office<sup>3</sup> is<sup>7</sup> that  
*terrible, adj. le*

of<sup>4</sup> a<sup>5</sup> judge<sup>6</sup>! What wisdom, what integrity, what

knowledge, what sagacity of mind, what experience,  
*science, f.*

(are required!)

*ne faut-il pas avoir, v.*



## REMARKS AND EXERCISES ON THE WORDS *de, à, and pour.*

Having, in this manner, gone through the respective parts of speech, there will be no occasion for a syntax. It will, however, be necessary to give some rules for ascertaining the proper use of the particle *de* or *à*, and the preposition *pour*, before a verb in the infinitive mood, and then to point out, by way of exercise, some idiomatical expressions that most frequently occur in the French tongue\*.

When two verbs come together in a sentence, the latter, having no subject expressed nor understood, must be put in the infinitive mood, whether the English sign *to*, be prefixed or not.

In the following cases, the infinitive mood must never be preceded by a particle.

First, when the verb in the infinitive stands nominative to another verb : ex.

*Aimer est un verbe, To love is a verb.*

Secondly, after the following verbs, *aller, croire, devoir, faire, il faut, savoir, valoir mieux, venir, pouvoir, oser, vouloir, and penser*, when rendered by *to be like or near*.

### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

To know how to give seasonably is a talent every body has not. - - To be able to live with one's self, and to know how to live with others, are the two great sciences of life. - - I had rather . . . do it  
*aimer mieux, v.*

\* The great number of idiomatical expressions in the French language has long been considered as an almost insuperable difficulty in the way of its easy acquirement ; however, this difficulty is daily decreasing ; these peculiar expressions are now giving way to a regular construction, and are very little used by the best writers.

now than later. - - Why dare you not undertake it

I think you might succeed. - - He says he will lend  
*pouvoir, v. réussir, v.*

you his gun with all his heart, because you know  
*fusil, m.*

how to make use of it. - - Aristotle, though so  
*se servir, v.*

great a philosopher, was never able to penetrate the

cause of that prodigy. - - Tell him, that he may set

out when (he pleases). - - You never could  
*il lui plaira, v. pouvoir, v.*

come more seasonably. - - We are to go to Vauxhall

to-morrow. - - I am going to see your brother. - -

(Is it not better) to set out now, than wait  
*Valoir mieux, v. de attendre, v.*

any longer? - - If you think to oblige her,  
*plus croire, v.*

you mistake. - - We were to have had a ball yester-  
*se tromper, v.*

day, but my sister was not well. - - You did very

right, for you ought not to speak to him. - - I  
*bien, adv. car, c. devoir, v.*

had like to have fallen twenty times coming  
*penser, v.*

hither. - - To instruct, please, and move the passions,

are the three principal qualifications requisite in an  
*qualité,*

orator. - - If you would read this book, I could  
*vouloir, v. pouvoir, v.*

lend it to you for four or five days. - - He wishes to  
*vouloir,*

learn without taking pains.

*peine, sing.*

The particle *de* is put before a verb in the infinitive mood: First, when any of the following words, *of, from* or *with*, are used before the participle active of any verb. (See the *N. B.* upon the participle active, page 343.)

Secondly, after a noun substantive joined immediately to a verb, either without any article at all, or with the following articles, *le, la, or les*.

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *decent, glad, impossible, necessary, sorry, worthy, vexed*, and the like.

Fourthly, after the following verbs: *to advise, to apprehend, to bid, to cease, to command, to conjure, to counsel, to defend, to defer, to deserve, to desire, to endeavour, to entreat, to fear, to hasten, to long, to order, to permit, to persuade, to pray, to pretend, to promise, to propose, to refuse, to remember, to threaten, to tell, to warn, to undertake, &c.* and the greater part of the reflected verbs.

And lastly, after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative degree.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I have desired your brother, to lend me some  
*prier, v.*

money. - - My mother ordered me to tell you, to  
*ordonner, v.*

go and speak to her directly. - - Did you not permit

him to go out this morning? - - I am surprised to  
*sortir, v.*

find you so ill. - - I have not desired you to play. - - -

Bid your sister to send me my book. - - We  
*Dire, v. à*

were afraid of displeasing you. - - What do you

advise me to do in such a case? - - My sister  
*conseiller, v.*

and I intend to (call upon) you on Friday next.  
*passer, v. chez, v.*

I am very glad to hear <sup>you are better.</sup> *apprendre, v.*

She does not pretend to speak French as well as *se piquer, v.*

you. - - We are tired of repeating to you the same things so often. - - If you finish your exercise soon

you will have the pleasure of walking, while the others will have the trouble of working. - - It is neces-

sary to tell her not to go thither (any more); for, *plus, adv.*

she would be in danger of losing her life. - - Endeavour to please your masters by your application to

study. - - Do not you remember having said you

would carry me to the camp? - - Do not they *mener, v.*

deserve to be encouraged, who undertake to serve *mériter, v.*

the public? - - We are all glad to hear you have overcome your enemies; we should have been sorry

to have heard the contrary. - - What a fool you are to grieve *s'affliger, v.*

so, when you have so much reason to rejoice! - - Never expect to speak French well, un-

less you practice it (very much.) - - I shall never refuse *s'attendre,*

*beaucoup.* to do you a service, as long as it is in my power. *rendre, v.*

- - Have you a mind to do what you have promised me? - - I cannot give you the book you asked *envie, f.*

me for, my brother has not (thought fit) to send  
*juger à propos, v.*

it me back again. - - I desired you to bring your  
 sister with you; why did you not?\* - - I forbid

you to speak or write to him (any more). - - Would  
*défendre, v.*  
*davantage, adv.*

you not be very glad to read and speak Italian? - -

- - Condemn the opinion of no one hastily, but  
 endeavour to regulate your own by the line of  
*s'efforcer, v.*

truth. - - Who can hinder me from speaking or  
*vérité, f.* *empêcher, v.*

writing to her? - - (Give me leave) to tell you, that  
*Permettre, v.*

you do very wrong to disoblige your aunt. - - He  
*mal, adv.*

(was not contented) to demolish the temple and pull  
*se contenter, v.*

down the statues, but, &c. - - Is there any thing  
*battre, v.*

more glorious, than to change anger into friendship?

- - - (I long) to see your mother, and tell her all  
*Il me tarde, v.*

that I think (about it.)

*en, pro.*

The particle *à* is to be placed before a verb in the infinitive mood: First, after the auxiliary verb, *avoir*, to have, immediately followed by a substantive or an adverb, expressing a futurity in the action: ex.

*J'ai plusieurs lettres à écrire*, I have many letters to write.

Secondly, after nouns substantive joined to the verb *avoir*, or nouns adjective joined to the verb *être*, signifying to be *addicted, apt, bent, diligent, disposed*,

\* *Do it*, is understood, and must be expressed in French.

*dreadful, easy, fit, hard, inclined, quick, ready, subject, used, &c.*

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *admirable, good, dexterous, handsome, scarce, the last, the first, the second, &c.*

And, lastly, after the following verbs, *to amuse, to aspire or aim at, to begin, to condemn, to continue or go on, to compel or force, to design, or destine, to dispose, to employ or spend, to encourage, to engage, to excite, to exhort, to help, to induce, to invite, to learn, to please, to serve, to take a pleasure or delight in or to, to teach, to think, &c.*

#### EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING VERBS.

Come hither, Paul, I have something to communicate to you. - - We have much to fear in our present situation, and a great many hazards to run. - - I cannot go to the play to-night; for, I have five or six visits to pay. - - Is there any thing pleasanter  
*rendre, v.*

to behold than the flux and reflux of the sea? - - We  
*voir,*

ought to learn how to subdue our passions,  
*ou subjuguier, v.*

conquer our desires, and suffer patiently the most cruel misfortunes. - - She is always the first to  
*disgrâce, f.*

(find fault) with what I do. - - Do not gather  
*trouver à redire, à*

that apple, it is not yet good to eat. - - Mr. N. told me you had a country-house to let. - - Mr. F. is a  
*louer, v.*

very agreeable man, always ready to serve his friends, but he has the misfortune to be inclined to gaming.

- - - Your master does not love you, because you are not diligent in learning your lesson. - - - We had for a long time nothing to eat but the fruits which we had gathered. - - - The greatest part of men spend their time either in doing nothing, or doing what they ought not to do. - - What you say of her is very hard

*difficile*, adj.

to believe. - - Tell him, I have no complaint to make about his conduct. - - - Why do you oblige her

*de*

to ask my pardon, since she is not inclined to do it herself? - - - I believe she takes a delight in tormenting me. - - - Life is so short, that we should employ all our days in preparing ourselves for the other world. - -

There is no more danger to fear. - - - Use yourself,

*S'accoutumer*, v.

said a father to his son, to practice virtue: that alone will help you to bear

with patience all the vicis-

*supporter*, v.

situdes of fortune. - - - Never amuse yourself in reading bad books. - - - You can never spend your time

*passer*, v.

better than in reading and studying the history of your own country. - - - Learn to speak well; but, above all, to speak truth. - - That science, which teaches us to

*dire*, v.

see things as they are, is highly worthy of cultivation.

- - - An honest man always takes pleasure in obliging his friends. - - - Does your master teach you how to

translate English into French? - - - Do you begin to

translate French well? - - - Why did you not oblige

him to pay you what he owes you? - - - Why do you

not (get ready) to set out with us? - - - I love to  
*s'appréter, v.*  
discourse with polite and sensible people.  
*s'entretenir, v.* *sensé,*

N. B. For the sake of euphony, the following verbs, *to begin, to continue, to constrain, to engage, to exhort, to compel, or force, to endeavour, to oblige, may be succeeded by de, or à, as most convenient.*

The preposition *pour* is to be used before a verb in the infinitive mood, when it expresses the *cause*, the *design*, or the *end*, and then the English particle *to* may be expressed by *in order to, to the end, or for to*. This preposition is also used after the adverbs, *enough, on purpose, too, too much, or less*; and before an infinitive in the beginning of a period.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE RULES.

I will do every thing in my power to please him. - -  
Good rules are useless, if the attention, industry, and  
*assiduité, f.*  
patience of the scholar be not put into practice to learn  
them. - - Mrs. B. has too much pride to confess she  
(is in the wrong.) - - To understand geography well, we  
*avoir tort* *on*  
must, &c. - - I assure you that I came on purpose to  
see you, - - She will do all that is in her power to  
oblige you, and prove to you that she is truly your  
friend. - - The wicked live to die, but the righteous  
die to live. - - She has vanity enough to believe all  
you tell her. - - What makes the misfortunes of kings;  
is not to have friends bold enough to tell them the  
truth. - - I wrote to you some time ago, to let  
*faire, v.*  
you know, that your brothers were arrived. - - He



promised me, that he would do every thing to deserve the honour of your protection. - - I sent yesterday my servant to your aunt's to desire her to send me back again the book I lent her a month ago, but she was not at home. - - We did <sup>*faire, v.*</sup> all that we could to pass the river, but could not (<sup>*venir à*</sup> accomplish it). - - To convince you that I am ready to <sup>*bout de, v.*</sup> do you any service, (be so kind as) to command me. <sup>*avoir la bonté, v.*</sup>

- - Why did you not punish her for having done what you forbade her to do? - - A man should live <sup>*devoir,*</sup> a century at least to know the world, and many other <sup>*connoître,*</sup> centuries to (know how to) make a proper use of that <sup>*savoir,*</sup> knowledge.

---

## SECT. X.

### OF IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS.

#### ON THE VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE, &c.

<i>Avoir mal à la tête,</i>	{ to have the head-ache, or a pain in the head.
<i>Avoir mal aux oreilles,</i>	{ to have sore ears, or a pain in the ears.
<i>Avoir mal aux yeux,</i>	{ to have sore eyes, or a pain in the eyes.
<i>Avoir mal au nez,</i>	{ to have a sore nose, or a pain in the nose.
<i>Avoir mal à la bouche,</i>	{ to have a sore mouth, or a pain in the mouth.
<i>Avoir mal aux dents, &amp;c.</i>	{ to have the tooth-ache.

We say, after the same manner,

*Avoir froid aux mains, aux pieds, &c.* ex.

*J'ai froid à la tête, aux mains, et aux pieds,* My head, my hands, and my feet, are cold.

*Avoir beau, to be in vain :* ex.

*Vous avez beau parler,* It is in vain for you to talk.

*Avoir beaucoup de peine,* to have much ado.

*Avoir de la peine à :* ex.

*J'ai de la peine à vous croire,* I can hardly believe you.

*Avoir besoin de,* to want, to have occasion for.

*Avoir la bonté de, (daigner),* to be so kind as.

*Avoir connoissance, avis de,* to have notice of.

*Avoir cours,* to take, to be in vogue.

*Avoir honte,* to be ashamed.

*Avoir la mine de,* to be like, to look like : ex.

*Vous avez la mine d'être intelligent,* You look like a man of understanding.

*Avoir pitié de,* to pity.

*Avoir part au gâteau,* to share in the booty.

*Avoir bonne mine :* ex.

*Vous avez très-bonne mine aujourd'hui,* } You look very well to-day.

*Avoir plus de peur que de mal,* to be more afraid than hurt.

*Avoir raison,* to be in the right.

*Avoir soin,* to take care.

*Avoir tort,* to be in the wrong.

*N'avoir que faire de,* { to have no occasion or business of or for.

*N'avoir garde de, or* } are ex- { to be sure not, or  
*Se garder bien de,* } pressed by { by no means.

*Aller son train,* to go our own way.

*Aller trouver quelqu'un,* to go to somebody.

*Venir trouver,* to come to.

#### EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I could not call upon him this morning, because I had a pain in my head. . . . My brother would have come with me, but he has a sore leg, and is obliged to

keep his bed. - - - I heard your mother had the tooth-ache : Is it true ? No, madam, but she has a pain in her side which prevents her from going out. - - - I have not yet finished my exercise ; for my hands were so cold, that I could not write another word ; besides, I had much ado to find my books, I did not know where to look for them. - - - *It will be in vain for you to write to me, I never will answer you. - - - I can hardly believe what you tell me. - - - It is in vain for me to speak to her, she still goes her own way.* - - - Miss N. cried very much yesterday, but I think she was more afraid than hurt. - - - *It has been in vain for him to torment your sister, she never would tell him what happened to her when she was at Mr. P's.* - - - Go to him, and tell him that, unless he returns me my books in a very short time, I will desire his father to send them to me : when you have told him that, do not wait for his answer ; come to me immediately, I shall be at your mother's, where I am to dine, and thence go to the play with the whole family. - - - *In vain I give myself trouble, I am not the richer for it. - - - Your sister does not look so well to-day as she did yesterday. - - - Am I not in the right to go there no more ? - - - I will take care to prevent them from coming hither. - - - Believe me, I have long suspected them, and now I am very certain that both your cousins and they have had a share in the booty. - - - We should often be ashamed of our finest actions, if the*

world knew all the motives which produce them. - - -  
*You are in the wrong* not to ask for his horse, he would  
 lend it to you. - - - Why should I borrow his horse,  
 when I have one (of my own ?) - - I have no occasion for  
 his. - - - *Be so kind as* to carry that letter to Mr. H's.  
 but *be sure not* to tell him who sent you. - - - I hope  
 you will *by no means* go there again, after what has hap-  
 pened to you. - - - He was so altered, that she *had*  
*much ado* to recollect him, but he now begins *to look*  
*very well*. - - - Somebody having advised Philip, Alex-  
 ander's father, to banish from his states a man who had  
 spoken ill of him, I *shall by no means do it*, answered  
 he, he would go every where and speak ill of me.

---

ON *ETRE*, TO BE.

<i>Etre</i> {	<i>à son aise,</i> <i>en bonne passe,</i> <i>bien dans ses affaires,</i>	{	to be in good circum- stances.
<i>Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un,</i>		{	to be in great favour with some one.
<i>Etre mal avec quelqu'un,</i>		{	to be out of favour with some one.
<i>Etre à charge à quelqu'un,</i>		{	to be chargeable, trou- blesome, or a burden to some one.
<i>Etre but à but,</i>	to be equal.		
<i>Etre de moitié,</i>	to go halves.		
<i>Etre à la portée du fusil, du canon,</i>		{	to be within mus- ket-shot, gun-shot.
<i>Etre à la portée de la voix,</i>	to be within call.		
<i>Etre</i> {	<i>à la veille de,</i> <i>sur le point de,</i>	{	to be upon the brink, or very near to.
<i>Etre en état de,</i> <i>voir le moyen de,</i>		{	to afford.



*Faire de son mieux*, to do our best.

*Faire semblant*, to pretend.

*Faire de son pis*, to do our worst.

*Ne faire que de*, to be just, or

*Venir de*, to have but just: ex.

*Il ne fait que d'arriver*, He is but just arrived.

*Ne faire que*, to do nothing but.

*Se faire des amis, des ennemis*, to get friends, enemies.

*Se faire des affaires*, to bring one's self into trouble.

*S'en faire accroire*, { to be conceited, to have a good  
opinion of one's self.

*C'en est fait de moi*, I am undone, it is over with me.

*C'en étoit fait de lui*, he was undone, it was over with him.

*C'en sera fait d'elle*, { she will be undone, it will be over  
with her.

*C'en seroit fait de nous*, { we should be undone, it would  
be over with us.

The English verb, *to cause*, preceding the verb *to be*, immediately followed by a participle passive, is rendered in French, by the verb *faire*, and then the verb *to be* is not expressed, but the participle passive is turned into the infinitive mood: ex.

*Il lui fit couper la tête*, He caused his head to be cut off.

#### EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Do not lose that ring, for I value it much; it is a particular friend of yours who gave it me. - - I would go and take a walk, if I were well. - - - Do you not sham sickness now and then? - - - Did not your brother play truant last week? - - - That man goes a great way for a trifle. - - Mr. P. sets up for a wit, wherever he goes. - - You may rely upon what I tell you. - - He succeeds better in being conceited, than in giving others a good opinion of himself. - - - I begin to be very much

satisfied with his brother, who now *does his best*, and will soon be able to write a French letter to his father.

- - - *Let me know whether he will pay you or not.* - -

*We shall set sail about the fifteenth of the next month.*

- - - Why did not you *bespeak* three or four pair of shoes

more? - - - Send word to your brother, or let him know, that there is a letter for him here. - - I will give

him an exercise, and *oblige him to do it* in my presence. - - - She told me if she *were obliged to do it*,

she would do her worst. - - - She pretends not to

listen, but I assure you she does not lose a word of what

you say. - - - We were *but just* come in when it began

to rain. - - - It *would have been over with us*, could the

enemy have known what passed in our camp. - - You

*do nothing but play from morning till night. - - -*

**That young lady will get friends every where. - - -**

**If you do not take care, you *will* bring yourself**

into trouble. - - - Permit me to tell you, that they

are too much conceited. - - - Your brother is un-

*done, if his master come to know of it. - - - In 1606;*

**King James caused the oath of allegiance to be drawn**

up ; and, in 1621, summoned a parliament, in which

were formed the two parties, called Whigs and Tories.

### ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

***Aimer mieux*, to have rather, to choose rather.**

*Se donner bien des airs,* { to take a great deal upon  
one's self.

*Il ne faut pas s'étonner, it is no wonder.*

*Il me tarde de, I long to.*

*Penser*, to be like. (Followed by a verb in the infinitive mood.)

*S'en prendre à*, { to lay the fault or blame upon one,  
to look to one for.

*S'y bien prendre*, or { to go the right way to  
*S'y prendre de la bonne façon*, { work.

*S'y prendre mal*, to go the wrong way to work.

*S'y prendre tout autrement*, { to go quite a different, or  
another, way to work.

*Prendre en mauvaise part*, to take amiss.

*Venir à bout de*, to bring about, to accomplish.

#### EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

I choose rather to set out now than later. - - - She told me she *had rather* do any thing than speak to Mr. L. - - - They *had rather* have had you stay in Italy two or three years longer. - - - Do not you think Mrs. H. *takes a great deal upon herself*? - - - It is no wonder that I do not speak French so well as you; you have been several years in France, and I never was there. - - - I hope your brother will succeed in his undertaking; for, he *goes the right way to work*, and I am certain that he *will bring it about*. - - - Your cousin, on the contrary, will always be poor; for, he *goes the wrong way to work* in every thing he undertakes. - - - She *longs to see* your father, and tell him how well you have behaved all the time of his absence. - - - I *had like* to have been killed in coming here. - - - If he lose, he *will lay the blame upon you*. - - - Why do you *lay the blame upon* her? she was not even in the room when that happened. - - - Should not your sister succeed, whom *would she lay the fault upon*? - - - You



say you *long* to speak French ; and I too, I assure you.  
 - - - I *long* to tell you something, nevertheless I do  
 not know how to communicate it to you for fear of  
 disobligng you. - - When you have a mind to tell me  
 something disagreeable, you should *go quite a different*  
*way to work.* - - - I beg of you *not to take amiss* what I  
 tell you. - - Do not begin a thing, unless you are sure  
 to bring it about.

## ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

*Se passer de*, to do without, or to be easy without.

*Savoir bon gré*, to take kindly of.

*Trouver mauvais que*, to take ill if.\*

*Trouver à redire à*, to find fault with.

*Tenir maison*, to be a house-keeper.

*Tenir boutique*, to be a shop-keeper.

*Tenir parole*, to keep our word.

*Ne tenir qu'à*, { to be in a person's power.  
 { to lie in a person's power: ex.

*Il ne tient qu'à moi, à vous, à lui, à elle, &c.* It is in my, your, his, her,  
 power, &c.

*Il ne tient pas à moi, à vous, &c. que,* It is not my, your, fault,  
 &c. if.†

*S'en tenir à*, to stand to.

*Vouloir du bien à*, to wish one well.

*En vouloir à*, to have a spite against.

*Je souhaiterois pouvoir*, I wish I could.

*Il y va, il y alloit, de votre vie*, your life is, was, at stake.

*Il y va, il y alloit, de mon honneur*, { my honour is, was,  
 { concerned in it.

*Je ne laisse pas de*, I nevertheless, or for all that.

\* With the following verb in the subjunctive.

† With the following verb in the subjunctive, and *ne* before it.

## EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

When I have wine, I drink some ; but when I have none, I am easy without it. - - If you will be so kind as to write to my father, to let him know my situation, I shall take it kindly of you, and promise you never to find fault with what you may recommend to me. - - I wish I could do you that service, I would do it with all my heart. - - I hope you will not take it ill, if I write to your uncle at the same time. - - I shall stand to what you say. - - He has been a house-keeper these five and twenty years. - - He might have succeeded much better than he has done, had he followed his uncle's advice and mine ; but he never was satisfied, and was continually finding fault with what we were telling him. - - However little you send him at present, he will take it kindly of you. - - It is in her power to live in the country, and be very happy there. - - It will soon lie in your power to make us happy. - - I assure you it shall not be my fault, if you do not succeed ; for I wish you well. - - Since it lies in your power to recommend Mr. P. to your friend, why do you not do it ? - - When you see him, you may assure him, that, since it is in my power to do it, I will not forget him. - - You have a spite against my brother ; because it was in his power two or three times to oblige you, and he never would. - - I wish I could persuade you how sorry he was for it ; but his honour was concerned in not doing it : and, though you be very angry with him, he would, nevertheless, (or, for all that,) do you service if it were in his power. - - Had I

thought he would have refused me that favour, I never would have asked it of him; I might very well *have done without it*. - - You ought to have thanked him for that attention, instead of being angry with him; but when your sisters heard that you could not obtain his leave, *they took it amiss*, and have ever since *had a spite against him*. - - When they told me of it, I would most willingly have represented to them how much they *were in the wrong*: but I would *by no means* do it; for I know *it is in their power* to do me a great deal of harm, and I do not wish to *get enemies*. - - Every body admires her humanity; for, though he has behaved in so ungrateful a manner towards her, she would, *nevertheless*, have done him service, if he had lived.



## GENERAL AND PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

### OF THE UNDERSTANDING OF LANGUAGES.

The understanding of languages serves (for an) in-  
*intelligence, f.* *de*  
 troduction to all the sciences. By it we come  
*parvenir, v.*  
 with very little trouble at the knowledge of a great  
 many fine things, which have cost those who in-  
 vented them a great deal of pains. By it all  
 times and countries lie open to us. By it  
*siècle, m.* *être, v.*  
 we become, in some measure, contemporary to all

ages, and inhabitants of all kingdoms. It (enables)  
*mettre en état,*  
 us to converse with the most learned men of all  
 antiquity, who seem to have lived and laboured for  
 us. We find in them many masters, whom (we are  
*il nous*  
 allowed) to consult at leisure; many friends who  
*est permis*  
 are always at hand, and whose useful and agreeable  
 conversation improves the mind. It informs us of  
*enrichir, v.*  
 a thousand curious subjects, and teaches us equally  
 (how to make an advantage) of the virtues and vices  
*à profiter, v.*  
 of mankind. Without the assistance of languages,  
 all these oracles are dumb to us, and all these  
*pour, p.*  
 treasures (locked up;) and, for want of having the  
*fermer, v.*  
 key, which alone can open us the door (to them,) we  
*en, v.*  
 remain poor in the midst of so many riches, and  
 ignorant in the midst of all the sciences.

### OF STUDY.

We (come into the world) surrounded with a cloud  
*naître, v.* \*  
 of ignorance, which is increased by the false pre-  
 judices of a bad education. By study, the former  
 is dispersed, and the latter corrected. It gives

\* See the observation on the preposition *with*, page 405.

proportion and exactness to our thoughts and reasonings; instructs how to range in due order whatever we have to speak or write; and presents us with

*dire, v.*

the brightest sages of antiquity as patterns for our conduct, whom, in this sense, we may call, with

*modèle, m.*

Seneca, the masters, and teachers of mankind. But *Sénèque, précepteur, m.*

the usefulness of study is not confined to what we call science; it renders us also more fit for business and employment; besides,

*de plus, adv. quand, c.*

were of no other use but (the acquiring) a habit of

labour, (the softening) the pains of it, (the pro-

curing a steadiness of mind and (conquering)

our aversion to application or a sedentary life, or

whatever else seems (to lay a restraint upon) us, it

*assujettir, v.*

would still be of very great advantage. In reality,

it draws us off from idleness, play, and debauchery.

*retirer, v.*

It usefully fills up the vacant hours of the day, and ren-

ders very agreeable that leisure, which, without the

assistance of literature, is a kind of death, and, in a

manner, the grave of a man while he is alive. It ena-

† These participles active are to be rendered in French by the infinitive.

bles us to pass a right judgment upon other men's labours, to enter into society with men of understanding, to keep the best company, (to have a share in) *fréquenter*, v. *prendre part à* the discourses of the most learned, to furnish out matter for conversation, without which we must be silent, to *quoi*, render it more agreeable and more useful, by intermixing facts with reflections, and setting the one by the *relever*, v. other.

## SECT. XI.

### SCHEME FOR PARSING A SENTENCE.

As it is very essential to the thorough learning of a language, not to mistake one part of speech for another, we finish this grammar by giving a classical and methodical scheme for parsing a sentence. The examples, with very little change, may suit any language.

**Article. Questions :** Is it definite, partitive or indefinite? What gender? What number?

**Examples.** *Le pouvoir du roi*, the power of the king; *la liberté des hommes*, the liberty of men; *J'ai du pain, de la viande, des pommes*; I have bread, meat, apples; *La sœur de Pierre*, Peter's sister.

**Application.** *Le*, definite art. m.—*du*, contraction of *de le*, genitive defi. art. m.—*La* definite art. f.—*des*, contraction of *de les*, genitive defi. art. both genders, pl.—*du*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. m.—*de la*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. f.—*des*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. both genders, pl.—*de* indefinite art. both genders and numbers, *geni.* and *abl.*

**Substantive. Questions :** What gender? What number? If the noun is singular, name its plural; if plural, name its singular.

**Examples.** *Le pouvoir du roi ; la liberté des hommes ; le prix des denrées*, the price of provisions.

**Application.** *Pouvoir*, substantive, m. *pouvoirs* for its pl.—*Liberté*, subst. f. *libertés*, for its pl.—*Prix*, subst. m. *prix* for its pl.—*Denrées*, subst. f. pl. *denrée* for its singular.

**Adjective.** **Questions :** What gender ? What number ? What does it agree with in the sentence ? If it be masculine, name its fem. If it be feminine, name its masc.

**Examples.** *Un beau chapeau*, a fine hat ; *ces femmes sont jolies*, those ladies are pretty ; *cette fille est orgueilleuse*, that girl is proud.

**Application.** *Beau*, noun adj. m. agrees with *chapeau* ; it has *belle* for its feminine.—*Jolies*, noun adj. f. pl. agrees with *femmes* ; it has *joli* for its masculine.—*Orgueilleuse*, noun adj. f. agrees with *fille* ; it has *orgueilleux* for its masculine.

**Pronoun.** **Questions :** Is it personal, conjunctive, possessive, relative, demonstrative, interrogative or indefinite ? What gender ? What number ? With what does it agree in the sentence ?

**Examples.** *Elle a mon livre*, she has my book. *Cette plume ne vaut rien*, this pen is good for nothing. *L'homme qui vous parloit*, the man who was speaking to you. *Il y a plusieurs années*, some years ago. *Quel homme ?* What man ?

**Application.** *Elle*, pronoun pers. f. agrees with *a*. *Mon*, pronoun poss. m. agrees with *livre*. *Cette*, pronoun demonstr. f. agrees with *plume*. *Qui*, pronoun rel. both genders and numbers, agrees with *homme*. *Plusieurs*, pronoun indef. pl. both genders, agrees with *années*. *Quel ?* pron. int. m. agrees with *homme*.

**Verb.** **Questions :** Name its infinitive—its person—its number—its tense—its mode.

**Examples.** *Pendant qu'ils étoient ensemble*, j'entendis sonner midi ; while they were together, I heard twelve o'clock strike. *Quoiqu'il paroisse heureux*, n'enviez pas son sort ; though he may appear happy, do not envy his situation.

**Application.** *Etoient*, from *être* ; 3d pers. pl. imperf. tense, indic. mood. *Entendis*, from *entendre* ; 1st pers. sing. preterite, indicative mood. *Paroisse*, from *paraître*, 3d pers. sing. pres. tense, subjunc. mood. *Enviez*, from *envier* ; 2d pers. pl. imperat. mood.

**Preposition.** What does it govern in the sentence ?

**Examples.** *Avant* midi ; *sans* argent ; *before* noon ; *without* money.

**Application.** *Avant*, a preposition, governs *midi*. *Sans*, a preposition, governs *argent*.

**Conjunction.** What mood does it require ? Name the verb it acts upon in the sentence.

**Examples.** *Lorsque* le roi entra, *when* the king came in. *Quoique* vous soyez riche, *though* you be rich. *Je lis pour* m'amuser, *I read to amuse* myself.

**Application.** *Lorsque*, a conjunction, requires the indic. Here it governs *entra*. *Quoique*, a conjunction, requires the subjunc. Here it governs *soyez*. *Pour*, a conjunction, requires the infinitive. Here it governs *amuser*.

**Adverbs and interjections.** Only name them.

**Examples.** *Ah !* mon ami, agissez *prudemment* ; *ah*, my friend, act *prudently*.

**Application.** *Ah* is an interjection—*Prudemment* is an adverb.



# A B R É G É

## DE LA VERSIFICATION FRANCOISE.

LES vers, à ne les considérer que sous le rapport de leur mécanisme, sont des paroles arrangées selon certaines règles fixes et déterminées.

Ces règles regardent sur-tout le nombre des syllabes, la césure, la rime, les mots que le vers exclut, les licences qu'il permet, et enfin les différentes manières dont il doit être arrangé dans chaque sorte de Poème.

### *Des différentes espèces de Vers françois.*

On compte ordinairement cinq sortes de vers françois. C'est par le nombre des syllabes qu'on les distingue.

#### 1°. Ceux de douze syllabes, comme :

Dans le ré-duit ob-scur d'u-ne al-co-ve en-fon-cée  
S'é-lè-ve un lit de plu-me à grands frais a-mas-sée :  
Qua-tre ri-deaux pom-peux, par un dou-ble con-tour,  
En dé-fen-dent l'en-trée à la clar-té du jour.

Ces vers s'appellent *alexandrins, héroïques* ou *grands vers*.

#### 2°. Ceux de dix syllabes, comme :

Du peu qu'il a le sage est sa-tis-fait.

#### 3°. Ceux de huit syllabes, comme :

L'hi-po-cri-te en frau-des fer-ti-le,  
Dès l'en-fan-ce est pé-tri de fard ;  
Il sait co-lo-rer a-vec art  
Le fiel que sa bou-che dis-tille.

#### 4°. Ceux de sept syllabes, comme :

Grand Dieu ! vo-tre main ré-clame  
Les dons que j'en ai re-çus.  
El-le vient cou-per la trame  
Des jours qu'el-le m'a tis-aus.  
Mon der-nièr so-leil se lève,  
Et vo-tre souf-fle m'en-lève  
De la ter-re des vi-vans ;  
Com-me la feuil-le sé-chée  
Qui, de sa ti-ge ar-ra-chée,  
De-vient le jou-et des vents.

#### 5°. Ceux de six syllabes, comme :

A soi-même o-di-eux  
Le sot de tout s'ir-ri-te :  
En tous lieux il s'é-vite,  
Et se trouve en tous lieux.

Les vers qui ont moins de six syllabes ne sont guère d'usage que pour la poésie lyrique, et quelques petites pièces badines.

#### DE LA CÉSURE.

La Césure est un repos qui coupe le vers en deux parties ou hémistiches.

Ce repos doit être à la sixième syllabe dans les grands vers, et à la quatrième dans ceux de dix syllabes. L'esprit et l'usage de la césure sont très bien exprimés dans ces vers de Boileau.

Que toujours en vos vers, - le sens coupant les mots,  
Suspende l'hémistiche, - en marque le repos.

Sur les ailes du temps - la tristesse s'envole.

Que le mensonge - un instant vous outrage,  
Tout est en feu - soudain pour l'appuyer ;  
La vérité - perce enfin le nuage,  
Tout est de glace - à vous justifier.

Il n'y a que les vers de douze et de dix syllabes qui aient une césure.

Pour que la césure soit bonne, il faut que le sens autorise le repos ; ainsi dans les vers suivans, la césure est défectueuse.

N'oublions pas les grands - bienfaits de la patrie.

Faites voir un regret - sincère de vos fautes.

Mon père, quoiqu'il eût - la tête des meilleures,

Ne m'a jamais rien fait - apprendre que mes heures.

La césure ne vaut rien dans ces exemples, parce que le sens exige que le mot où est la césure, et celui qui le suit, soient prononcés tout de suite et sans pause.

Mais la césure est bonne dans les vers suivans :

Ses chanoines vermeils - et brillans de santé

S'engraissoient d'une longue - et sainte oisiveté.

Ici la césure est bonne, parce qu'on peut faire une petite pause après un substantif suivi de plusieurs adjectifs, ou entre plusieurs adjectifs qui suivent ou qui précèdent un substantif.

**I. REMARQUE.** Le dernier mot du premier hémistiche, peut se terminer par l'e muet, pourvu que le mot suivant commence par une voyelle.

Ami lui dit le chantre encor pâle d'horreur,

N'insulte pas de grâce à ma juste terreur.

Il trépigne de joie, il pleure de tendresse.

**II. REM.** Les pronoms *cela, celui, celui-là, etc.* et de *qui*, mis pour *dont*, peuvent aussi terminer le premier hémistiché, ou recevoir la césure ; on souffre cette négligence, mais il faut se la permettre rarement ; elle donne toujours aux vers un air prosaïque.

Il n'est fort entre ceux que tu prends par centaines,  
Qui ne puisse arrêter un rimeur six semaines :  
Bénissons Dieu de qui la puissance est sans bornes.

Les vers de dix et de douze syllabes sont, comme tous les autres, assujétis aux règles dont il nous reste à parler.

#### DE LA RIME.

La Rime est la convenance de deux sons qui terminent deux vers. Quelquefois on exige aussi qu'il y ait convenance d'orthographe, que deux sons semblables soient représentés par les mêmes lettres.

Où me cacher ? fuyons dans la nuit infernale.  
Mais que dis-je ? mon père y tient l'urne fatale.  
Le sort, dit-on, l'a mise en ses sévères mains.  
Minos juge aux enfers tous les pâles humains.

On distingue deux sortes de rimes, la féminine et la masculine. La première est celle des vers qui se terminent par un *e* muet, soit seul, soit suivi d'une *s* ou d'*nt*.

Travaillez à loisir, quelque ordre qui vous presse,  
Et ne vous piquez point d'une folle vitesse.  
Il veut les rappeler, et sa voix les effraie ;  
Ils courent ; tout son corps n'est bientôt qu'une plaie.  
Dans quels ravissements, à votre sort liée,  
Du reste des mortels je vivrais oubliée.  
Un jeune homme, toujours bouillant dans ses caprices,  
Est prêt à recevoir l'impression des vices.  
C'est peu qu'en un ouvrage où les fautes fourmillent,  
Des traits d'esprit semés de temps en temps pétillent.

Ces vers féminins ont une syllabe de plus que les masculins : mais comme l'*e* muet sonne faiblement dans la syllabe qui termine le vers, cette syllabe est comptée pour rien.

La rime masculine est celle qui finit par une autre lettre que l'*e* muet, ou seul, ou suivi d'une *s*, ou enfin d'*nt*.

Chaque vertu devient une divinité ;  
Minerve est la prudence, et Vénus la beauté.  
Le travail est souvent le père du plaisir ;  
Je plains l'homme accablé du poids de son loisir.

**REMARQUE.** La syllabe *oient* ou *aient*, qui se trouve dans les imparfaits et les conditionnels des verbes, forme

une rime masculine, parce que cette syllabe a le son de l'e ouvert. Ainsi les vers suivans sont masculins.

Aux accords d'Amphion les pierres se mouvoient,  
Et sur les murs Thébains en ordre s'élevoient.

#### RIMES RICHES ET SUFFISANTES.

Les rimes masculines et féminines se divisent en riches et en suffisantes.

I. La rime riche est formée de deux sons parfaitement semblables, et souvent représentés par les mêmes lettres.

Indomptable Taureau, Dragon impétueux,  
Sa croupe se recourbe en replis tortueux.  
De rage et de douleur le monstre bondissant  
Vient aux pieds des chevaux tomber en mugissant.  
Au moment que je parle, ah, mortelle pensée !  
Ils bravent la fureur d'une amante insensée.

II. La rime suffisante est celle qui n'a pas une convenance aussi exacte de sons et d'orthographe.

Hélas ! Dieux tout-puissans, que nos pleurs vous apaisent.  
Que ces vains ornemens, que ces voiles me pèsent !  
Quelle importune main, en formant tous ces nœuds,  
A pris soin sur mon front d'assembler mes cheveux ?

III. Dans la rime masculine, on n'a guère égard en général, qu'au dernier son des mots : ainsi *maison* rime avec *poison* ; *piété* avec *pureté* ; *procès* avec *succès*.

IV. Mais dans la rime féminine, on fait une attention particulière au son de l'avant dernière syllabe, parce que celui de la dernière n'est ni assez plein, ni assez marqué, pour produire une conformité de son sensible et agréable à l'oreille. Ainsi *mère* et *mâre*, *audace* et *justice*, *estime* et *diadème* ne rimeroient pas ensemble, quoique ces mots se terminent par la même syllabe *re*, *ce*, *me*.

Mais *visible* et *sensible*, *monde* et *profonde*, *justice* et *précipice*, *usage* et *partage*, peuvent rimer ensemble, parce que ces mots ont une convenance de sons dans les avant-dernières syllabes.

V. Comme la convenance de sons est essentielle à la rime, on ne sauroit bien faire rimer les syllabes brèves avec les longues, les *l* mouillées avec les *l* non mouillées, etc. comme *maître* et *mètre* ; *joûte* et *route* ; *jeune* (qui n'est pas vieux) et *jeûne* (abstinence) ; la *fillette* et la *file* ; *péril* et *puéril*, etc. Ainsi J. B. Rousseau

a manqué à son exactitude ordinaire, quand il disoit à son ami ;

Et sur ce bord émaillé  
Où Neuilli borde la Seine,  
Reviens au vin d'Auvillè  
Mêler les eaux d'Hypocrène.

VI. L'*e* fermé, l'*i* et l'*u*, soit seule, soit suivis des consonnes *l, s, t* ou *z*, ne forment pas de bonnes rimes, si dans les deux syllabes rimantes ils ne sont précédés de la même consonne. Ainsi *bonté* et *donné*, *vertus* et *reçus*, *amis* et *avis*, *cultivez* et *portez*, ne rimeroient pas bien.

Choisissez des amis de qui la piété  
Vous soit un sûr garant de leur fidélité.  
Ami droit et sincère on doit à ses amis  
Garder fidèlement ce qu'on leur a promis.

VII. L'observation précédente a lieu pour l'*a* dans les verbes : il *donna* et il *aima*, il *porta* et il *réva*, il *immola* et il *saura*, ne rimeroient pas ensemble. Et en général elle est d'usage pour tous les sons communs à un grand nombre de mots. Ainsi les sons *ant* ou *ent*, *eu* et *on* ne riment bien qu'autant qu'ils sont précédés des mêmes lettres, comme *puissant*, *chassant* ; *agrément*, *régiment* ; *passion*, *mission* ; *ambitieux*, *religieux* ; *vieux*, *mieux*.

Mais les mots suivans ne rimeroient pas bien ensemble : *puissant*, *chancelant* ; *raison*, *passion* ; *heureux*, *religieux*, etc.

VIII. Quand la rime est formée par des sons pleins, comme *ar*, *as*, *at*, *or*, *os*, *ot*, *er*, *ès*, *et*, *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *ou* ; par *an*, *am*, *en*, *em*, *ion*, *oin* ; en un mot par des voyelles précédées d'une ou de plusieurs consonnes, alors on n'exige pas que la lettre qui précède soit la même dans les mots qu'on veut faire rimer. Par exemple, *embarras* et *combats*, *gros* et *sols*, *progrès* et *sucès*, *mer* et *enfer*, *ouvert* et *souffert*, *soupir* et *désir*, *espoir* et *devoir*, *jamais* et *parfaits*, *pain* et *main*, *nuit* et *conduit*, *témoins* et *besoins*, *soutiens* et *conviens*, et autres semblables peuvent rimer ensemble.

IX. Un mot en *e*, *x*, ou *z*, ne peut rimer qu'avec un mot terminé par l'une de ces trois consonnes. Ainsi *admirable* et *tables*, *risible* et *plausibles*, *le secours* et *le jour*, *la vanité* et *vous méritez*, *la foi* et *les lois*, *le courroux* et *le genou*, etc. ne rimeront pas bien ensemble.

Mais lois et Rois, courroux et tous, célestes et tu détestes, vanités et vous méditez, clefs et vous raclez, le discours et le cours, formeront de bonnes rimes.

X. Dans les verbes *ois* et *oil*, ayant le son de l'e ouvert, ne riment guère qu'avec un autre verbe. Quoique j'aimois et jamais, donnois et harnois, plaçoit et lacet, manquoit et banquet, je déplaçois et les succès, se terminent par le même son, l'usage ordinaire est de ne les pas faire rimer ensemble.

XI. Les terminaisons *ent*, *oient* ou *aient*, ne doivent rimer qu'avec des verbes qui aient les mêmes terminaisons : ils *privent*, ils *écrivent* ; ils *lurent*, ils *burent* ; qu'ils *surfassent*, qu'ils *effacent* ; etc. mais ils *méprisent* ne rimeront pas bien avec *entreprise* ; la *surface* avec *ils surpassent*.

XII. La convenance des sons et d'orthographe ne peut autoriser la rime du mot avec lui-même, d'un simple avec son composé, ni même de deux mots dérivés de la même racine, quand ils se ressemblent trop pour la signification. Ainsi la rime est défectueuse dans ces vers :

Je connois trop les Grands, dans le malheur amis,  
Ingrats dans la fortune, et bientôt ennemis.

Elle est tout-à-fait vicieuse dans ceux-ci :

Les chefs et les soldats ne se connoissent plus ;  
L'un ne peut commander, l'autre n'obéit plus.

XIII. Mais deux mots entièrement semblables par le son et l'orthographe riment bien ensemble, lorsqu'ils ont des significations différentes. Les dérivés sont dans le même cas, s'ils n'ont plus un rapport sensible pour le sens.

Prends-moi le bon parti, laisse-là tous les livres :  
Cent francs au denier cinq, combien font-ils ? vingt livres.  
Nobles, souvenez-vous qu'une naissance illustre  
Des sentimens du cœur reçoit son plus beau lustre.  
Dieu punit les forfaits que les rois ont commis,  
Ceux qu'ils n'ont point vengés, et ceux qu'ils ont permis.

XIV. Les deux hémistiches d'un vers ne doivent pas rimer ensemble, ni même avoir une convenance de sons, comme :

Il ne tiendra qu'à toi de partir avec moi.  
Aux Saumaises future préparer des tortures.

**XV.** Le dernier hémistiche d'un vers ne doit pas non plus rimer avec le premier du vers précédent ou du vers suivant.

Il faut, pour les avoir, employer tous vos *soins* ;  
Ils sent à moi, du *moins* tout autant qu'à mon frère.  
Un fiacre, me couvrant d'un déluge de boue  
Contre le mur *voisin* m'écrase de sa roue ;  
Et, voulant me sauver, des porteurs *inhumains*  
De leur maudit bâton me donnent dans les reins.

**XVI.** Il faut encore éviter la rime dans les premiers hémistiches de deux vers qui se suivent.

Sinon demain *matin*, si vous le trouvez bon,  
Je mettrai de *ma main* le feu dans la maison.

Quelquefois cependant la rime des premiers hémistiches n'a rien de choquant ; c'est lorsqu'elle se fait par la répétition d'une pensée, d'une expression qu'on reproduit à dessein, pour fixer davantage l'attention du lecteur ; comme :

Qui cherche *vraiment Dieu*, dans lui seul se repose ;  
Et qui craint *vraiment Dieu*, ne craint rien autre chose.

*Des termes que le vers exclut.*

I. Les bons Poètes rejettent avec soin tous les termes durs, ou difficiles à prononcer, ou bas et prosaïques. Rarement ils se servent des conjonctions que les orateurs emploient souvent pour lier et arrondir leurs périodes ; telles que *c'est pourquoi, parce que, pourvu que, puisque, de manière, de façon que, de sorte que ou en sorte que, outre, d'ailleurs, en effet*, etc.

Il est un heureux choix de mots harmonieux ;  
Fuyez des mauvais sons le concours odieux.  
Le vers le mieux rempli, la plus noble pensée,  
Ne peut plaire à l'esprit, quand l'oreille est blessée.

II. Un mot terminé par une autre voyelle que l'e muet, ne peut être suivi d'un mot qui commence aussi par une voyelle ou une h muette : ce seroit un *hiatus*.

Gardez qu'une voyelle à courir trop hâtée,  
Ne soit d'une voyelle en son chemin heurtée.

Ainsi les phrases suivantes ne formeroient pas de vers :

Que l'aimable vertu a peu d'adorateurs !  
Évitez le souci, et fuyez la colère.

III. Comme la conjonction *et* a toujours le son de l'*e* fermé, elle ne sauroit non plus dans le vers être suivie d'une voyelle. On ne pourroit pas dire en vers :

Qui sert et aime Dieu, possède toutes choses.

**Mais on dira bien :**

Qui connoit et sert Dieu, possède toutes choses,

IV. Les voyelles nasales qui, dans la prononciation, ne doivent pas être liées avec le mot suivant, ne peuvent avec grâce être suivies d'un mot qui commence par une voyelle. Ainsi la rencontre des voyelles nasales et des voyelles simples est désagréable dans ce vers :

Un grand *nom* est un poids difficile à porter.

Ah ! j'attendrai long-temps, la nuit est *loin* encore.

Cependant cette rencontre peut se souffrir, quand la prononciation permet de pratiquer un petit repos entre le mot qui finit par un son nasal, et le mot qui commence par une voyelle ; comme dans ce vers de l'*Athalie* de Racine :

Celui qui met un *frein* à la fureur des flots,  
Sait aussi des méchans arrêter les complots.

V. L'*e* muet final et précédé d'une voyelle, comme dans *donnée*, *aimée*, *Asie*, *envie*, la *paie*, la *joie*, la *proie*, la *rue*, *entrevue*, etc. ne peut entrer dans le corps du vers qu'au moyen de l'élision ; ainsi les vers suivans sont mal construits :

Au travers du Soleil, ma *vue* s'éblouit.  
Ils vous *lonent* tout haut et vous *jonent* tout bas.  
Il *avoue* sa faute et demande pardon.

**Mais ceux-ci sont réguliers à cause de l'élision ,**

La *joie* est naturelle aux âmes innocentes.  
A quels mortels regrets ma *vie* est réservée !

VI. L'*e* muet, dans le corps du mot et précédé d'une voyelle, est compté pour rien dans la prononciation ; souvent même on ne l'écrit pas. Il *agréera*, *criera*, *louera*. *reniement*, *dévouement*, etc. ne font pas plus de syllabes que *agréra*, *crîra*, *louîra*, *rentment*, *dévoûment*.

#### ENJAMBEMENT DES VERS.

Les vers n'ont ni grâce ni harmonie, quand on rejette au commencement du second vers des mots qui dépendent nécessairement de ce qui se trouve à la fin du premier.



Quel que soit votre ami, sachez que mutuelle  
Doit être l'amitié ; même ardeur, même zèle.  
Il n'est donc point d'amis, pour la dernière fois  
Je le répète encor : peu connoissent les lois  
D'une vraie amitié.

Dans le premier vers, *mutuelle* dépend nécessairement de ces mots *doit être l'amitié*.

Dans les derniers, ces mots *d'une vraie amitié* sont dépendans de ceux-ci, *les lois*, et l'on ne peut les séparer dans la prononciation.

Ces enjambemens sont proscrits dans la haute poésie, mais ils se tolèrent dans les fables et dans les autres pièces de style familier.

Si néanmoins la dépendance d'un vers s'étendoit jusqu'à la fin du suivant, en sorte qu'à la fin du premier il y eût un petit repos, l'harmonie loin d'être blessée n'en seroit que plus sensible.

Là gît la sombre envie, à l'œil timide et louche,  
Versant sur des lauriers les poisons de sa bouche.  
Ce malheureux combat ne fit qu'approfondir  
L'abîme dont Valois vouloit en vain sortir.—VOLT.

*Des licences qu'on se permet dans les Vers.*

Ces licences consistent dans certaines dispositions de mots, dans l'emploi de plusieurs termes dont la prose n'oseroit se servir, dans le retranchement d'une lettre.

#### DES TRANSPOSITIONS.

I. On place avec grâce les régimes composés avant les mots et les verbes dont ils dépendent.

*A la Religion* soyez toujours fidèle,  
Les mœurs et la vertu ne sauvent point sans elle.  
C'est Dieu qui *du néant* a tiré l'univers ;  
C'est lui qui *sur la terre* a répandu les mers.  
Sans Dieu rien n'eût été,  
Et lui seul *des mortels* fait la félicité.  
*A vous former le cœur* appliquez-vous sans cesse.

II. On place entre l'auxiliaire et le participe, entre le verbe et son régime, des mots qui n'y seroient pas soufferts en prose.

Un vieillard vénérable avoit, *loin de la Cour*,  
Cherché la douce paix dans un obscur séjour :  
Dieu fit *dans ce désert* descendre la sagesse.

Les transpositions, quand elles sont naturelles, et qu'elles n'embarrassent pas le sens de la phrase, donnent de la grâce et de la noblesse à la poésie ; mais elles ne valent rien, lorsqu'elles rendent le vers dur, ou qu'elles obscurcissent la pensée, comme dans les vers suivans :

Quoi ! voit-on revêtu de l'étole sacrée  
Le prêtre de l'autel s'arrêter à l'entrée ?  
Craignez de votre orgueil de vous rendre la dupe.  
Que toujours la fierté, l'honneur, la bienséance  
De cette folle ardeur s'oppose à la naissance.

### *Des mots propres à la Poésie.*

La poésie se sert en général des mêmes mots que la prose ; cependant il y a quelques expressions que les Poètes emploient heureusement, et qui seroient déplacées dans la prose. Telles sont *antique* pour *ancien* : *coursier* pour *cheval* : *l'Eternel*, le *Très-Haut*, le *Tout-Puissant* pour *Dieu* : le *flanc* pour le *sein*, le *ventre* : le *glaive* pour l'*épée* : les *humains*, les *mortels*, la *race de Japet* pour les *hommes* : *hymen* ou *hyménée* pour *mariage* : *espoir* pour *espérance* : le *penser* pour la *pensée* : *jadis* pour *autrefois* : *naguère* ou *naguères* pour *il n'y a pas long-temps* : *labeur* pour *travail* : *repentance* pour *repentir* : *soudain* pour *aussitôt* : *ombre éternelle*, *sombres bords* pour *l'enfer*, etc.

Où sont, Dieu de Jacob, tes antiques bontés ?  
On fait cas d'un coursier, qui, fier et plein de cœur,  
Fait paroître en courant sa bouillante vigueur.  
L'Eternel en ses mains tient seul nos destinées.  
Célébrons dans nos chants la gloire du Très-haut.  
Si quelque audacieux embrasse sa querelle,  
Qu'à la fureur du glaive on le livre avec elle.  
Souvent d'un faux espoir un amant est nourri.  
Les Dieux m'en sont témoins, ces Dieux qui dans mon flanc  
Ont allumé le feu fatal à tout mon sang,  
Ces Dieux qui se sont fait une gloire cruelle  
De séduire le cœur d'une foible mortelle.  
Soumise à mon époux, et cachant mes ennuis,  
De son fatal hymen je cultivois les fruits.  
On n'aime plus comme on aimoit jadis.  
Va dans l'ombre éternelle, ombre pleine d'envie ;  
Et ne te mêle plus de censurer ma vie.

La lecture des bons Poètes fournira une foule d'autres expressions propres à la poésie.

Nous écrivons en prose *je crois, je vois, je dis, je sais, je vis, j'avertis*, etc. Les Poètes, selon le besoin, emploient ou retranchent l'*s* dans ces mots. Ils écrivent de même *jusque* ou *jusques*, *encore* ou *encor*, *grâce au Ciel* ou *grâces au Ciel*. Ils emploient aussi *alors que*, pour *lorsque*, *pendant que* pour *pendant que*, *avecque* pour *avec*, etc.

Les bons Poètes se servent rarement de la plupart de ces dernières licences ; et ceux qui se livrent à la poésie ne doivent pas oublier le précepte de Boileau.

Sur tout qu'en vos écrits la langue révérée,  
 Dans vos plus grands excès vous soit toujours sacrée ;  
 Envain vous me frappez d'un son mélodieux,  
 Si le terme est impropre ou le tour vicieux ;  
 Mon esprit n'admet point un pompeux barbarisme,  
 Ni d'un vers ampoulé l'orgueilleux solécisme.  
 Sans la langue, en un mot, l'auteur le plus divin,  
 Est toujours, quoiqu'il fasse, un méchant écrivain.

#### DE L'ARRANGEMENT DES VERS ENTR'EUX.

Dans les différentes manières dont les vers doivent être arrangés, il faut considérer la rime et le nombre des syllabes.

Le nombre des syllabes est arbitraire dans les pièces libres et dans la poésie lyrique ; mais il est déterminé dans les autres pièces sérieuses, qui sont la plupart écrites en vers de douze syllabes. Ainsi dans le Poème épique, l'Eglogue, l'Elégie, la Satyre, l'Epître, et dans la Tragédie et la haute Comédie, il est d'usage de n'employer que le vers Alexandrin.

Quant à la rime, deux vers masculins peuvent être suivis de deux vers féminins, *et vice versa* ; ou bien un vers masculin est suivi d'un ou de deux féminins, et un vers féminin d'un ou de deux masculins.

On appelle vers à *rimes plates* ceux qui sont disposés de la première façon, comme les suivans.

De figures sans nombre, égayer votre ouvrage ;  
 Que tout y fasse aux yeux une riante image :  
 On peut être à la fois et pompeux et plaisant,  
 Et je hais un sublime ennuyeux, languissant.  
 Un poème excellent où tout marche et se suit,  
 N'est pas de ces travaux qu'un caprice produit :  
 Il veut du temps, des soins ; et ce pénible ouvrage  
 Jamais d'un écolier ne fut l'apprentissage.

On appelle vers à *rimes croisées* ceux qui sont ordonnés de la seconde manière, comme ceux-ci dans lesquels Rousseau dit en parlant de Circé furieuse :

Sa voix redoutable  
 Trouble les enfers,  
 Un bruit formidable  
 Gronde dans les airs,  
 Un voile effroyable  
 Couvre l'Univers.

Mais quand on n'observe d'autre règle que de ne pas mettre de suite plus de deux vers masculins ou féminins, et qu'on fait suivre un vers masculin ou féminin d'un ou de deux vers d'une rime différente, alors ils s'appellent vers à *rimes mêlées*, comme ceux-ci :

Ah ! si d'une pauvreté dure  
 Nous cherchons à nous affranchir,  
 Rapprochons-nous de la nature,  
 Qui seule peut nous enrichir.  
 Forçons de funestes obstacles ;  
 Réservons pour nos tabernacles  
 Cet or, ces rubis, ces métaux ;  
 Ou dans le sein des mers avides  
 Jetons ces richesses perfides,  
 L'unique aliment de nos maux.

Lorsque les vers sont en rimes plates, ils ont ordinairement le même nombre de syllabes. Mais lorsqu'ils sont à rimes croisées ou à rimes mêlées, souvent ils ont une mesure inégale.

Dans les vers à rimes plates, c'est un défaut de faire revenir deux rimes masculines ou féminines déjà employées, de manière qu'elles ne soient séparées de deux autres semblables que par deux rimes d'une espèce différente, comme dans cet exemple :

Soudain Potier se lève et demande audience :  
 Chacun, à son aspect, garde un profond silence.  
 Dans ce temps malheureux par le crime infecté,  
 Potier fut toujours juste, et pourtant respecté.  
 Souvent on l'avoit vu, par sa mâle éloquence,  
 De leurs emportemens réprimer la licence,  
 Et, conservant sur eux sa vieille autorité,  
 Leur montrer la justice avec impunité.

L'oreille est aussi choquée par la convenance de sons dans les rimes masculines et féminines qui se suivent, comme dans ces vers, d'ailleurs pleins de belles images.

Tel des antres du Nord échappés sur la terre,  
Précédés par les vents, et suivis du tonnerre,  
D'un tourbillon de poudre obscurcissant les airs,  
Les orages foudroyants parcourent l'Univers.

On compose à rimes plates les grands poèmes, tels que l'Epopée, la Tragédie, la Comédie, l'Eglogue, l'Elégie, la Satyre, l'Epître ; à rimes croisées, l'Ode, le Sonnet, le Rondeau ; et à rimes mêlées, les Stances, l'Epigramme, les Fables, les Madrigaux, les Chansons.

Il n'y a d'autres règles à observer dans les grands poèmes pour la distribution des rimes, que d'éviter la consonance, et de ranger les vers masculins et féminins deux à deux les uns après les autres. Nous ne nous étendons donc pas davantage sur cet article par rapport à l'Epopée, à la Tragédie, etc. Nous ne dirons rien non plus des autres règles de ces poèmes. Ces dissertations nous mèneraient trop loin. Consultez l'Art poétique de Boileau, et les meilleures poétiques anciennes et modernes.

Mais l'ordonnance des vers dans plusieurs petits poèmes a des règles fixes et particulières. Ce sera le sujet des articles suivans.

#### DES STANCES.

Une *Stance* est un certain nombre de vers, après lesquels le sens est fini. Dans une Ode elle s'appelle *Strophe*.

Une stance n'a pas ordinairement moins de quatre vers, ni plus de dix. La mesure des vers y est arbitraire ; ils peuvent être ou tous grands ou tous petits, ou bien mêlés les uns avec les autres.

Les stances sont appelées *régulières*, lorsqu'elles ont un même nombre de vers, un même mélange de rimes, et que les grands et les petits vers y sont également distribués. Elles sont appelées *irrégulières* lorsqu'elles n'ont pas toutes ces convenances.

Pour la perfection des stances, il est nécessaire,  
1°. Que le sens finisse avec le dernier vers de chacune.

2°. Que le dernier vers d'une strophe ne rime pas avec le premier de la suivante.

3°. Que les stances d'une même pièce commencent et finissent par des rimes de même nature ; c'est-à-dire, que si le premier vers d'une strophe finit par une rime masculine, les premiers vers des strophes suivantes doivent également être masculins. Il est cependant bon de remarquer que quoiqu'en général il ne soit pas permis de mettre de suite quatre rimes de même espèce, cependant plusieurs auteurs l'ont fait d'une strophe à l'autre, parce qu'ils ont regardé chaque strophe d'une pièce comme isolée, et comme indépendante de celle qui suit. Mais nous croyons que cette licence ne peut être tolérée que dans les chansons.

Si une strophe est seule, elle prend un nom particulier, du nombre de vers dont elle est composée. Elle s'appelle *Quatrain*, si elle en a quatre ; *Sixain*, si elle en a six ; *Dixain*, si elle en a dix. Et quelquefois à raison du sujet, c'est une *Epigramme*, un *Madrigal*. On appeloit autrefois *Octave* une strophe de huit vers.

On voit que toutes ces stances sont du nombre pair. Il y en a aussi du nombre impair, de cinq, de sept et de neuf vers.

## RÈGLES POUR LES STANCES DE NOMBRE PAIR.

### I. Stances de quatre vers.

Ces stances sont plusieurs quatrains joints ensemble, et liés par un sens qui dure jusqu'à la fin de la pièce. Entre le premier vers masculin ou féminin, et celui qui lui répond, on met un ou deux vers d'une rime différente, comme dans ces vers où l'Amitié fait elle-même son portrait.

J'ai le visage long, et la mine naïve,  
 Je suis sans finesse et sans art.  
 Mon teint est fort uni, ma couleur assez vive,  
 Et je ne mets jamais de fard.  
 Mon abord est civil ; j'ai la bouche riante,  
 Et mes yeux ont mille douceurs :  
 Mais quoique je sois belle, agréable et charmante,  
 Je règne sur bien peu de cœurs.

On me proteste assés, et presque tous les hommes  
 Se vantent de suivre mes lois :  
 Mais que j'en connois peu dans le siècle où nous sommes,  
 Dont le cœur réponde à ma voix !  
 Ceux que je fais aimer d'une flamme fidèle,  
 Me font l'objet de tous leurs soins ;  
 Et quoique je vieillisse, ils me trouvent fort belle,  
 Et ne m'en estiment pas moins.  
 On m'accuse pourtant d'aimer trop à paroître  
 Où l'on voit la prospérité ;  
 Cependant il est vrai qu'on ne me peut connoître  
 Qu'au milieu de l'adversité.

### Autre exemple :

Dans ce salon pacifique  
 Où président les neuf sœurs,  
 Un loisir philosophique  
 T'offre encor d'autres douceurs.

Là, nous trouverons sans peine  
 Avec toi, le verre en main,  
 L'homme après qui Diogène  
 Courut si long-temps en vain.

Et dans la douce allégresse  
 Dont tu sais nous abreuver,  
 Nous puiserons la sagesse  
 Qu'il chercha sans la trouver.—J. B. ROUSSEAU.

**REMARQUE.** Les véritables quatrains n'ont aucune liaison pour le sens, et la morale en est ordinairement la matière. Exemple :

Ne demandez à Dieu ni gloire, ni richesse,  
 Ni ces biens dont l'éclat rend le peuple étonné :  
 Mais pour bien commander, demandez la sagesse ;  
 Avec un don si saint tout vous sera donné.

Ecoutez et lisez la céleste parole,  
 Que, dans les livres saints, Dieu nous donne pour loi.  
 La politique humaine au prix d'elle est frivole,  
 Et forme plus souvent un tyran qu'un bon Roi.

### II. Stances de six vers.

Elles sont composées d'un quatrain et de deux vers d'une même rime, qui se mettent au commencement ou à la fin. D'ailleurs les vers d'un quatrain se mêlent de la même manière que ci-dessus.

Si les deux vers d'une même rime sont au commencement, alors à la fin du troisième, on met ordinairement un repos, et le sens ne doit pas s'étendre jusqu'au qua-

trième. Ce repos donne beaucoup de grâce et d'harmonie à cette sorte de stances.

On peut voir, par les exemples suivans, que ce repos peut être plus ou moins marqué, et qu'il n'est pas rigoureusement exigé dans les sixains.

Ce n'est donc point assez que ce peuple perfide,  
De la sainte cité profanateur stupide,  
Ait dans tout l'Orient porté ses étendards ;  
Et paisible tyran de la Grèce abattue,  
Partage à notre vue  
La plus belle moitié du trône des Césars.  
Des veilles, des travaux un foible cœur s'étonne.  
Apprenons toutefois, que le fils de Latone,  
Dont nous suivons la cour,  
Ne nous vend qu'à ce prix ces traits de vive flamme  
Et ces ailes de feu qui ravissent une âme  
Au céleste séjour.

La place de ce repos varie, et est tantôt après le second, tantôt après le quatrième vers, dans les sixains où les deux vers d'une même rime sont à la fin de la strophe, comme dans les stances suivantes.

Seigneur, dans ton temple adorable,  
Quel mortel est digne d'entrer ?  
Qui pourra, grand Dieu pénétrer  
Ce sanctuaire impénétrable,  
Où tes saints inclinés, d'un œil respectueux,  
Contemplant de ton front l'éclat majestueux ?

Ce sera celui qui du vice  
Evite le sentier impur,  
Qui marche d'un pas ferme et sûr,  
Dans le chemin de la justice ;  
Attentif et fidèle à distinguer sa voix,  
Intépide et sévère à pratiquer ses loix ;

Celui devant qui le superbe,  
Enné d'une vaine splendeur,  
Paroît plus bas dans sa grandeur  
Que l'insecte caché sous l'herbe ;  
Qui bravant du méchant le faste couronné,  
Honore la vertu du juste infortuné.

### III. Stances de huit vers.

Ces stances ne sont ordinairement que deux quatrains joints ensemble. Le sens doit finir après le premier ;



et les vers de tous les deux s'entrelacent, comme nous l'avons déjà dit. Exemple :

Tel en un sacré vallon,  
 Sur le bord d'une onde pure,  
 Croît à l'abri de l'Aigillon  
 Un jeune lys, l'amour de la nature.  
 Loin du monde élevé, de tous les dons des Cieux  
 Il est orné dès sa naissance ;  
 Et du méchant l'abord contagieux  
 N'altère point son innocence.

RACINE, *chœurs d'Athalie*.

Si quelque jour étant ivre  
 La mort arrêtoit mes pas,  
 Je ne voudrois pas revivre  
 Après un si doux trépas :  
 Je m'en irois dans l'Averne  
 Faire enivrer Aleçon,  
 Et bâtir une taverne  
 Dans le manoir de Pluton.—MARTIN ADAM.

Ces stances peuvent aussi commencer par deux vers sur une même rime, et les six autres sont sur des rimes croisées. Quelquefois aussi ces stances n'ont qu'un sixain sur deux ou trois rimes, après quoi viennent deux vers de même rime.

Ces mélanges de rime peuvent aisément se concevoir, sans qu'il soit nécessaire d'en citer des exemples ; d'ailleurs ils ne sont pas communs.

#### IV. *Stances de dix vers.*

Les stances de dix vers ne sont autre chose qu'un quatrain et un sixain, dont les vers s'entremêlent selon les règles ordinaires. Elles tirent leur harmonie d'un premier repos placé à la fin du quatrain, et d'un second après le septième vers. Ex.

C'est un arrêt du Ciel, il faut que l'homme meure ;  
 Tel est son partage et son sort :  
 Rien n'est plus certain que la mort,  
 Et rien plus incertain que cette dernière heure.  
 Heureuse incertitude, utile obscurité,  
 Par où ta divine bonté  
 A veiller, à prier, sans cesse nous convie !  
 Que ne pouvons-nous point avec un tel secours,  
 Qui nous fait regarder tous les jours de la vie  
 Comme le dernier de nos jours !

Les Cieux instruisent la terre  
 A révérer leur auteur ;  
 Tout ce que leur globe enserre,  
 Célèbre un Dieu Créateur.  
 Quel plus sublime cantique  
 Que ce concert magnifique  
 De tous les célestes corps !  
 Quelle grandeur infinie !  
 Quelle divine harmonie  
 Résulte de leurs accords !

### RÈGLES POUR LES STANCES DE NOMBRE IMPAIR.

Les stances de nombre impair ont toutes trois vers sur une même rime. L'ordonnance des vers y est d'ailleurs arbitraire, excepté qu'on ne peut mettre que deux rimes semblables de suite, et que le quatrain par lequel commencent les stances de sept ou de neuf vers, doit être terminé par un repos.

#### *Stances de cinq vers.*

O rives du Jourdain ! ô champs aimés des Cieux !  
 Sacrés monts, fertiles vallées,  
 Par cent miracles signalées,  
 Du doux pays de nos ayeux  
 Serons-nous toujours exilées ?

Pardonne, Dieu puissant, pardonne à ma foiblesse,  
 A l'aspect des méchants, confus, épouvanté,  
 Le trouble m'a saisi, mes pas ont hésité ;  
 Mon zèle m'a trahi, Seigneur, je le confesse,  
 En voyant leur prospérité.

#### *Stances de sept vers.*

Si la loi du Seigneur vous touche,  
 Si le mensonge vous fait peur,  
 Si la justice en votre cœur  
 Règne aussi bien qu'en votre bouche ;  
 Parlez, fils des hommes, pourquoi  
 Faut-il qu'une haine farouche  
 Préside aux jugemens que vous lancez sur moi ?

#### *Stance de neuf vers.*

Quel rempart, quelle autre barrière  
 Pourra défendre l'innocent  
 Contre la fraude meurtrière  
 De l'impie adroit et puissant ?  
 Sa langue aux feintes préparée,

Ressemble à la flèche acérée  
 Qui part et frappe en un moment.  
 C'est un feu léger dans l'entrée,  
 Que suit un long embrasement.

# DU SONNET.

## Boileau feint qu'Apollon,

Voulant pousser à bout tous les rimeurs françois,  
 Inventa du Sonnet les rigoureuses lois,  
 Voulut qu'en deux quatrains de mesure pareille,  
 La rime avec deux sons frappât huit fois l'oreille ;  
 Et qu'ensuite six vers artistement rangés,  
 Fussent en deux tercets par le sens partagés.  
 Sur-tout de ce poème il bannit la licence,  
 Défendit qu'un vers foible y pût jamais entrer,  
 Et qu'un mot déjà mis osât s'y remontrer.  
 Du reste il l'enrichit d'une beauté suprême :  
 Un Sonnet sans défaut vaut seul un long Poème.

Le Sonnet est composé de quatorze vers d'une mesure égale, et pour l'ordinaire de douze syllabes ; ces vers sont partagés en deux quatrains et un sixain.

Les rimes masculines et féminines des deux quatrains sont semblables, et on les entremêle dans l'un, de la même manière que dans l'autre.

Le sixain se coupe en deux tercets, c'est-à-dire, en deux stances de trois vers. Ces tercets commencent l'un et l'autre par deux rimes semblables, en sorte que le troisième vers du premier rime avec le troisième du second.

Il faut éviter que le mélange des rimes, dans les quatre derniers vers du sixain, soit le même que dans les quatrains.

Le second vers de chaque quatrain doit avoir un repos. Les deux quatrains et les deux tercets doivent être terminés chacun par un repos encore plus grand.

D'ailleurs tout doit être noble dans ce Poème, pensées, style, élocution. Point de répétitions, point de redondance. La force et l'élévation en sont les principaux caractères.

On voit cependant des Sonnets, dont les sujets ne sont pas sublimes ; le style alors en est médiocre, et doit l'être. Voici deux exemples du Sonnet. Le pre-

**mier dans le genre simple, exprime la nature même du Sonnet.**

Doris, qui sait qu'aux vers quelquefois je me plais,  
Me demande un Sonnet et je m'en désespère.  
Quatorze vers, grand Dieu, le moyen de les faire !  
En voilà cependant déjà quatre de faits.  
Je ne pouvais d'abord trouver de rime, mais  
En faisant, on apprend à se tirer d'affaire.  
Poursuivons ; les quatrains ne m'étonneront guère,  
Si du premier tercet je puis faire les frais.  
Je commence au hasard, et si je ne m'abuse,  
Je n'ai pas commencé sans l'aven de ma Muse,  
Puisqu'en si peu de temps je m'en tire si net.  
J'entame le second, et ma joie est extrême ;  
Car des vers commandés j'achève le treizième.  
Comptez s'ils sont quatorze, et voilà le Sonnet.

#### AUTRE SONNET.

Grand Dieu tes jugemens sont remplis d'équité :  
Toujours tu prends plaisir à nous être propice ;  
Mais j'ai tant fait de mal, que jamais ta bonté  
Ne me pardonnera qu'en blessant ta justice.

Oui, Seigneur, la grandeur de mon impiété  
Ne laisse à ton pouvoir que le choix du supplice.  
Ton intérêt s'oppose à ma félicité,  
Et ta clémence même attend que je périsse.

Contente ton désir, puisqu'il t'est glorieux ;  
Offense-toi des pleurs qui coulent de mes yeux :  
Tonne, frappe, il est temps, rends-moi guerre pour guerre.

J'adore, en périssant, la raison qui t'aigrit :  
Mais dessus quel endroit tombera ton tonnerre  
Qui ne soit tout couvert du sang de Jésus-Christ.

#### DU RONDEAU.

Le Rondeau né Gaulois a la naïveté.

Tel est le caractère de ce petit poème. Toutes sortes de vers y sont propres, excepté les Alexandrins qui ont trop de gravité. Il y entre treize vers de même mesure, sur deux rimes.

On peut faire dans le Rondeau ce qu'on ne fait point dans les autres Poèmes. Comme il ne doit y avoir dans les huit derniers vers que trois rimes féminines, on peut mettre de suite sur trois rimes masculines le cinquième, le sixième et le septième. Mais on fait rarement ce mélange dans les cinq derniers vers.

Le Rondeau a deux repos nécessaires, l'un après le cinquième vers, l'autre après le refrain.

Le refrain qui se place après le huitième vers, et à la fin de la pièce, n'est autre chose que la répétition d'un ou de plusieurs mots du premier vers. Il doit avoir un sens lié avec ce qui précède, et être amené délicatement. Le premier des deux Rondeaux qui suivent, explique les règles du poème.

*Ma foi, c'est fait de moi, car Isabeau  
M'a conjuré de lui faire un Rondeau :  
Cela me met en une peine extrême.  
Quoi treize vers, huit en eau, cinq en éme !  
Je lui ferois aussitôt un bateau.  
En voilà cinq pourtant en un monceau :  
Fesons-en huit en invoquant Brodeau,  
Et puis mettons par quelque stratagème,  
*Ma foi, c'est fait.**

Si je pouvois encor de mon cerveau  
Tirer cinq vers, l'ouvrage seroit beau :  
Mais cependant me voilà dans l'onzième,  
Et si je crois que je fais le douzième :  
En voilà treize ajustés au niveau.  
*Ma foi, c'est fait.*

#### AUTRE RONDEAU.

*Le bel esprit, au siècle de Marot,  
Des dons du Ciel passoit pour le gros lot ;  
Des grands seigneurs il donnoit accointance,  
Menoit par fois à noble jouissance,  
Et qui plus est fesoit bouillir le pot.  
Or est passé ce temps où d'un bon mot,  
Stance ou dixain, on payoit son écot ;  
Plus n'en voyons qui prennent pour finance  
*Le bel esprit.**

A prix d'argent l'auteur, comme le sot,  
Boit sa chopine et mange son gigot ;  
Heureux encor d'en avoir suffisance !  
Maints ont le chef plus rempli que la panse :  
Dame Ignorance a fait enfin capot  
*Le bel esprit.*

#### DE L'ÉPIGRAMME.

L'Épigramme plus libre, en son tour plus borné,  
N'est souvent qu'un bon mot de deux rimes orné.

Cette pièce ne doit contenir qu'autant de vers qu'il en faut pour exprimer vivement la pensée ou le bon mot

qui en est l'âme. C'est pourquoi le nombre n'en est pas déterminé, non plus que la mesure et le mélange des rimes. Exemple :

Ci-gît ma femme : ah ! qu'elle est bien  
Pour son repos et pour le mien !

Un Magister s'empressant d'étouffer  
Quelque rumeur parmi la populace,  
D'un coup dans l'œil se fit apostropher,  
Dont il tomba, faisant laide grimace.  
Lors un frater s'écria : place, place ;  
J'ai pour ce mal un baume souverain.  
Perdrai-je l'œil ? lui dit messer Pancrace.  
Non, mon ami, je le tiens dans ma main.

### AUTRE ÉPIGRAMME.

Entre Racine et l'ainé des Corneilles  
Les Chrysogons se font modérateurs :  
L'un, à leur gré, passe les sept merveilles ;  
L'autre ne plaît qu'aux versificateurs.  
Or maintenant, veillez, graves auteurs,  
Mordez vos doigts, ramez comme corsaires,  
Pour mériter de pareils protecteurs,  
Ou pour trouver de pareils adversaires.

### DU MADRIGAL.

Le Madrigal plus simple, et plus noble en son tour,  
Respire la douceur, la tendresse et l'amour.—BOILEAU.

Ce petit poème ne diffère que par-là de l'Épigramme, dont la pointe est souvent aiguësée par la satire.  
Exemple :

L'autre jour l'enfant de Cythère,  
Sous une treille à demi gris,  
Disoit, en parlant à sa mère :  
Je bois à toi, ma chère Iris.  
Vénus le regarde en colère :  
Maman, calmez votre courroux,  
Si je vous prends pour ma bergère,  
J'ai pris cent fois Iris pour vous.

NOTA. Le Sonnet et le Rondeau ont aujourd'hui perdu toute leur vogue, et il est très-rare que l'on s'exerce dans ces deux genres de poésie.

